



2025/26

# AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK



MAY 2025

**FINAL DRAFT ADM SDF**

Table of Content	
<b>List of Tables</b> .....	<b>v</b>
<b>List of Plans</b> .....	<b>vi</b>
<b>Glossary</b> .....	<b>ix</b>
<b>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY</b> .....	<b>i</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION</b> .....	<b>4</b>
1.A. Background .....	4
1.B. Project Phasing .....	4
1.C. Locality Context .....	5
: .....	5
1.C. 1 Provincial Locality .....	6
1.C. 2 District Locality .....	7
1.C. 3 Local Locality .....	8
<b>POLICY ASSESSMENT AND ALIGNMENT</b> .....	<b>10</b>
2.A. National Policy Alignment .....	10
2.A. 1 The Constitution of South Africa Act No. 108 of 1996 .....	10
2.A. 2 The Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000 .....	11
2.A. 3 Promotion of Administrative Justice Act 3 of 2000 .....	12
2.A. 4 The Inter – governmental Relations Framework Act of 2005 .....	12
2.A. 5 The Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989 .....	13
2.A. 6 The National Environmental Management Bio – Diversity Act No. 10 of 2004 .....	13
2.A. 7 The National Heritage Resource Act No. 25 of 1999 .....	13
2.A. 8 The National Water Act No. 36 of 1998 .....	13
2.A. 9 The National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 (NEMA) .....	14
2.A. 10 National Development Plan 2030 .....	14
2.A. 11 National Spatial Development Framework, 2018 .....	17
2.A. 12 The White Paper on Wise Land Use Spatial Planning and Land Use Management .....	20
2.A. 13 The National Land Transport Transition Act 22 of 2000 .....	20
2.A. 13 The Neighbourhood Planning and Design Guide (RedBook) .....	21
2.A. 14 Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No. 16 of 2013 .....	21
2.A. 15 Local Government – Back to Basics Strategy 2015 .....	25
2.A. 16 District Development Model (DDM) .....	26
2.A. 17 Government Priorities .....	27
2.A. 18 National Spatial Development Perspective, 2006 .....	31
2.A. 19 The New Growth Path, 2010 .....	33
2.A. 20 Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative (ASGI – SA), 2004 .....	33
2.A. 21 National Environmental Management Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003 .....	34
2.A. 22 National Environmental Management Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003 .....	35
2.A. 23 Waste Management Act of 2008 .....	35
2.A. 24 Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP), 2009 .....	36
2.A. 25 Breaking New Ground 2004 .....	37

2.B. Provincial Policy Alignment .....	40
2.B. 1 Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS), 2016 .....	40
2.B. 2 KwaZulu – Natal Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2021..	41
<b>Vision.....</b>	<b>42</b>
2.B. 3 Provincial Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF), 2014.	43
2.B. 4 Provincial Rural Development Framework, 2013 .....	44
2.B. 5 KwaZulu – Natal Integrated Infrastructure Master Plan, 2019.....	46
2.B. 6 KwaZulu – Natal Human Settlements Master Spatial Plan, 2016 .....	47
2.B. 7 Provincial Norms and Standards Public Social Facilities, 2020 .....	48
2.B. 8 Provincial Norms and Standards Spatial Equity ,2020 .....	48
2.B. 9 Provincial Planning and Development Norms and Standards for Electronic Communication Facilities, 2016.....	49
2.C. District Policy Alignment.....	50
2.C. 1 Amajuba District Growth and Development Plan, 2017.....	50
2.C. 2 Amajuba District Municipality Spatial Development Framework (2024/2025). (Reviewed in 2024/2025).....	51
.....	51
2.C. 3 Amajuba District Municipality Integrated Development Plan 2019/2020 (IDP) .....	52
2.C. 4 Amajuba District Municipality Environmental Management Framework, 2019 .....	54
2.C. 5 District Rural Development Plan, 2019.....	55
2.C. 6 Amajuba District Municipality Water Services Development Plan 2016 .....	56

2.C. 7 Amajuba District First Generation One Plan, 2020/2021 .....	57
2.C. 8 Development Plan for Amajuba District Municipality, 2017 .....	58
2.C. 9 Amajuba District Municipality Climate Change Response Plan, 2018.	60
2.C. 10. Air Quality Management Plan, 2019 .....	62
2.C. 11. DISASTER MANAGEMENT SECTOR PLAN.....	63
The Disaster Management Plan was developed and approved by the Municipal Council in May 2024 and will undergo a review every two years.....	63
The Plan is designed to achieve the following objectives: .....	63
- Prevention and reduction of disaster risks .....	63
- Mitigation of impacts .....	63
- Preparedness for effective disaster response .....	63
- Minimization of loss and property damage.....	63
- Swift recovery from adverse effects .....	63
This Plan outlines strategies for both preventing and mitigating disasters, focusing on long-term risk reduction measures as well as short-term emergency management, which includes preparedness, response, and recovery. As a dynamic document, the Plan must be updated annually. ....	63
2.D. Local Municipal Policy Alignment.....	70
2.D. 1 Dannhauser Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework, 2017/2040.....	70
2.D. 2 eMadlangeni Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework, 2024/2025 .....	70

2.D. 3 Newcastle Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework, 2024/2025 .....	71	2.H. 3 Critical Biodiversity Areas .....	118
2.D. 4 Implications of the Local Municipalities to the Neighbouring District Municipalities. ....	72	2.H. 4 Rivers .....	119
<b>SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS.....</b>	<b>74</b>	2.H. 5 Topography and Geology.....	120
2.E. CROSS BORDER ALIGNMENT.....	74	2.H. 6 Climate Change .....	121
2.F. SOCIO – ECONOMIC ANALYSIS .....	78	2.H. 7 Agriculture .....	123
2.F.1 Demographic Assessment.....	78	2.H. 8 Mining.....	124
2.F.2 Economic Assessment.....	84	2.H. 9 Environmental Conservation Areas .....	125
2.F.3 Social Facilities .....	89	<b>OVERALL SPATIAL CHALLENGES AND OPPORTUNITIES .....</b>	<b>126</b>
2.F.4 Tourism .....	100	2.I. Spatial Challenges: .....	126
2.G. BUILT ENVIRONMENT ANALYSIS.....	102	2.I.1 Socio Economic.....	126
2.G.1 Settlements .....	102	2.I.2 Built Environment.....	126
2.G.2 Land Uses .....	106	2.I.3 Biophysical.....	126
2.G.3 Linkages .....	107	2.J. Spatial Opportunities: .....	126
.....	108	2.J.1 Socio Economic .....	126
2.G.4 Transportation.....	109	2.J.2 Built Environment .....	127
2.G.6 Electricity.....	111	2.J.3 Biophysical .....	127
2.G.7 Sanitation .....	112	<b>SWOT ANALYSIS AND KEY ISSUES .....</b>	<b>128</b>
2.G.8 Water.....	113	2.K. SWOT Analysis .....	130
2.H. BIO – PHYSICAL ANALYSIS.....	114	2.K.1 Strengths .....	130
2.H.1 Land Cover.....	115	2.K.2 Weaknesses.....	131
2.H.2 Vegetation and Forestry.....	116	2.K.3 Opportunities .....	132
		2.K.4 Threats.....	133

2.L. Key Issues.....	134
<b>STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK .....</b>	<b>136</b>
3.A. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 2013 Principles 137	
3.B. Amajuba District Municipality Guiding Principles .....	144
3.B. 1. Development of Sustainable Human Settlements.....	144
3.B. 2. Ensuring a Sustainable and Functioning Environment .....	145
3.B. 3. Managing and Maintaining Safe and Accessible Infrastructure Provision .....	146
3.B. 4. Access to and Affordable Public Transportation and Accessible Linkages Between Settlements.....	146
3.B. 5. Thriving economy which is well positioned within the province and within the country .....	147
3.B. 6. Sustainable Rural Development .....	148
3.B. 7. “Smart City” and Information Technology .....	149
3.B. 8. Effective Governance.....	150
3.C. VISION .....	152
3.D. OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIES .....	153
3.E. SPATIAL SCENARIOS .....	159
Scenario 1: Status Quo/Stagnation .....	159
Scenario 2: Managed and Guided Development .....	161
Scenario 3: Managed and Optimistic Outlook .....	162
Preferred Scenario .....	163
3.F. Growth Projections .....	164

<b>SPATIAL STRUCTURING ELEMENTS .....</b>	<b>174</b>
3.G. Nodes / Settlement Classification.....	175
3.H. Corridors.....	178
3.I. Urban / Settlement Edge .....	182
3.J. Natural Features.....	189
3.K. Gateways.....	189
3.L. Urban Revitalisation Areas Marginalized Townships .....	190
<b>SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK .....</b>	<b>192</b>
<b>BIOPHYSICAL FRAMEWORK .....</b>	<b>193</b>
4.A. Environmental Guidelines .....	194
4.B. Agriculture .....	199
4.C. Promoting Agriculture as an economic sector within Amajuba District Municipality .....	199
4.D. Rural Development Focus Regions .....	200
4.E. Agri-Parks.....	203
4.F. Proposed Development Intervention .....	207
<b>BUILT ENVIRONMENT FRAMEWORK .....</b>	<b>210</b>
4.G. Settlements.....	211
4.H. Movement and Transportation .....	212
4.I. Housing .....	212
4.I. 1 Housing Projects.....	214
4.J. Land Reform.....	221
4.K. Growth Management Strategy .....	222

4.L.	Densification.....	222
4.M.	Mixed use strategy .....	224
4.N.	Infrastructure Framework .....	224
1.	Green Infrastructure .....	224
2.	Broadband Connectivity.....	225
3.	Water/ Infrastructure.....	226
4.	Telecommunications .....	226
5.	Solid Waste Management .....	226
	227	
	228	
4.O.	Smart Growth .....	229
4.P.	How can the Smart City Concept be applied in the Amajuba District Municipality Context? .....	229
<b>SOCIO ECONOMIC FRAMEWORK .....</b>	<b>232</b>	
4.Q.	Tourism Framework .....	233
	Tourism Initiatives .....	234
4.R.	Economic Framework .....	236
4.R. 1	Major economic sectors. ....	236
4.R. 2	Renewable Energy .....	237
4.R. 3	Agro processing .....	237
4.R. 4	Knowledge Economy .....	237
4.R. 5	Rural Economic Strategy.....	238
4.R. 6	Small Town Revitalisation.....	241

4.R. 7	Public Private Partnerships .....	242
4.R. 8	Mining Activity .....	242
4.S.	Social Amenities.....	246
<b>OVERALL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK .....</b>	<b>249</b>	
	250	
<b>LAND USE MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES.....</b>	<b>252</b>	
<b>IMPLEMENTATION FRAMEWORK PLAN.....</b>	<b>265</b>	
PART 1: IMPLEMENTATION PLAN.....	265	
Understanding the Implementation Plan Table .....	265	
Project Prioritization Matrix.....	266	
PART 2: CAPITAL INVESTMENT FRAMEWORK.....	281	
Legislative Requirements .....	281	
Preparing a Capital Expenditure Framework .....	282	
<b>CONCLUSION .....</b>	<b>286</b>	

## List of Tables

Table 1: IDP KPA's.....	53
Table 2: Population Per Municipality .....	79
Table 3: Gender Split Per Municipality.....	80
Table 4: Languages.....	81

Table 5: Head of Household .....	84
Table 6: Employment Per Municipality.....	84
Table 7: Sector Employment.....	86
Table 8: CSIR Human Settlements Guidelines .....	89
Table 9: Educational facilities, Use Capacity and threshold .....	89
Table 11: Land Ownership .....	106
Table 12: Linkages.....	107
Table 13: Housing Backlog .....	110
Table 14: SPLUMA Principles .....	138
Table 15: Objectives and Strategies .....	153
Table 16: Strategic Framework: Key Issues, Objectives and Strategies.....	157
Table 17 Total Population for Amajuba DM and LMs including Population Growth Rates (Source. Statistics SA) .....	164
Table 18: Amajuba DM Population Projection for 20 years per 5-year and 10-year intervals. ....	164
Table 19: Nodal Classification.....	175
Table 20: Corridor Classification .....	180
Table 21: Agricultural Interventions.....	207
Table 22: Road Upgrades.....	212
Table 23: Housing Backlog.....	213
Table 24: Housing Projects Under Construction in Newcastle .....	214
Table 25: Proposed Pipeline Projects for NLM .....	215
Table 26: Proposed Rectification Housing Projects for NLM .....	216

Table 27: Social and Rental Projects for NLM .....	217
Table 28: Current Housing Projects Waiting for Approval by Human Settlements in Dannhauser LM .....	217
Table 29: Future Housing Projects Planned .....	218
Table 30: Township/Rural Economies.....	241
Table 31: Criteria Based Matrix.....	279

## List of Plans

PLAN 1 Provincial Locality .....	6
PLAN 2 District Locality .....	7
PLAN 13: KZN PSDF, 2021.....	42
PLAN 4: Amajuba SDF.....	51
PLAN 5: Dannhauser SDF.....	70
PLAN 6: Emadlangeni SDF .....	71
PLAN 7: Newcastle SDF .....	72
PLAN 8: Primary Schools .....	91
PLAN 9: Secondary Schools .....	92
PLAN 10: Libraries .....	93
PLAN 11: Police Stations .....	94
PLAN 12: Hospitals .....	96

PLAN 13: Clinics .....	97	PLAN 35: Concept Plan (Scenario 3).....	162
PLAN 14: Post Offices .....	98	PLAN 36: Concept Plan.....	<b>Error! Bookmark not defined.</b>
PLAN 15: Overall Social Facilities .....	99	PLAN 37: Nodes Plan .....	177
PLAN 16: Tourism and Hospitality .....	101	PLAN 38: Corridors Plan .....	181
PLAN 17: Settlement Types .....	103	PLAN 39: Dannhauser Urban Edge .....	185
PLAN 18: Settlement Patterns .....	104	PLAN 40: Hattingspruit Urban Edge .....	186
PLAN 19: Traditional Land Parcels .....	105	PLAN 41: Newcastle Urban Edge.....	186
PLAN 20: Linkages Plan .....	108	PLAN 42: Utrecht Urban Edge .....	187
PLAN 21: Transportation .....	109	PLAN 43: Settlement Patterns Plan.....	188
PLAN 22: Electricity.....	111	PLAN 44: Spatial Structuring Elements .....	191
PLAN 23: Sanitation .....	112	PLAN 45: Bio-Physical Framework Plan.....	198
PLAN 24: Water .....	113	PLAN 46: Agricultural Framework Plan .....	206
PLAN 25: Land Capability Plan .....	115	PLAN 47: Settlement Patterns Plan.....	211
PLAN 26: Vegetation.....	117	PLAN 48: Housing Projects and Urban Edges.....	220
PLAN 27; Forestry .....	118	PLAN 49: Water Infrastructure.....	224
PLAN 28 Critical Bio-diversity Plan.....	118	PLAN 50: Water Infrastructure.....	227
PLAN 29: Rivers and Dams.....	119	PLAN 51: Sewer Infrastructure .....	228
PLAN 30: Geology .....	120	PLAN 52: Built Environment Framework Plan.....	231
PLAN 31: Precipitation Plan .....	122	PLAN 53: Tourism Plan .....	235
PLAN 32: Agriculture.....	124	PLAN 54: Mining Plan .....	245
PLAN 33: Concept Plan (Scenario 1) .....	160	PLAN 55: Overall Social Facilities Plan.....	247
PLAN 34: Concept Plan (Scenario 2) .....	161	PLAN 56: Economic Framework Plan .....	248

PLAN 57: Amajuba DM Spatial Development Framework..... 250

PLAN 58: Capital Investment Framework ..... 285

# Glossary

° C	Degrees Celsius	CoGTA	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
ABP	Area Based Plan	COO	Chief Operating Officer
ADM	Amajuba District Municipality	CSIR	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research
AIDS	Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome	DAC	District AIDS Council
ASGISA	Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa	DAFF	Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
BLMCs	Biodiversity Land Management Classes	DARD	Department of Agriculture and Rural Development
CBA	Critical Biodiversity Area	DEDEA	Department of Economic Development and Environmental Affairs
CEA	Critical Environmental Areas	DM	District Municipality
CEO	Chief Executive Officer	DoA	Department of Agriculture and Rural Development
CFCs	Chlorofluorocarbons	DoHS	Department of Human Settlements
CLRA	Communal Land Rights Act 11 of 2004	DRDLR	Department of Rural Development and Land Reform
CO2	Carbon Dioxide	DRM	Disaster Risk Management
		DRPW	Department of Public Works
		DTI	Department of Trade and Industry

e.g.	Example	HIV	Human Immunodeficiency Virus
EA	Environmental Authorisation	ICT	Information and Communications Technology
EAP	Economically Active Population	IDC	Industrial Development Corporation
ECD	Early Childhood Development	IDP	Integrated Development Framework
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment	IGR	Inter-Government Relations
EMF	Environmental Management Framework	IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme	ISDM	Integrated Service Delivery Model 2016
ESA	Ecological Support Area	ITP	Integrated Transport Plan
FMR	Future Metro Regions	km	kilometer
GDP	Gross Domestic Product	km <sup>2</sup>	square kilometers
GDS	Growth and Development Summit	KZN	KwaZulu-Natal
GHGs	Green House Gases	LED	Local Economic Development
GVA	Gross Value Add	LHR	Liberation Heritage Route
ha	Hectare	LM	Local Municipality
HDI	Human Development Index	LUMS	Land Use Management Scheme

m	Meters	PSDF	Provincial Growth and Development Framework
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant	PWSIMP	Provincial Water Services Infrastructure Master Plan
mm	Millimeters	R	Rand
MSA	Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000	R&D	Research and Development
MTEF	Medium-Term Expenditure Framework	RBIG	Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant
NDP	National Development Plan 2030	RDP	Reconstruction Development Programme
NSDF	National Spatial development Framework	REDS	Regional Economic Development Strategy
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act	RSA	Republic of South Africa
NGO	Non-Governmental Organisation	SA	South Africa
NSDP	National Spatial Development Plan	SAHRA	South African Heritage Resources Agency
OHS	Occupational Health and Safety	SALA	Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act
PDA	Planning and Development Act 28 of 2008	SANP	South African National Parks
PDP	Provincial Development Plan	SDAs	Special Development Areas
PEDS	Provincial Economic Development Strategy	SDBIP	Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan
PGDP	Provincial Growth and Development Plan	SDF	Spatial Development Framework

SEA	Strategic Environmental Assessment
SEDA	Small Enterprise Development Agency
SETA	Services Sector Education and Training Authority
SEZ	Special Economic Zone
SLA	Service Level Agreement
SMMEs	Small Medium and Micro Enterprises
SPLUMA	Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013
STR	Small Town Regeneration
SWOT	Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities and Threats
TPO	Town Planning Ordinance 15 of 1986
TSAD	Tourist, Satellite Accounting
UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
VLP	Village Link Persons
WSIG	Water Services Infrastructure Grant

# EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This document serves as the Amajuba District Municipality Spatial Development Framework (SDF) 2024-2027. The adoption of this SDF is a legal requirement, and as such fulfils the requirements as set out within the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (Act No.16 of 2013). This SDF is an integral component of the Integrated Development Plan (IDP); it both informs and translates the IDP spatially and guides how the implementation of the IDP should occur in space. The SDF therefore guides the overall spatial distribution of land uses within a District Municipality to give effect to the spatial vision, goals, and objectives of the district.

This SDF is also aligned with provincial and municipal sector plans and strategies as a way of ensuring that the desired spatial form and outcomes of the Municipality are achieved. The SDF is wide strategic document that goes with the IDP, it does not provide definitive statements on all aspects of spatial development in the Municipal Area as such it is advisable that this SDF be read in conjunction with other Council approved sector plans. These plans include Urban Development Frameworks (UDFs), Local Area Plans (LAPs), Precinct Plans or Special Projects, etc. as these translate the strategic and spatial intentions of the SDF into detailed and cadastral based land use and implementation plans and facilitate the translation into Schemes.

## Process Undertaken

This section outlines and briefly discusses the 2024-2027 Amajuba SDF Development Process. The approach that has been chosen in preparing the Amajuba District Municipality SDF (2024-2027) complies with the Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations of 2001 and the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA No. 16 of 2013). The drafting of this SDF adhered to the Guidelines for the Development of Spatial Development Frameworks, introduced by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform as well as the COGTA Spatial Planning Guidelines.

## Summary of the Status Quo

This section includes the current status of sectors within the ADM and has been developed through alignment with the SPLUMA Pillars of Biophysical, Built Environment and Socio Economic.

The following Legislation and Plans were analysed to ensure alignment:

### **National Consideration**

- The Constitution of South Africa Act No. 108 of 1996
- The Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000
- Promotion of Administrative Justice Act 3 of 2000
- Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act 41 of 2003
- The Inter-governmental Relations Framework Act 13 of 2005

- The Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989
- The National Environmental Management Bio-Diversity Act No. 10 of 2004
- The National Heritage Resource Act No. 25 of 1999
- The National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 (NEMA)
- The National Water Act No. 36 of 1998
- National Development Plan
- National Spatial Development Framework, 2018
- The White Paper on Wise Land Use Spatial Planning and Land Use Management
- Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No, 16 of 2013
- Local Government – Back to Basics Strategy 2015
- Integrated Service Delivery Model 2016

### **Provincial Consideration**

- Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS), 2016
- KwaZulu – Natal Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2021
- Provincial Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF), 2014
- Provincial Rural Development Framework, 2013
- KwaZulu – Natal Integrated Infrastructure Master Plan, 2019
- KwaZulu – Natal Human Settlements Master Spatial Plan, 2016
- Provincial Norms and Standards Public Social Facilities, 2020
- Provincial Norms and Standards Spatial Equity ,2020
- Provincial Planning and Development Norms and Standards for Electronic Communication Facilities, 2016

### **District Policy Alignment**

- Amajuba District Growth and Development Plan, 2017
- Amajuba District Municipality Spatial Development Framework (2023/2024). (Reviewed in 2024/2025)
- Amajuba District Municipality Integrated Development Plan 2023/2024 (IDP) (Review of 2024/2025)
- Amajuba District Municipality Environmental Management Framework, 2019
- District Rural Development Plan, 2019
- Amajuba District Municipality Water Services Development Plan 2016
- Amajuba District First Generation One Plan, 2020/2021
- Development Plan for Amajuba District Municipality, 2017
- Amajuba District Municipality Climate Change Response Plan, 2018
- Air Quality Management Plan, 2019

### **Local Municipal Policy Alignment**

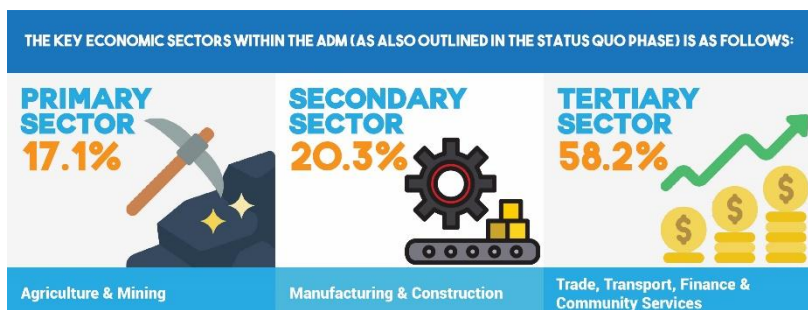
- Dannhauser Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework, 2017/2040
- eMadlangeni Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework, 2024/2025
- Newcastle Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework, 2024/2025

### **Socio-Economic Assessment**

According to Statistics South Africa Census 2016 and the Community Survey of 2022, the total population of the municipalities were as follows;

TOTAL POPULATION		
MUNICIPALITY	2016	2022
Newcastle Local	389 117	507710
Emadlangeni Local	36 869	36 948
Dannhauser Local	105 341	142 750
Amajuba District	531 327	687 408

The main economic sectors of the district are as follows.



The

demographics illustrates a population pyramid that constitutes of a predominately young population, which remains chronically unemployed. Furthermore, the demographics illustrate a relatively learned population, however almost half of this population does not have any source of income. This is one of the contributing factors to a declining population which results in an outward migration. The SDF will therefore have to analyse the aforesaid, as well as other factors which may contribute to curbing outward

migration, alleviating poverty, ensuring job creation, and promoting sustainable development.

The Socio-Economic Assessment also Spatially depict the social amenities distribution within the district. This relates to clinics, schools, community halls, police stations, libraries.

### Built-Environment Assessment

This section outlines the towns within the ADM though summarising key features and movement routes. The Built Environmental Framework also addresses the current Status relating to Infrastructure, transportation, Settlement patterns, etc. Some of the towns in the district include;

- Dannhauser
- Hattingspruit
- Newcastle
- Utrecht
- Madadeni
- Charlestown

The district is broken down into three (3) local municipalities as follows;

- Dannhauser Local Municipality which covers 1707 km<sup>2</sup> (24.04%) of the district area.
- Emadlangeni Local Municipality which covers 3539 km<sup>2</sup> (49.83%) of the district area.

- Newcatsle Local Municipality which covers 1856 km<sup>2</sup> (26.13%) of the district area.

### **Bio-Physical Assessment**

This assessment unpacks the critical biodiversity areas within the district as well as the natural ecosystems present within the district.

The vegetation type within the Municipality varies significantly but is dominated mainly by six vegetation types. These include:

- Northern KwaZulu Natal Moist Grassland,
- Northern Zululand Sourveld
- KwaZulu-Natal Highland Thornveld,
- Income Sandy Grassland
- Glencoe Moist Grassland
- Low Escarpment Moist Grassland

The formal conservation areas within the district include but are not limited to **Ntshingwayo Resort Game Park, Ncandu Nature Reserve / Incandu Forest Reserve** and National Monuments.

There are four (4) different types of conservation areas that can be found within the Amajuba District Municipality area:

- River Systems
- Dams
- Critical Biodiversity Areas

- Threatened Eco-systems

### **SWOT Analysis and Key Issues**

Spatial planning directives from the National and Provincial level as well as the district sector plans and local Municipal plans aims to unpack the state of the area or the sector within its location. Through a detailed analysis of these plans, we are able to create a picture of the positive and negative aspects of each sector within the areas that either fall within the district or surrounding the district which has equal impact on how the district functions.

The section highlights the SWOT Analysis and Key Issues pertaining to the Amajuba District Municipality. These have been developed through a Workshopping session with the Local Municipalities and Internal and External Municipal Departments. Some of the key issues that are of key importance include but are not limited to;

- Rural Sprawl which mirrors Urban Sprawl
- Investment Attraction in the context of unregulated foreign competition and urban decay
- Hybrid Land Tenure System (i.e., Communal Land Tenure vs Private Land Ownership coupled with Land Claims Deadlock).
- Poor Accessibility and Connectivity
- Lack of access to Food security
- Broadband accessibility and ICT
- Insufficient water storages
- Untapped agricultural potential

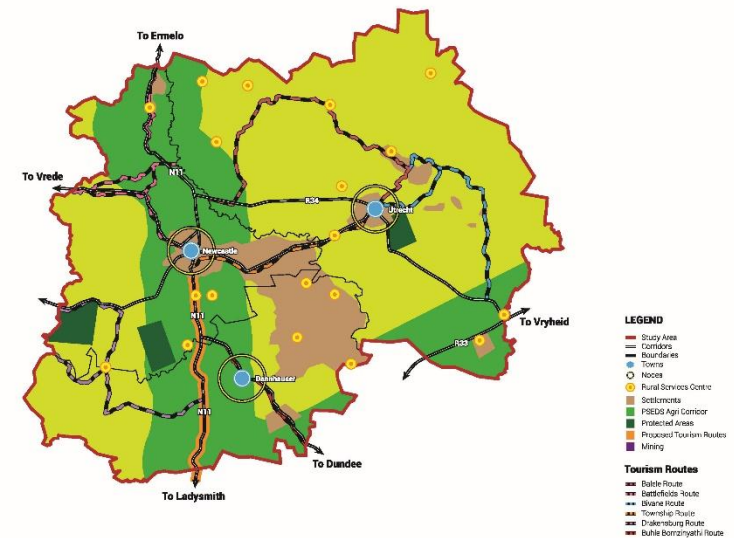
## Strategic Framework

The “Strategic Framework” in relation to a Spatial Development Framework refers to the strategic background and guidelines which will underpin the development of the Spatial proposals. It aims to identify the strategic spatial focus of and the municipality. The development strategy includes meaningful target measures and objectives that help focus on the key efforts that implement the strategy. The chapter takes the process shown in the diagram.



The following Concept plan is the preferred scenario to achieve the vision.

### CONCEPT PLAN



For the Amajuba District Spatial Development Framework there are Seven (7) Spatial Structuring Elements that can guide spatial development and decision-making in the district and these elements include: -

The Amajuba District SDF’s Vision is stated below;

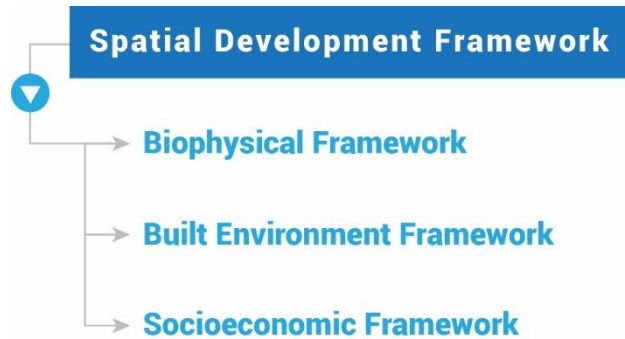
*“Amajuba district is to become a major player in the regional economy of eastern KwaZulu Natal by 2025 by collaborating with the surrounding districts. Through this collaboration, Amajuba will be able to utilise the economies of scale to uplift all the towns within the region and ensure its residents better access to opportunities and in turn create better livelihoods”*

- Nodes,
- Corridors
- Urban/ Settlement Edge
- Waterbodies
- Gateways
- Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs)
- Urban Revitalisation Areas Marginalized Townships

# Spatial Development Framework

A Spatial Development Framework is a framework that seeks to guide overall spatial distribution of current and desirable land uses within a municipality, in order to give effect to the vision, goals and objectives of the municipal IDP

The chapter takes the process shown in the diagram.

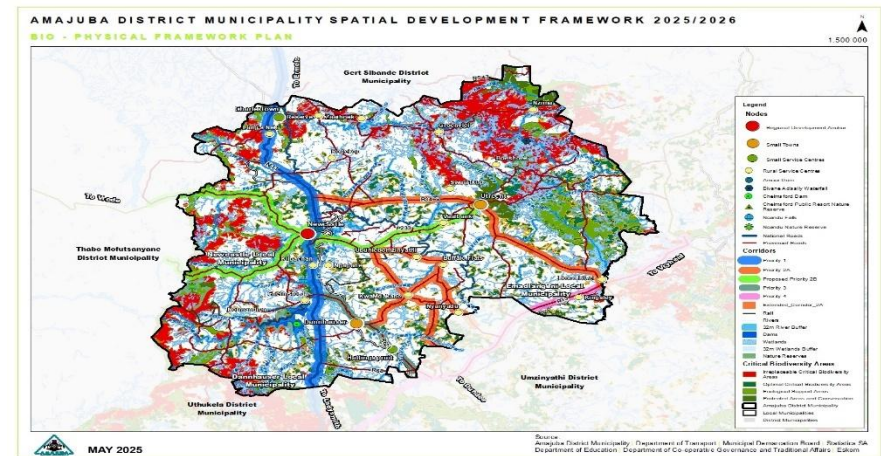


## Biophysical Framework

Agriculture is one of the strong economic drivers and areas have been identified for Intensive Agriculture to support the Agricultural Economic Industrial Hub and Agri-Park concept currently being investigated by National Treasury and the Kwa-Zulu Natal Department of Agriculture and Land Reform. Extensive agriculture is also practised near the scattered rural settlement and the intensive agriculture areas.

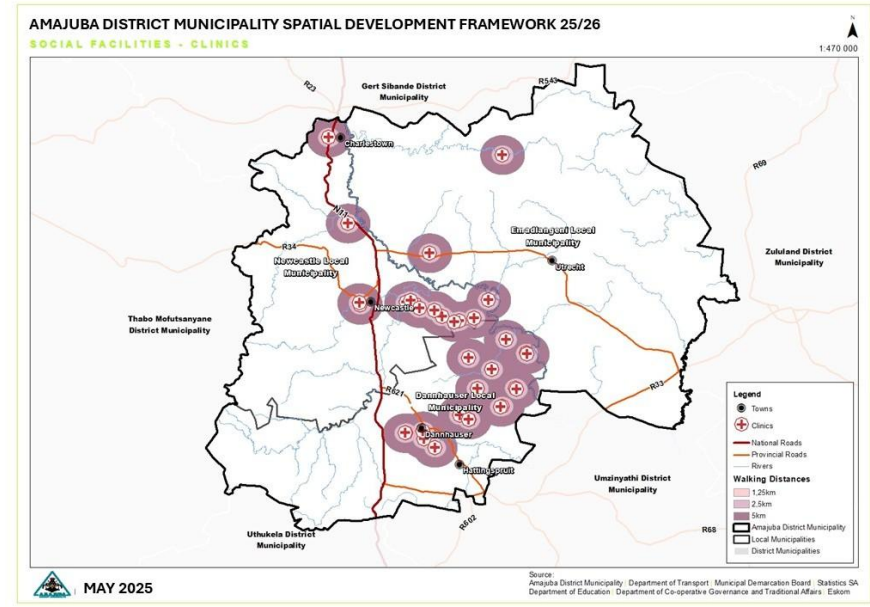
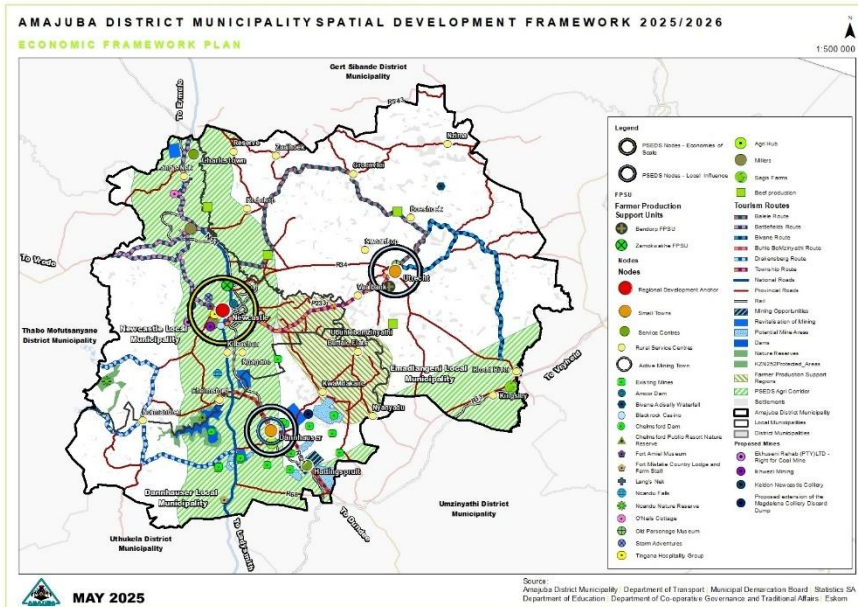
The concept looks at the nodes being developed to accommodate residential and alternative economic opportunities to create employment. Mining activities have deteriorated and enhancing alternative economic

sectors like Agro –processing and tourism can be possible sectors, which can support and ensure the sustainability of these nodes. From an environmental perspective, the natural environmental needs to be protected. We need to protect these areas by monitoring land uses near these areas. The environment is an asset which also needs to be marketed and promoted.



## Socio economic Framework

There are several Battlefields within the district, which need to be developed further and marketed to the tourists already visiting existing attractions.



## Built Environment

The concept for the future development of the district is to strengthen the existing residential nodes, both Urban and Rural areas and define the edges of these areas, to protect the areas of Agricultural potential as well as the areas of environmental sensitivity.

The following are some of the key spatial development drivers in the area:

- Land reform program, particularly its impact on agricultural land and establishment of new settlements on agricultural land.
- Low-income settlements located in isolated areas such from the major commercial nodes and employment opportunity areas.

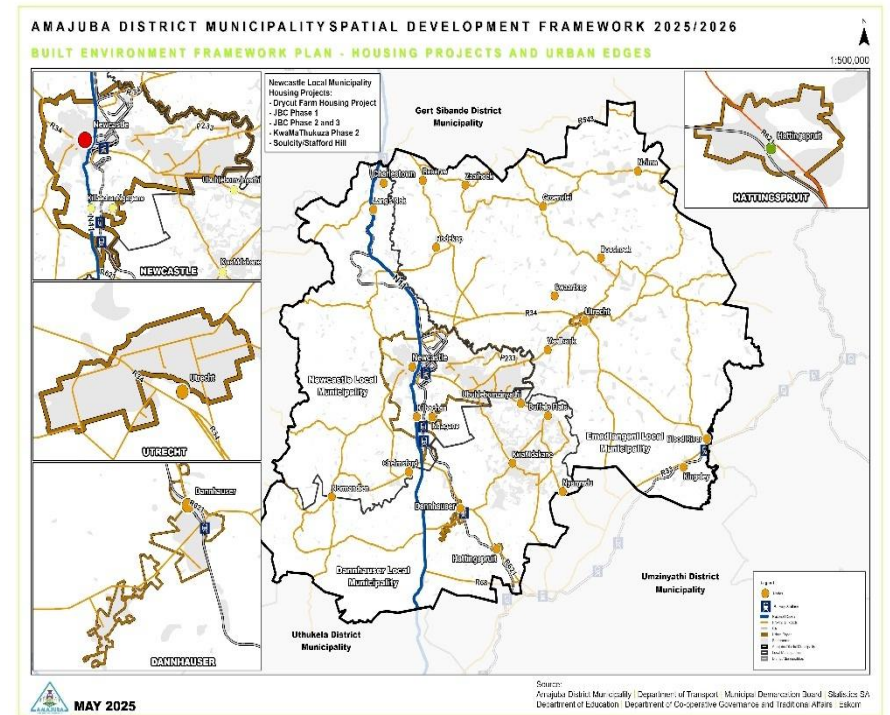
- Changes in the agricultural sector arising from an increasing number of farmers that are involved in game farming as opposed to livestock farming.
- Development along the corridors and nodes as identified in the NSDP and PSEDS.

## CHAPTER 5: LAND USE MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK

This section outlines the Land use Management within the district and how this should be undertaken within the district through the implementation of SPLUMA and the Spatial Planning Categories.

### Spatial Planning Categories:

- Spatial Planning Category A & B: Core and Buffer Areas
- Spatial Planning Category C: Agriculture Areas
- Spatial Planning Category D: Urban and Rural Areas
- Spatial Planning Category E: Industrial Areas
- Spatial Planning Category F: Surface Infrastructure and Building



## **CHAPTER 6: IMPLEMENTATION FRAMEWORK**

The Implementation Plan depicts the projects reviewed and identified as part of this SDF development process. Each project includes the following info:

1. Description of the Project
2. Responsible Department
3. Municipality/ Region
4. Source of Funding
5. Total Project Cost
6. Phased Budget

## **CHAPTER 7: CONCLUSION**

The development of the Spatial Development Framework is derived from the outcome of the Spatial Analysis and the feedback from the workshopping sessions regarding the key issues faced by various departments who operate within the space

# **INTRODUCTION**

# INTRODUCTION

## 1.A. Background

Section 26 of the District Government: Municipal Systems Act, No. 32 of 2000 (hereafter the MSA) stipulates that all municipalities are required to compile Spatial Development Frameworks (hereafter “SDFs”) as core component of their Integrated Development Plans (hereafter “IDPs”).

As such, this Amajuba District Municipality SDF is developed as a product that is sustainable, legally compliant with SPLUMA and provides clear guidance for growth and development.

In addition to the requirements of legal compliance and sustainability, it is imperative that an SDF provides for the localization of national and provincial sector specific policies and guidelines. Central to the process is the drive toward redressing the imbalances of the past which resulted in the spatial segregation of people, land use, social and economic activities.

The annual IDP assessments reveal that although some municipal SDFs within KZN are making headway in achieving legal compliance and the imperatives of the spatial integration of economic, social, ecological, and institutional arrangements, many Municipalities require assistance with such task. Many SDF’s across the province are found to be descriptive of the status quo and lacking in strategic direction for decision makers and investors. Based on the above, the Amajuba District Municipality’s SDF will

seek to establish “a sound strategic and innovative” approach which is realistic, collaboratively formed and proving sound land management guidance.

## 1.B. Project Phasing

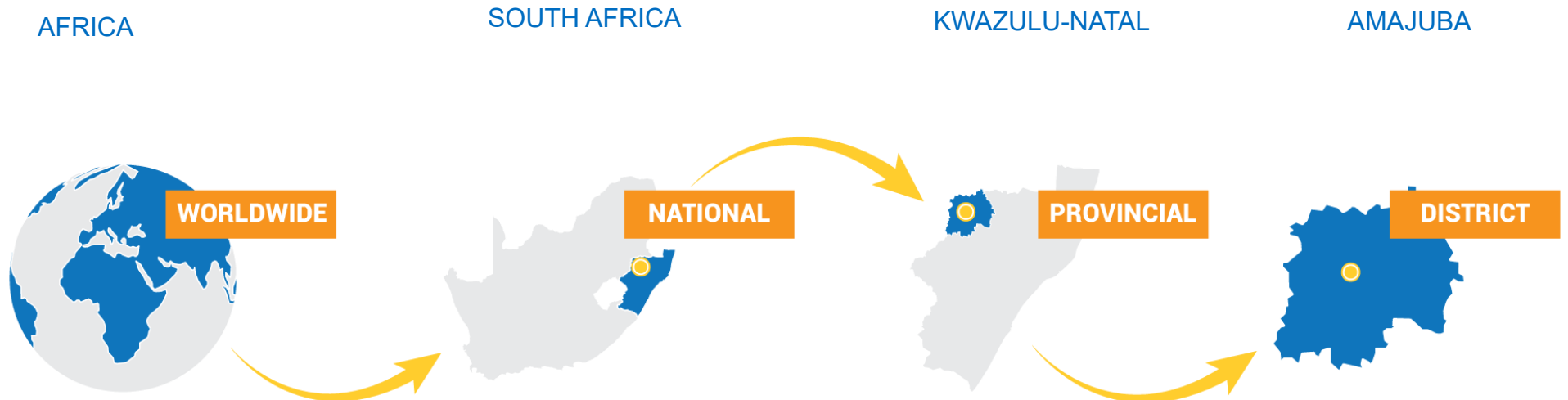
The development of the SDF followed the following phases.

<b>PHASE 1:</b>	Start Up
<b>PHASE 2:</b>	Policy Context and Vision Directives
<b>PHASE 3:</b>	Spatial Challenges and Opportunities
<b>PHASE 4:</b>	Spatial Proposals
<b>PHASE 5:</b>	Implementation Framework
<b>PHASE 6:</b>	Advertising and Consolidation of Information
<b>PHASE 7:</b>	Final SDF
<b>PHASE 8:</b>	Project Close Out

## 1.C. Locality Context

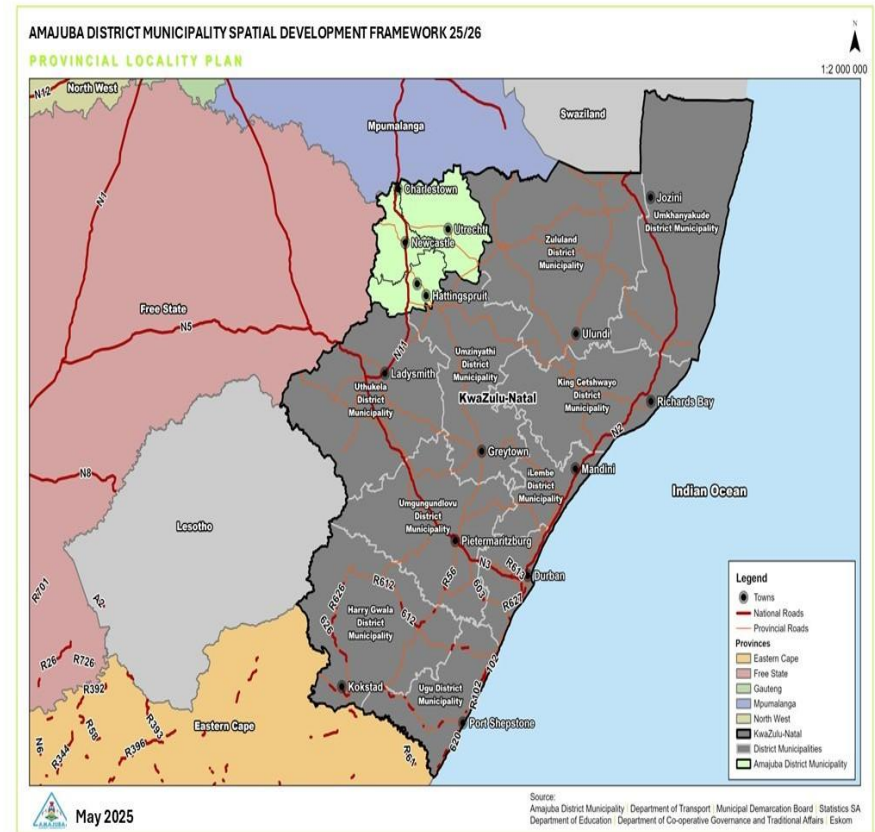
The following provides an overview of the district municipality Locality from various perspectives

:



### 1.C. 1 Provincial Locality

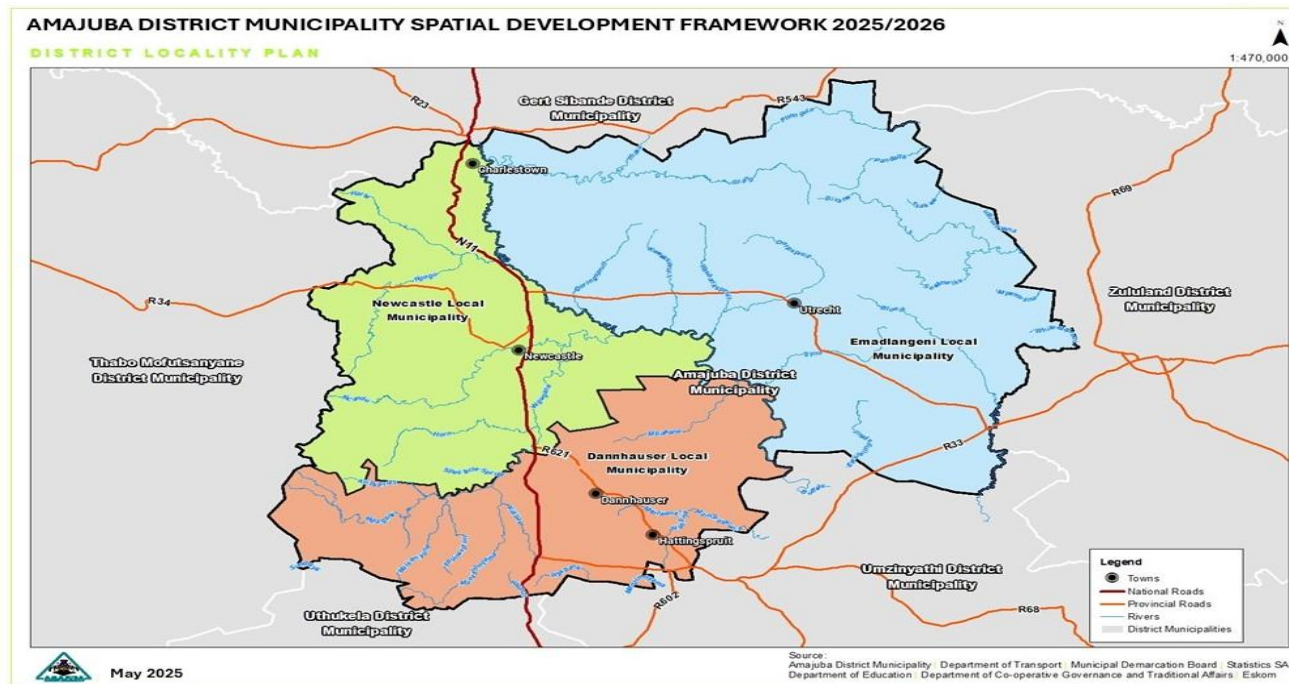
The KwaZulu-Natal Province is located in the South-eastern portion of the country, along the Indian Ocean and sharing borders with three other provinces, and the countries of Mozambique, Eswatini and Lesotho. It is bounded in the north by Eswatini and Mozambique, to the east by the Indian Ocean, to the south by the Eastern Cape Province, to the west by Lesotho and the Free State province, and to the northwest by the Mpumalanga Province.



PLAN 1 Provincial Locality

## 1.C. 2 District Locality

The Amajuba District Municipality is a Category C municipality located in the north-western corner of KwaZulu-Natal, bordering on the Free State Province and Limpopo. It is one of the smallest districts in the province, making up only 8% of its geographical area. The municipality comprises three local municipalities: Newcastle, eMadlangeni and Dannhauser Local Municipality.



PLAN 2 District Locality

### 1.C. 3 Local Locality

The following table provides an overview of the Local Municipalities, their size in relation to the others and the respective towns located within it.

Municipality	Main Towns	No. Wards	Area (km <sup>2</sup> )	% of the District
Dannhauser LM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Dannhauser</b></li> <li>• <b>Hattingspruit</b></li> <li>• <b>KwaMdakane</b></li> <li>• <b>Normandien</b></li> </ul>	<b>13</b>	<b>1707</b>	<b>24.04%</b>
eMadlangeni LM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Utrecht</b></li> <li>• <b>Kingsley</b></li> <li>• <b>Groenvlei</b></li> </ul>	<b>6</b>	<b>3539</b>	<b>49.83%</b>
Newcastle LM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Charlestown</b></li> <li>• <b>Newcastle</b></li> <li>• <b>Madadeni</b></li> <li>• <b>Osizweni</b></li> </ul>	<b>34</b>	<b>1856</b>	<b>26.13%</b>
<b>Amajuba District Municipality</b>		<b>53</b>	<b>7102</b>	<b>100%</b>

**STATUS**

**QUO**

# POLICY ASSESSMENT AND ALIGNMENT

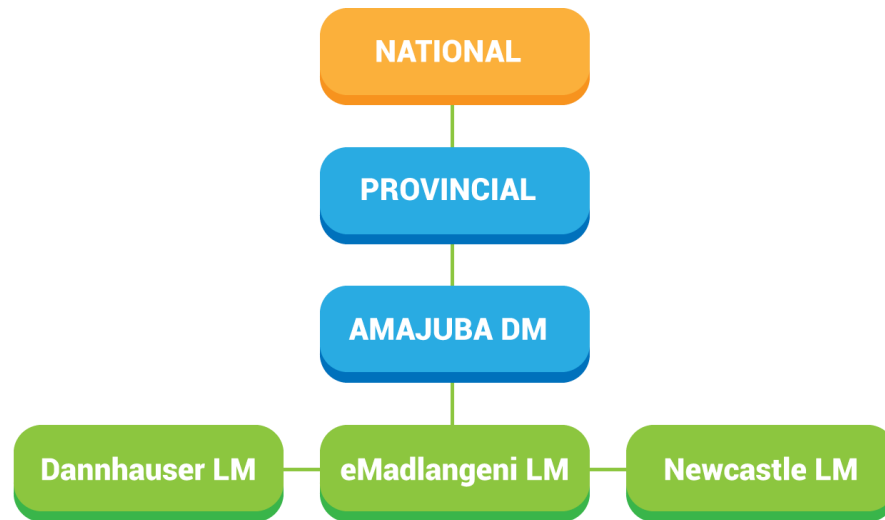


Figure 1: Policy Alignment

To give effect to principles of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No. 16 of 2013, the Spatial Development Framework must be formulated within the Integrated Development Framework. Furthermore, the principle and policies formulated in the Provincial Spatial Plan provides guidance in the formulation of the Amajuba District Municipality Spatial Development Framework (SDF).

The following Policy Alignment provides the summary and relationship of Amajuba District and the Local Municipalities from a National, Provincial, District and Local Municipal perspective.

The aim of this assessment is to unpack the policies which govern the district which should be taken cognisance of for this SDF.

## 2.A. National Policy Alignment

The national sphere of government develops and promulgates legislation, policies, plans and strategies which must be implemented by all spheres of government. This section aims to give a summary of the national policies and frameworks which have a direct and indirect impact on the spatial development and planning within the Amajuba District Municipality. Key national and provincial and plans include the national development plan, national spatial development perspective, back to basics and 2030 vision for KwaZulu – Natal.

### 2.A. 1 The Constitution of South Africa Act No. 108 of 1996

This Act defines the relationship between government institutions through the introduction of three (3) overlying planning processes and sets plans, each relating to each sphere of Government. To enable the state to respect, protect, promote, and fulfil this right and to ensure that the quality of life of each citizen is improved, the Constitution awarded major developmental responsibilities to local government.

Section 153 states that as part of the development duties, a municipality must:

- Structure and manage its administration, budgeting, and planning processes to give priority to the basic needs of the community.
- Promote the social and economic development of the community; and
- Participate in national and provincial development programmes.

Schedule 4 of the Constitution provides for functional areas of concurrent National and Provincial legislative competence in terms of regional planning and development, urban and rural development; and municipal planning while Schedule 5 makes provision for provincial planning.

The development of this SDF must, therefore, take into consideration the provision of the basic community needs of the people, promotion the social and economic development of the KwaZulu-Natal Province and at the same time aligning to the national and other provincial development programmes and projects.

**Implications:** Based on the Constitutional directives reflected in the table above, Amajuba District Municipality has the responsibility to respond in its area as follows:

**Institutional Structure:** To achieve its Constitutional duties, the ADM has a responsibility to ensure that its systems of administration, financial management, accountability, and public participation are adequately functional to support growth and development in the municipal area.

Ba has the responsibility to provide cost effective, efficient, and sustainable infrastructure to its population. Provision of basic infrastructure is fundamental to economic growth and development.

**Local Economic & Social Development:** The ADM has the responsibility to ensure that it initiates activities or investments in areas that enhance its local economy and social development. It should work collaboratively with other spheres of government to ensure that it promotes programmes and projects that will increase job opportunities and eradicate poverty within its area of jurisdiction.

**Environment:** The ADM has the responsibility to promote a safe and healthy environment by discouraging development in its sensitive areas, dumping of garbage in inappropriate areas, water, and air pollution. This should be addressed through appropriate policy and monitoring measures as part of enhancing the spatial quality in the district.

**Community Involvement:** The ADM has the responsibility to involve communities and community organizations in all its development as such developments have direct or indirect impact on them. Their participation in any development in the municipalities is enshrined in the constitution.

## 2.A. 2 The Municipal Systems Act 32 of 2000

The Municipal Systems Act (MSA – Act 32 of 2000, as amended) gives substance to the provisions in the SA Constitution relating to the developmental roles and functions of local government, included in which is the function of Municipal Planning.

In this regard, Chapter 5 of the MSA requires all municipalities to prepare Integrated Development Plans (IDPs) and, furthermore, Section 26(e) of the Act lists an SDF as a core component of an IDP.

**Implications:** The ADM should provide core principles, mechanisms and processes that are necessary to enable it to move progressively towards social and economic upliftment of its communities.

### 2.A. 3 Promotion of Administrative Justice Act 3 of 2000

This Act gives effect to Section 33 of the Constitution (Just Administrative Action). It intends changing the way Government interacts with the people it serves as it ensures that decisions that affect the public must be taken in a way that is procedurally fair.

The Act seeks to protect the public from unlawful, unreasonable, and procedurally unfair administrative decisions and gives people affected by administrative decisions the right to request reasons for administrative actions and decisions and to have such actions reviewed in a court of law.

Among the gaps in this Act is that there are situations where officials do not inform citizens of their right to some administrative decisions that are taken by them, and nothing is done to them. Also, awareness-raising activities often do not create awareness of the need to provide reasons for decisions. It should also be stressed that while the need for administrative decisions is communicated to be fair, they do not explain what it means in practice.

**Implications:** The SDF must ensure that stakeholders are accessible to procedures and mechanisms that will promote administrative justice and protect the public from unlawful, unreasonable, and procedurally unfair administrative decisions. It must give people affected by administrative decisions the right to request for reasons for administrative actions and decisions taken against them. The SDF must also ensure a targeted and strategic efforts to increase awareness of relevant stakeholders to promote understanding of the limited and vague conditions of the Act

### 2.A 4 The Inter – governmental Relations Framework Act of 2005

**According to this Act, its objective is:**

- To provide within the principles of co-operative government as set out in Chapter 3 of the Constitution a framework for the national government, provincial governments and local governments, and all organs of state within those governments.
- To promote and facilitate co-ordination in the implementation of policy and legislation, about coherent government; effective provision of services; monitoring implementation of policy and legislation; and realisation of national priorities.
- To provide for mechanisms and procedures that assist in the facilitation the settlement of intergovernmental disputes and other matters connected therewith.

**Implications:** The development of the SDF must ensure co-ordination interventions of various role players in line with development vision of the SDF by playing a co-ordinating and integrating role among different sectors within government as well as between the public and private sectors. This in effect means that the public participation process should be central to the development of the SDF. There is also a need for monitoring and evaluation of the implementation of the SDF's programmes and projects as well as its policies and legislation and provision should be made to ensure effective intergovernmental conflicts resolution.

#### 2.A 5 The Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989

The Act provides for the listing of activities that require certain environmental impact assessment procedures to be complied with before implementation. This Act is of note for the activities of settlement planning and land use management, as it requires environmental approvals to be granted before land use changes that are listed may be approved by the land use regulating body.

**Implications:** The ADM should ensure that any development that will take place should be compliant to the Environmental Act.

#### 2.A. 6 The National Environmental Management Bio – Diversity Act No. 10 of 2004

The Act makes provision for the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity within the framework of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998; the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological

resources; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting involving indigenous biological resources; and the establishment and functions of a South African National Biodiversity Institute.

**Implications:** The ADM should liaise with the relevant department to ensure the management and conservation of South Africa's biodiversity. Furthermore, it should ensure the protection of ecosystems and advocate for sustainable use of indigenous biological resources.

#### 2.A. 7 The National Heritage Resource Act No. 25 of 1999

The Act provides for the creation of the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA). SAHRA and provincial heritage resources authorities are obliged to identify those places that have special national and/or provincial significance in terms of heritage assessment criteria. Once declared, a heritage resource site is protected in law from certain actions, including alteration, subdivision and/or a change in the planning status unless the relevant heritage resources authority issues a permit for such action.

**Implications:** The municipality must liaise with the relevant department to co-ordinate and promote the management of its heritage resources.

#### 2.A. 8 The National Water Act No. 36 of 1998

The Act provides that no person or authority shall establish a township unless the Layout Plan or Site Development Plan indicates in a clear manner (that is acceptable to the approving authority) the maximum level likely to be reached by floodwaters on an average once in 100 years (i.e.,

the 1 in 100-year flood line). However, in practice, development is sometimes permitted up to the 1 in 50-year flood line, as this was previously the norm. In addition, the Act provides for a range of protective and preventative measures against the pollution of wetlands, watercourses and estuaries, coastlines/shorelines etc.

**Implications:** The Act makes provision for river flow management and allows the Minister of Water Affairs to regulate land-based activities that impact on stream flow.

#### 2.A. 9 The National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 (NEMA)

The Act establishes in law certain principles that provide a framework for environmental management in South Africa. In addition, NEMA makes provision for the formulation of Environmental Implementation Plans by Provinces. These Implementation Plans are the vehicle for implementing the NEMA principles, and municipalities are required to adhere to them.

**Implications:** The ADM is characterized by several intrinsic environmental qualities which needs to be enhanced and maintained as such it is important to comply with all environmental laws such as the National Environmental Management Act No. 107 of 1998 (NEMA). Priority conservation areas have been identified within the municipal area. Protection of conservation areas for eco-tourism opportunities is also prevalent; particular evident from the catalytic projects aimed at growing the economy of the region, are as

#### 2.A. 10 National Development Plan 2030

**“The NDP reminds us that South Africa needs to invest in a strong network of economic infrastructure designed to support the county’s medium- and long-term economic and social objectives”.**

The National Development Plan 2030 was developed by the National Planning Commission in the office of the President in 2012. The Plan sets out an integrated strategy for accelerating growth, eliminating poverty, and reducing inequality by 2030. The NDP, supported by the New Growth Path and other relevant programmes, provides a platform to look beyond the current constraints to the transformation imperatives over the next 20 to 30 years. Its 2030 goals are to eliminate income poverty and reduce inequality.

The NDP's human settlement targets, as set out in Chapter 8, focuses on transforming human settlements and the national space economy. They include: more people living closer to their places of work; better quality public transport; and more jobs in proximity to townships. To achieve these targets the NDP advocates strong measures to prevent further development of housing in marginal places, increased urban densities to support public transport, incentivising economic activity in and adjacent to townships; and engaging the private sector in the gap housing market.

## Transforming human settlement and the national space economy

**KEY POINTS**

- Respond systematically, to entrenched spatial patterns across all geographic scales that exacerbate social inequality and economic inefficiency.
- In addressing these patterns we must take account of the unique needs and potentials of different rural and urban areas in the context of emerging development corridors in the southern African subregion.
- The state will review its housing policies to better realise constitutional housing rights, ensure that the delivery of housing is to be used to restructure towns and cities and strengthen the livelihood prospects of households.

- Active citizenship in the field of spatial development will be supported and incentivised through a range of interventions including properly funded, citizen-led neighbourhood vision and planning processes and the introduction of social compacts from neighbourhood to city level.
- Planning in South Africa will be guided by a set of normative principles to create spaces that are liveable, equitable, sustainable, resilient and efficient, and support economic opportunities and social cohesion.
- South Africa will develop a national spatial framework and resolve the current deficiencies with the local system of integrated development planning and progressively develop the governance and administrative capability to undertake planning at all scales.

Figure 2: The key Spatial Directives Chapters of the NDP

Over the course of its 15 chapters, the NDP sets out its basic objectives and proposed actions in relation to a wide range of fundamental development challenges, from developing the country's economy and increasing employment to fighting corruption and achieving nation building and social cohesion.

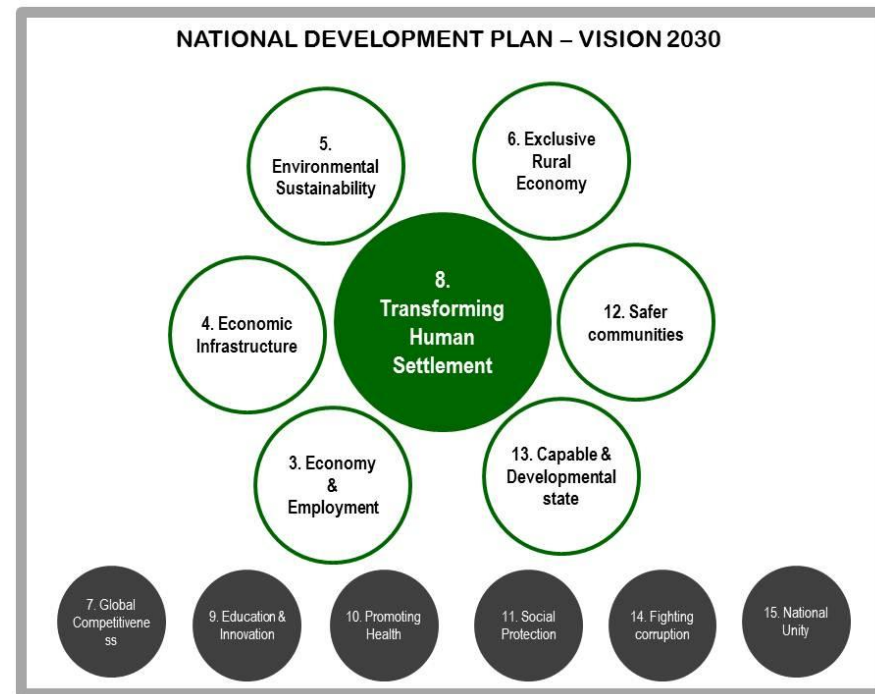


Figure 3: Chapter 8 of the NDP

For the **purposes of the ADM**, key policy direction is provided across the span of the document but, regarding spatial development, the NDP applies most directly in **chapter 8** of the NDP, which deals with **transforming human settlement** and the national space economy. Other goals relevant to achieving the desired spatial form and a more viable space-economy are:

- Building of safer communities through developing community safety centres to prevent crime, and improvement of education,

- Training and innovation through strengthening youth service programmes and introducing new,
- Community-based programmes to offer young people life skills training, as well as entrepreneurship training and opportunities to participate in community development programmes while expanding the number of further education and training (FET) colleges.

**Chapter 5** of the NDP focuses on **environmental sustainability** and **resilience** through an equitable transition to a low-carbon economy, which will also have implications on the way the spatial planning and development in South Africa is approached.

**Chapter 6** sets out specific targets and goals towards establishing a more **inclusive rural economy** through integrated rural development. The focus here is on increased investment in new agricultural technologies, research, and the development of adaptation strategies for the protection of rural livelihoods and expansion of commercial agriculture.

Chapter 8, which focuses on the country's spatial planning system, requires that: all municipal and provincial SDFs are translated into 'spatial contracts that are binding across national, provincial and local governments'; the current planning system should 'actively support the development of plans that cross municipal and even provincial boundaries', especially to deal with biodiversity protection, climate-change adaptation, tourism and transportation; and every municipality should have an 'explicit spatial

restructuring strategy' which must include the identification of 'priority precincts for spatial restructuring'.

Within the context of aiming to transform the space economy and the unsustainable human settlement patterns of the past, the NDP proposes that specific focus areas for intervention should include: -

- Responding in a systematic and sustained way to dysfunctional spatial patterns of settlement that were entrenched in the past (i.e., it is crucial to break with the past way of fragmented and sprawling spatial development)
- Using housing development processes as tools to assist in the restructuring of urban settlements, over time.
- The improvement of planning systems and, particularly, the strengthening of collaborative approaches towards development planning and management between different spheres and agencies of government.
- In the latter regard, a priority is the progressive development of capacity of responsible agencies of government to administer their functions, including planning. This is most pertinent to the DM in its role of facilitating and supporting Local Municipalities
- Crucially – with reference to SPLUMA – reaffirming of a principle-led approach to planning that steer away from previous deterministic and control-oriented approaches to planning.

The implication of these guiding principles are far reaching from a spatial development perspective. It is believed that Principle 2 has sustained and

possibly fuelled the large scale of peri-urban sprawl which has occurred in municipalities. The reason being that public sector funding is directed across the province to provide basic infrastructure in response to burgeoning settlement growth. It is believed that because of this, opportunities influence development into corridors and nodes have largely been lost as a result. Therefore, as part of this SDF, the following will have to be determined:

- Where are the areas with economic potential and what local valuable resources exist that could help overcome the poverty in the area?
- How can the SDF assist in focusing efforts and funding programmes to maximize the potential which is underdeveloped?
- Where are the transport activity corridors, development nodes and special development areas where development could be directed?

The NSDPs “Shared Impact” approach, to achieve greatest impact and return on investment in common spatial areas, will enable focused investment by all spheres of government, according to economic potential, activity corridors and nodes, and prioritized intervention areas, is of critical importance.

**Implications:** The ADM does not appear prominently on the NDP. However, there were a few capital projects stipulated on the municipal IDP which share infrastructure developmental themes of the policy objective of NDP. These include the construction of RDP houses, installation of electrification in provision of enabling infrastructure for economic and social development

## 2.A. 11 National Spatial Development Framework, 2018

### GUIDELINES

Consolidate and direct the rapid population growth of the country to national urban nodes, clusters, and corridors by (1) creating quality human settlements and (2) centres of human capital excellence, innovation, trade, inclusive green economies, and regional enterprises, and in the process reaping the urban dividend.

Consolidate settlement growth in (1) growth regions in emerging and fast-growing urban nodes, and (2) distressed and sparsely populated areas and areas that are becoming increasingly more arid in existing large urban nodes.

### NATIONAL NETWORK OF REGIONAL DEVELOPMENT ANCHORS

Identify, support, and strengthen strategically located regional anchor towns through (1) targeted settlement planning and development, (2) higher-order social infrastructure provision, (3) focused support for small and medium-sized enterprise development, industrialisation, and economic diversification.

- Use the investment and enhanced social service provision in regional anchors to encourage officials working in these rural regions to stay in these settlements and contribute to the local

economy, instead of commuting to larger towns or cities on a daily or weekly basis.

- Clearly identify the role of specific settlements as gateways and interchanges on the regional public transportation network and incorporate these as such into the planning of functional rural regions.
- Strengthen the connectivity of traditional areas and rural settlements with (1) higher-order urban settlements, and (2) economic systems in functional rural regions by making use of road and rail network and regional corridor development.
- Plan social infrastructure provision within a regional-rural setting using the 'social services wheel', and use such investment to establish and create well-functioning, compact, lively, rural settlements, and regional rural systems

### **NATIONAL RESOURCE PRODUCTION REGIONS**

Areas within the ADM have been identified as Eco-Resource Production and Livelihood areas. The eastern half of the country has areas with moderate to high levels of 'agricultural potential'. Although agriculture has been developed in many of the areas where this potential exists, there remain areas of high agricultural potential that have not yet been fully utilized. At the same time, there are also significant areas of dense human settlement on high-value agricultural land.

Several key national conservation areas also feature prominently in the areas identified as productive rural regions. Although some communities

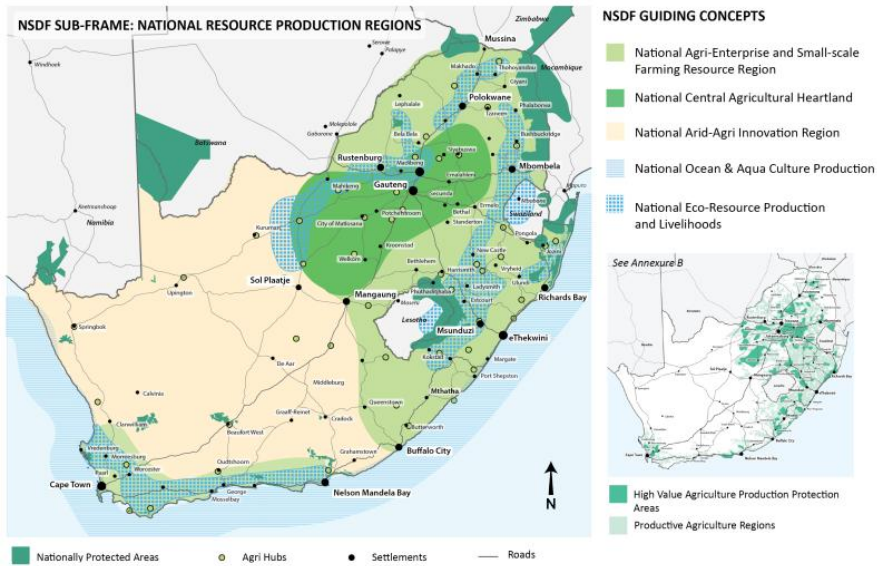
already do benefit from these resources, much more can be gained from this relationship, notably in eco-tourism.

Sustainable resource use and land-use management: Intergovernmental cooperation and collaboration in (1) the development of productive rural regions, and (2) the management of natural resource use in such regions will be required. This is especially important in municipalities with significant parcels of high-value agricultural land that are under pressure from human settlement and/or mining. The focus of such collaboration, which should have a (1) spatial planning, (2) land use management and (3) inclusive growth component, must at least be on:

- Water security, including the mitigation of the impacts of regional rural development on national water resource availability and quality;
- Food security, including (1) the sustainable use of high-value agricultural land, and (2) the protection of national food production areas; and
- Land reform, including (1) the pursuit of justice in access to high value agricultural land, and (2) the provision of support to new and emerging farmers in such areas.

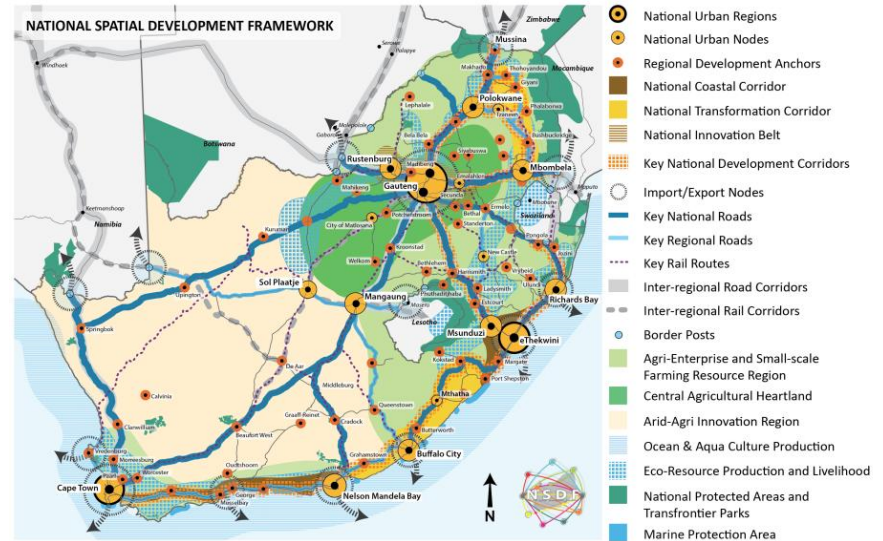
Climate change adaptation: Climate change in the form of less rain, greater unpredictability in rainfall, higher temperatures, more very hot days, and a greater risk of veld-fires, has far-reaching implications for agricultural produce and habitation in all South Africa's productive rural regions. Even in regions where the impacts of climate change will be less severe, the more

severe impacts in other regions will lead to increased pressure on the use of land and other natural resources in such 'less severely affected regions. To counter and mitigate the impacts of climate change, innovative agricultural adaptation, involving a move to (1) agricultural commodities that are more resistant to extreme and harsh conditions, and (2) agricultural practices that are better suited to the anticipated adverse climatic conditions, will be required. At the same time, climate change may open opportunities for new economic activities in some regions, notably in solar energy generation.



PLAN 4: NSDF Sub-Frame National Resource Regions

The overall NSDF plan is highlighted below.



PLAN 5: NSDF, 2018

**Implications:** The Amajuba District Municipality has the responsibility to transform its urban area rural areas, develop its corridors, provide social services, ecological infrastructure and transport, communications and energy infrastructure network that is aspiring towards achieving the NSDF vision. The people in the area depend on production for living (Eco-Resource and Production and Livelihood).

## 2.A. 12 The White Paper on Wise Land Use Spatial Planning and Land Use Management

**This White Paper, released in 2001, intends to show practical ways in which spatial planning and land use management in South Africa can move towards Integrated Planning for Sustainable Management of Land Resources. Overall, this is seen as planning that ensures:**

- That development and developmental programmes are holistic and comprehensive so that all factors in relation to land resources and environmental conservation are addressed and included. In considering competing needs for land, and in selecting the "best" use for a given area of land, all possible land-use options must be considered.
- That all activities and inputs are integrated and coordinated with each other, combining the inputs of all disciplines and groups.
- That all actions are based on a clear understanding of the natural and legitimate objectives and needs of individual land users to obtain maximum consensus.

Whilst the White Paper also suggests the minimum elements that must be included in a Spatial Development Framework, it is submitted that the national Spatial Planning & Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA – Act 16 of 2013), though it is not yet implemented, will provide greater direction in that regard. In the interim, it is again reaffirmed in the White Paper that any Spatial Development Framework should operate as an indicative plan,

whereas a Land Use Scheme should deal with the detailed administration of land development and land use changes.

## 2.A. 13 The National Land Transport Transition Act 22 of 2000

The purpose of the act is to provide for the transformation and restructuring of the national land transport system of the country.

- Land transport planning must be integrated with the land development process,
- Enhance the effective functioning of cities, towns and rural areas through integrated planning of transport infrastructure and facilities,
- Direct employment opportunities and activities, mixed land uses and high-density residential development into high utilisation public transport corridors interconnected through development nodes within the corridors,
- Discourage urban sprawl where public transport services are inadequate,
- Give priority to infilling and densification along public transport corridors,
- Enhance accessibility to public transport services and facilities,
- There are various road traffic legislations in South Africa. The following are some of the legislations:
  - The National Road Traffic Act, (Act 93 of 1996),
  - The National Road Traffic Regulations, 2000,
  - The National Land Transport Act, (Act 5 of 2009),
  - The Cross-Border Land Transport Act, (Act 4 of 1998),

- The South African National Roads Agency Limited and National Roads Act, (Act 7 of 1998),
- Various Municipal and Provincial Road Traffic Bylaws, and
- The Road Transport Act, (Act 29 of 1989)

**Implications:** The Amajuba District Municipality will ensure the SDF enhances the effective functioning of cities, towns and rural areas through integrated planning of transport infrastructure and facilities and consider all issues raised by the Land Transport Transition Act.

## 2.A. 13 The Neighbourhood Planning and Design Guide (RedBook)

The overall aim of this guide is to give effect to the vision for South African human settlements by providing guidance regarding neighbourhood-level planning and design. The Guide is intended to address some of the challenges and assist in achieving the aims and objectives as well as support South Africa's efforts to achieve the Sustainable Development Goals and pursue the visions outlined in the New Urban Agenda and Agenda 2063.

**Implications:** Indicate the qualities that should be sought within the neighbourhoods of the ADM and to provide practical guidance on how these qualities can be achieved through the implementation of physical development projects. The guide is also used to inform neighbourhood-level decision-making related to the planning and design of the various physical components of human settlements; and encourage integrated settlement

## 2.A. 14 Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No. 16 of 2013

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act No. 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA) was assented to by the President of the Republic of South Africa on 5 August 2013. SPLUMA is a framework act for all spatial planning and land use management legislation in South Africa. It seeks to promote consistency and uniformity in procedures and decision-making. Other objectives include addressing historical spatial imbalances and the integration of the principles of sustainable development into land use and planning regulatory tools and legislative instruments.

SPLUMA requires national, provincial, and municipal spheres of government to prepare SDFs that establish a clear vision which must be developed through a thorough inventory and analysis based on national spatial organization principles and local long-term development goals and plans.

SDFs are thus mandatory at all three spheres of government. Sub-section 12(2) confirms that all three spheres must participate in each other's processes of spatial planning and land use management and each sphere must be guided by its own SDF when taking decisions relating to land use and development.

Chapter 4 Part A. of SPLUMA sets out the focus and general requirements that must guide the preparation and compilation of SDF products at the various scales. Chapter 4 is divided into six parts of which Part A provides an extensive introduction to the purpose and role of SDFs and sets out the preparation requirements and expectations of the SDF process.

**Section 12 (1) sets out general provisions which are applicable to the preparation of all scales of SDFs. These provisions require that all SDFs must:**

- Interpret and represent the spatial development vision of the responsible sphere of government and competent authority;
  - Be informed by a long-term spatial development vision;
  - Represent the integration and trade-off of all relevant sector policies and plans;
  - Guide planning and development decisions across all sectors of government;
  - Guide a provincial department or municipality in taking any decision or exercising any discretion in terms of this act or any other law relating to spatial planning and land use management systems;
  - Contribute to a coherent, planned approach to spatial development in the national, provincial, and municipal spheres;
  - Provide clear and accessible information to the public and private sector and provide direction for investment purposes;
- Include previously disadvantaged areas, areas under traditional leadership, rural areas, informal settlements, slums and land holdings of state-owned enterprises and government agencies and address their inclusion and integration into the spatial, economic, social, and environmental objectives of the relevant sphere;
- Address historical spatial imbalances in development;
- Identify the long-term risks of spatial patterns of growth and development and the policies and strategies necessary to mitigate those risks;
  - Provide direction for strategic developments, infrastructure investment, promote efficient, sustainable, and planned investments by all sectors and indicate priority areas for investment in land development;
  - Promote a rational and predictable land development environment to create trust and stimulate investment;
  - Take cognizance of any environmental management instrument adopted by the relevant environmental management authority;
  - Give effect to national legislation and policies on mineral resources and sustainable utilisation and protection of agricultural resources; and
- Consider and, where necessary, incorporate the outcomes of substantial public engagement, including direct participation in the process through public meetings, public exhibitions, public debates

and discourses in the media and any other forum or mechanisms that promote such direct involvement.

**Section 12 (2) stipulates that:**

- The national government, a provincial government and a municipality must participate in the spatial planning and land use management processes that impact on each other to ensure that the plans and programmes are coordinated, consistent and in harmony with each other.
- A spatial development framework adopted in terms of this Act must guide and inform the exercise of any discretion or of any decision taken in terms of this Act or any other law relating to land use and development of land by that sphere of government.

**The SPLUMA Principles are detailed as follows: -**

**Spatial Justice**

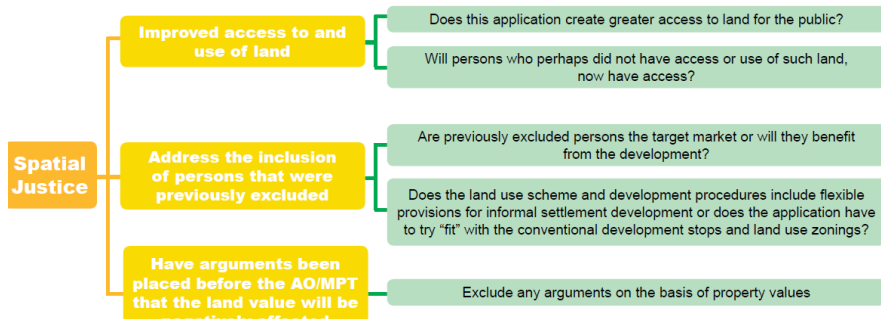


Figure 6: Spatial Justice

Each development application must be assessed to determine whether it will contribute to a more just and equitable spatial outcome. Spatial justice incorporates important active intentions, such as:

- Inclusivity – actively promoting the inclusion, rather than the exclusion, of disadvantaged groups and areas;
- Redress – to make up for past imbalances and injustices;
- Increased access – by disadvantaged groups and spatially through well located developments;
- Incorporation of disadvantaged areas – to create a more just spatial form, and

Flexible mechanisms with applicability in previously excluded areas – inclusion of incremental development procedures for upgrading informal settlements for example and developing suitable zoning and regulations for slums or informal areas or traditional areas where existing procedures made the development and use of land illegal and criminalized residents.

## Spatial Sustainability

This principle looks at the longer-term view of development and embraces the concepts of environment, social and economic sustainability.

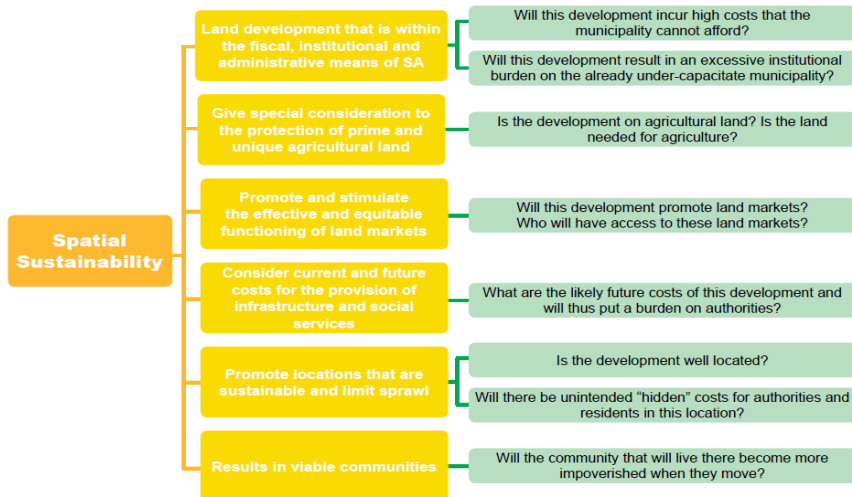


Figure 7: Spatial Sustainability

## Spatial Efficiency

This principle embodies the notion that we need to use our resources efficiently and not be wasteful of them and of our time and capacity as we have resource constraints. We must make the best and most efficient use possible with the limited resources available.

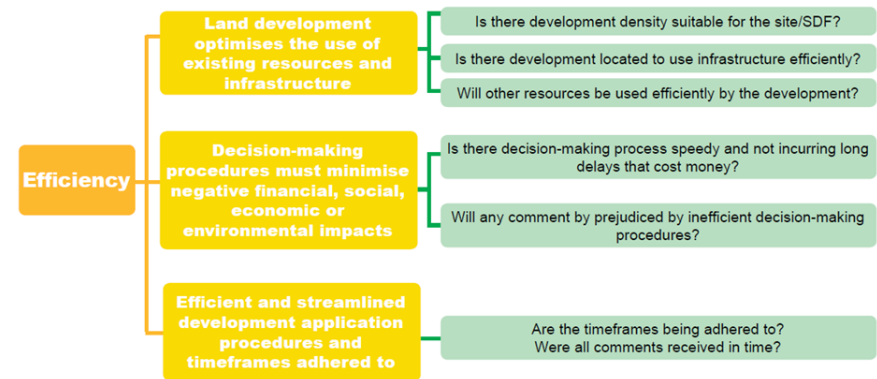


Figure 8: Spatial Efficiency

## Spatial Resilience

This principle embodies the notion that communities that live in vulnerable spatial locations have less ability to withstand economic and social shocks so spatial plans and policies need to be flexible to enable them to continue to have sustainable livelihoods.

**When assessing an application in terms of this principle one could ask:**

- Will this development make this marginal or vulnerable community more vulnerable?
- Will it deprive them of certain resources necessary to support their livelihoods?

## Spatial Governance

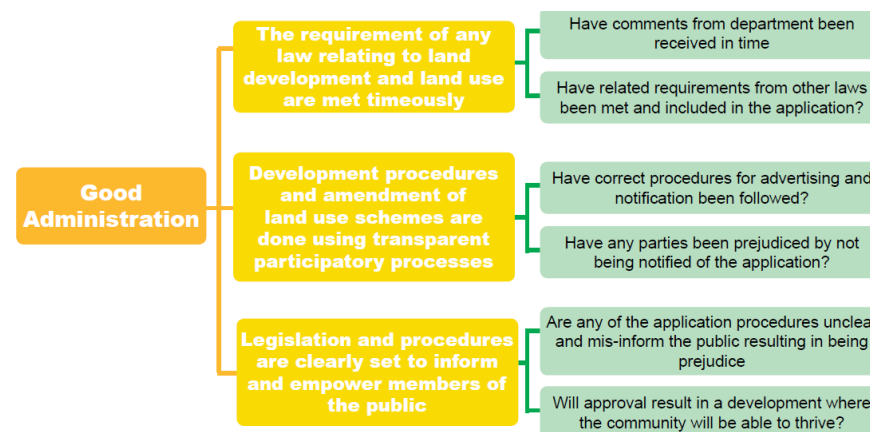


Figure 9: Spatial Governance

## 2.A. 15 Local Government – Back to Basics Strategy 2015

Back to Basics – serving our communities better” is simply a programme aimed at building a responsive, caring and accountable local government to improve the functioning of municipalities to better serve communities by getting the basic right “.

**According to the Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs (COGTA), the key performance areas for the “Back-to-Basics” approach include the following:**

- Basic services - creating decent living conditions;
- Good governance – the heart of the effective functioning of municipalities;

- Public participation – putting people first;
- Sound financial management; and
- Institutional capacity – building capable institutions and administrations.

The “Back-to-Basics” programme also calls for a collaborative relationship between Traditional Leaders and Municipalities in advancing development and service delivery issues.

It provides for an indicative framework for major infrastructural investment therefore the SDF must ensure that all three spheres of government (national, provincial, and local) have an important role to play in promoting that municipalities are well-functioned to fulfil their key performance areas. The SDF should promote an effective and responsive planning in all in governance activities to achieve community capacitation, stakeholder engagement (community participation) and sound financial management.

## 2.A. 16 District Development Model (DDM)

The District Development Model was initiated by President Cyril Ramaphosa in his Budget Speech in 2019. The President in the 2019 Presidency Budget Speech (2019) identified the “pattern of operating in silos” as a challenge which led to “to lack of coherence in planning and implementation and has made monitoring and oversight of government’s programme difficult”. The consequence has been non-optimal delivery of services and diminished impact on the triple challenges of poverty, inequality, and employment.

The President further called for the rolling out of “a new integrated district-based approach to addressing our service delivery challenges [and] localise[d] procurement and job creation, that promotes and supports local businesses, and that involves communities.

The Model consists of a process by which joint and collaborative planning is undertaken at local, district and metropolitan by all three spheres of governance resulting in a single strategically focussed One Plan for each of the 44 districts and 8 metropolitan geographic spaces in the country, wherein the district is seen as the ‘landing strip’.

The District Development Model builds on the White Paper on Local Government (1998), which seeks to ensure that “local government is capacitated and transformed to play a developmental role”. The White Paper says developmental local government “is local government committed to working with citizens and groups within the community to find sustainable ways to meet their social, economic and material needs and improve the quality of their lives”.

To which end, developmental local government is seen as having four interrelated characteristics of “maximising social development and economic growth; integrating and coordinating; democratising development; and leading and learning”. For local government to advance this, the Constitution calls on “national and provincial governments to support and strengthen the capacity of municipalities to manage their own affairs”.

Therefore, the model is a practical Intergovernmental Relations (IGR) mechanism to enable all three spheres of government to work together, with communities and stakeholders, to plan, budget and implement in unison.

In so doing the vexing service delivery challenges can also be turned into local level development opportunities, through localised procurement and job creation which “promotes and supports local businesses, and that involves communities

**The objectives of the District Development Model are to:**

- Coordinate a government response to challenges of poverty, unemployment, and inequality particularly amongst women, youth and people living with disabilities.
- Ensure inclusivity by gender budgeting based on the needs and aspirations of our people and communities at a local level. Narrow the distance between people and government by strengthening the coordination role and capacities at the District and City levels.
- Foster a practical intergovernmental relations mechanism to plan, budget and implement jointly to provide a coherent government for the people in the Republic to maximise impact and align plans and resources at our disposal through the development of “One District, One Plan and One Budget”.
- Build government capacity to support municipalities. Strengthen monitoring and evaluation at district and local levels. Implement a

balanced approach towards development between urban and rural areas.

- Exercise oversight over budgets and projects in an accountable and transparent manner.

## 2.A. 17 Government Priorities

### Millennium development goals 2015

At the beginning of the new millennium, world leaders gathered at the United Nations to shape a broad vision to fight poverty in its many dimensions. That vision, which was translated into eight Millennium Development Goals (MDGs), has remained the overarching development framework for the world for the past 15 years.

As we reach the end of the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) period, the world community has reason to celebrate. Thanks to concerted global, regional, national, and local efforts, the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) have saved the lives of millions and improved conditions for many more. The targeted interventions, sound strategies, and adequate resources and political will of the Millennium.

Development Goals (MDGs), prove that even the poorest countries can make dramatic and unprecedented progress. The report also acknowledges uneven achievements and shortfalls in many areas. The work is not complete, and it must continue in the new development era.

## The 8 Millennium Development Goals



Figure 10: Millennium Development Goals

### Goal 1: Eradicate Extreme Poverty and Hunger

- Extreme poverty has declined significantly over the last two decades. In 1990, nearly half of the population in the developing world lived on less than \$1.25 a day; that proportion dropped to 14 per cent in 2015.
- Globally, the number of people living in extreme poverty has declined by more than half, falling from 1.9 billion in 1990 to 836 million in 2015. Most progress has occurred since 2000.
- The number of people in the working middle class—living on more than \$4 a day—has almost tripled between 1991 and 2015. This group now makes up half the workforce in the developing regions, up from just 18 per cent in 1991.
- The proportion of undernourished people in the developing regions has fallen by almost half since 1990, from 23.3 per cent in 1990–1992 to 12.9 per cent in 2014–2016.

### Goal 2: Achieve Universal Primary Education

- The primary school net enrolment rate in the developing regions has reached 91 per cent in 2015, up from 83 per cent in 2000.
- The number of out-of-school children of primary school age worldwide has fallen by almost half, to an estimated 57 million in 2015, down from 100 million in 2000.
- Sub-Saharan Africa has had the best record of improvement in primary education of any region since the MDGs were established. The region achieved a 20-percentage point increase in the net enrolment rate from 2000 to 2015, compared to a gain of 8 percentage points between 1990 and 2000.

- The literacy rate among youth aged 15 to 24 has increased globally from 83 per cent to 91 per cent between 1990 and 2015. The gap between women and men has narrowed.

### Goal 3: Promote Gender Equality and Empower Women

- Many more girls are now in school compared to 15 years ago. The developing regions have achieved the target to eliminate gender disparity in primary secondary, and tertiary education.
- In Southern Asia, only 74 girls were enrolled in primary school for every 100 boys in 1990. Today, 103 girls are enrolled for every 100 boys.
- Women now make up 41 per cent of paid workers outside the agricultural sector, an increase from 35 per cent in 1990.
- Between 1991 and 2015, the proportion of women in vulnerable employment as a share of total female employment has declined 13 percentage points. In contrast, vulnerable employment among men fell by 9 percentage points.
- Women have gained ground in parliamentary representation in nearly 90 per cent of the 174 countries with data over the past 20 years. The average proportion of women in parliament has nearly doubled during the same period. Yet still only one in five members are women.

### Goal 4: Reduce Child Mortality

- The global under-five mortality rate has declined by more than half, dropping from 90 to 43 deaths per 1,000 live births between 1990 and 2015.
- Despite population growth in the developing regions, the number of deaths of children under five has declined from 12.7 million in 1990 to almost 6 million in 2015 globally.
- Since the early 1990s, the rate of reduction of under-five mortality has more than tripled globally
- In sub-Saharan Africa, the annual rate of reduction of under-five mortality was over five times faster during 2005–2013 than it was during 1990–1995.
- Measles vaccination helped prevent nearly 15.6 million deaths between 2000 and 2013. The number of globally reported measles cases declined by 67 per cent for the same period.
- About 84 per cent of children worldwide received at least one dose of measles containing vaccine in 2013, up from 73 per cent in 2000.

### Goal 5: Improve Maternal Health

- Since 1990, the maternal mortality ratio has declined by 45 per cent worldwide, and most of the reduction has occurred since 2000.
- In Southern Asia, the maternal mortality ratio declined by 64 per cent between 1990 and 2013, and in sub-Saharan Africa it fell by 49 per cent.

- More than 71 per cent of births were assisted by skilled health personnel globally in 2014, an increase from 59 per cent in 1990.
- In Northern Africa, the proportion of pregnant women who received four or more antenatal visits increased from 50 per cent to 89 percent between 1990 and 2014.
- Contraceptive prevalence among women aged 15 to 49, married or in a union, increased from 55 per cent in 1990 worldwide to 64 per cent in 2015.

#### Goal 6: Combat HIV/AIDS, Malaria and Other Diseases

- New HIV infections fell by approximately 40 per cent between 2000 and 2013, from an estimated 3.5 million cases to 2.1 million.
- By June 2014, 13.6 million people living with HIV were receiving antiretroviral therapy (ART) globally, an immense increase from just 800,000 in 2003. ART averted 7.6 million deaths from AIDS between 1995 and 2013.
- Over 6.2 million malaria deaths have been averted between 2000 and 2015, primarily of children under five years of age in sub-Saharan Africa. The global malaria incidence rate has fallen by an estimated 37 per cent and the mortality rate by 58 per cent.
- More than 900 million insecticide-treated mosquito nets were delivered to malaria-endemic countries in sub-Saharan Africa between 2004 and 2014.
- Between 2000 and 2013, tuberculosis prevention, diagnosis, and treatment interventions saved an estimated 37 million lives. The

tuberculosis mortality rate fell by 45 per cent and the prevalence rate by 41 per cent between 1990 and 2013.

#### Goal 7: Ensure Environmental Sustainability

- Ozone-depleting substances have been virtually eliminated since 1990, and the ozone layer is expected to recover by the middle of this century.
- Terrestrial and marine protected areas in many regions have increased substantially since 1990. In Latin America and the Caribbean, coverage of terrestrial protected areas rose from 8.8 per cent to 23.4 per cent between 1990 and 2014.
- In 2015, 91 per cent of the global population is using an improved drinking water source, compared to 76 per cent in 1990.
- Of the 2.6 billion people who have gained access to improved drinking water since 1990, 1.9 billion gained access to piped drinking water on premises. Over half of the global population (58 per cent) now enjoys this higher level of service.
- Globally, 147 countries have met the drinking water target, 95 countries have met the
- sanitation target, and 77 countries have met both.
- Worldwide, 2.1 billion people have gained access to improved sanitation. The proportion of people practicing open defecation has fallen almost by half since 1990.
- The proportion of urban population living in slums in the developing regions fell from

- approximately 39.4 per cent in 2000 to 29.7 per cent in 2014.

#### Goal 8: Develop a Global partnership for development

- Official development assistance from developed countries increased by 66 per cent in real terms between 2000 and 2014, reaching \$135.2 billion.
- In 2014, Denmark, Luxembourg, Norway, Sweden, and the United Kingdom continued to exceed the United Nations official development assistance target of 0.7 per cent of gross national income.
- In 2014, 79 per cent of imports from developing to developed countries were admitted duty free, up from 65 per cent in 2000.
- The proportion of external debt service to export revenue in developing countries fell from 12 per cent in 2000 to 3 per cent in 2013.
- As of 2015, 95 per cent of the world's population is covered by a mobile-cellular signal.
- The number of mobile-cellular subscriptions has grown almost tenfold in the last 15 years, from 738 million in 2000 to over 7 billion in 2015.
- Internet penetration has grown from just over 6 per cent of the world's population in 2000 to 43 per cent in 2015. As a result, 3.2 billion people are linked to a global network of content and applications.

#### 2.A. 18 National Spatial Development Perspective, 2006

Government's key priority is to increase economic growth and to promote social inclusion. A clearly articulated set of spatial priorities and criteria is one of the mechanisms through which government provides a strategic basis for focusing government action, weighing up trade-offs and linking the strategies and plans of the three spheres and agencies of government. Therefore, the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) is a critical instrument for policy coordination, in relation to the spatial implications of infrastructure programmes in national, provincial, and local spheres of government.

The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) provides: -

A set of principles and mechanisms for guiding infrastructure investment and development decisions.

- A description of the spatial manifestations of the main social, economic, and environmental trends that should form the basis for a shared understanding of the national space economy.
- An interpretation of the spatial realities and the implications for government intervention.

National spatial guidelines and perspectives are increasingly being recognised as critical tools for bringing about coordinated government action and alignment to meet social, economic, and environmental objectives. They provide a comprehensive and perceptive analysis of

current and future trends, of the factors driving these trends and of the strategic implications thereof.

The main purpose of the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) is to fundamentally reconfigure the apartheid spatial relations and to implement spatial priorities that meet the constitutional imperative of providing basic services to all and alleviating poverty and inequality.

The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) has identified the following five principles: -

**Principle 1:** Rapid economic growth that is sustained and inclusive is a pre-requisite for the achievement of other policy objectives, among which poverty alleviation is key.

**Principle 2:** Government has a constitutional obligation to provide basic services to all citizens (e.g., water, energy, health, and educational facilities) wherever they reside.

**Principle 3:** Beyond the constitutional obligation identified in Principle 2 above, government spending on fixed investment should be focused on localities of economic growth and/or economic potential to gear up private-sector investment, to stimulate sustainable economic activities and to create long-term employment opportunities.

**Principle 4:** Efforts to address past and current social inequalities should focus on people, not places. In localities where there are both high levels of poverty and demonstrated economic potential, this could include fixed

capital investment beyond basic services to exploit the potential of those localities.

**Principle 5:** To overcome the spatial distortions of apartheid, future settlement and economic development opportunities should be channelled into activity corridors and nodes that are adjacent to or that link the main growth centres.

The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) emphasises that all government programmes and activities have an impact on communities located in space across the country and in instances where human settlements are scattered and fragmented over vast distances, providing infrastructure, and services becomes expensive. However, well-connected settlements, with sufficient densities to enable better public transport, are far more feasible and accessible.

The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) put forward certain spatial planning and development management principles, aimed specifically at focusing government action and investment, avoiding the so-called “watering can” approach and enabling the Developmental State to achieve maximum social and economic impact within the context of limited resources. It argues for ‘the idea of focusing government spending on economic infrastructure in areas with some potential for economic development’ and for a ‘differentiated policy approach’.

The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) is founded on the following assumptions:

- Location is critical for the poor to exploit economic growth opportunities;
- The poor that are concentrated around economic growth centres have greater opportunity of gaining from economic growth;
- Areas with demonstrated economic potential provide greater livelihood and income protection because of a greater diversity of income sources;
- Areas with demonstrated economic potential are most favourable for overcoming poverty;
- Areas with demonstrated economic potential are most favourable for overcoming poverty;
- Areas with demonstrated economic potential are most favourable for overcoming poverty;

**Implications:** The ADM should get inspiration from the five principles to achieve a well-coordinated SDF.

## 2.A. 19 The New Growth Path, 2010

The New Growth Path identifies areas where employment creation is possible, both within conventional economic sectors and in cross-cutting activities. It thus identifies “fostering rural development and regional integration” as one of the five key job drivers. The other four are:

### **Substantial public investment in infrastructure.**

Targeting more labour-absorbing activities across the main economic sectors - the agricultural and mining value chains, manufacturing, and services.

Taking advantage of new opportunities in the knowledge and green economies.

Leveraging social capital in the social economy and the public services.

A critical element of the New Growth Path is to ensure that the drivers leverage and reinforce each other based on their inter-linkages.

It further notes that while urbanisation will continue, a significant share of the population will remain in rural areas, engaged in the rural economy. As such, enhancing rural employment within the Amajuba District municipality area which requires the preparation of a spatial perspective in terms of an SDF that sets out the opportunities available and the choices that have potential to form the basis for aligning government spending, infrastructure and housing investment and economic development initiatives.

## 2.A. 20 Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative (ASGI – SA), 2004

The Goals of ASGI-SA are the following: -

Formulate medium-term educational interventions to raise the level of skills in areas needed by the economy as immediate measures to acquire the skills needed for the implementation of AsgiSA projects.

- Ensure skills transfer to new graduates by deployment of experienced professionals and managers to local governments to improve project development, implementation, and maintenance capabilities.
- Leverage the increased levels of public expenditure, especially investment expenditure, to promote small businesses and Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment.
- Linking small businesses to opportunities deriving from the 2010 FIFA World Cup is another task for government.

Focus on expanding and accelerating access to economic opportunities including skills development and finance for women.

Leverage through Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment to support shared growth.

Support efforts to establish new venture funds for small, medium, and micro enterprises.

The Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative (ASGI-SA) is aimed at the development of South Africa as a whole, but with the emphasis on development of previously disadvantaged areas. The broader aim is therefore not only to promote economic development, but to empower the communities through active involvement in projects.

This empowers communities through skills development to be able to participate in the formal economy and labour market. This obviously has implications on an institutional as well as physical/spatial level. To have an

impact on communities, it is necessary to ensure that public investment expenditure, which are to promote small businesses and Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment, be implemented in areas with the highest economic need. The occurrence of Economic need should coincide with areas which have the highest physical need as well, translated into the lack of services. The provision of services through a labour intensive, Extended Public Works Program will provide investment in the municipality as well as provide training and skills.

Through preferential procurement procedures, emerging contractors/entrepreneurs will be able to participate in the formal economy. The goal of uplifting poor areas implies that the strategies to be implemented by ASGISA, targets communities within the poorest rural areas of South Africa, where the second economy (which needs to be combatted) functions. The philosophy for implementing ASGISA projects in the ADM is needed.

## 2.A. 21 National Environmental Management Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (PAA) was enacted to provide for declaration and management of protected areas in South Africa. The Protected Areas Act (PAA) should be read in conjunction with the principles set out in National Environmental Management Act (NEMA) and Section 5 and 6 of National Environmental Management Act (NEMA). Protected Areas Act (PAA) represents a shift in the approach to conservation from the historical “protectionist” approach (i.e. exclusion of

local communities) to allowing controlled access to resources and participation in the management of protected areas.

## 2.A. 22 National Environmental Management Protected Areas Act 57 of 2003

The principles of the National Forests Act (Act 84 of 1998) (NFA) pertain to:

- The protection of natural forests (except under exceptional circumstances where the Minister determines that the proposed new land use is preferable in terms of its economic, social, or environmental benefits);
- The conservation of a minimum area of each woodland type; and
- The management of forests to ensure sustainability of resources (wood, soil, biological diversity, etc).

No person may cut, disturb, damage, or destroy any indigenous living tree in, or remove or receive any such tree from, a natural forest except in terms of-

- (a) A license issued under subsection (1) or section 23; or
- (b) An exemption from the provisions of this subsection published by the Minister in the Gazette on the advice of the Council.

The Minister may declare to be a natural forest a group of indigenous trees whose crowns are not largely contiguous; or where there is doubt as to whether their crowns are largely contiguous, if he or she is of the opinion based on scientific advice, that the trees make up a forest which needs to be protected in terms of this Part. The Minister declares a forest to be a

natural forest by publishing a notice in the Gazette; and publishing a notice in two newspapers circulating in the area; and airing a notice on two radio stations broadcasting to the area. The Minister may issue a license to cut, damage or destroy any indigenous, living tree in. or remove or receive any such tree from a natural forest.

## 2.A. 23 Waste Management Act of 2008

This Act notes the importance of waste management, set out norms and standards in relation to waste management, stipulate waste service standards at different spheres of government.

The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, Act 59 of 2008 was established to reform the law regulating waste management to protect health and the environment by providing reasonable measures for the:

Prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development;

- To provide for institutional arrangements and planning matters;
- To provide for national norms and standards for regulating the management of waste by all spheres of government;
- To provide for specific waste management measures;
- To provide for the licensing and control of waste management activities;
- To provide for the remediation of contaminated land;
- To provide for the national waste information system;
- To provide for compliance and enforcement; and

- To provide for matters connected therewith.

## 2.A. 24 Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP), 2009

Rural development in general is regarded as the actions and initiatives taken to improve the standard of living of communities in non-urban areas. These areas are usually characterised by a low ratio of inhabitants in wide open spaces where agricultural activities are prominent, while economic activities relate mainly to the production of food and raw materials. Rural development actions are therefore mainly aimed.

Integrated rural development is a concept for planning and thus a strategy for multi-sectoral and multi-faceted interventions designed to ensure sustained improvements in the lives of rural dwellers and rural economies. Rural development programmes are more effective and with sustainable impact if implemented in combination with community-based traditional knowledge. Public participation is therefore essential for successful and acceptable rural development.

The mandate of the Ministry and Department of Rural Development and Land Reform includes the following:

- Intensify the land reform programme to ensure that more land is made available to the rural poor, while providing them with technical skills and financial resources to productively use the land to create sustainable livelihoods and decent work in rural areas.

- Review the appropriateness of the existing land redistribution programme, introduce measures aimed at speeding up the pace of land reform and promote land ownership by South Africans.
- Expand the agrarian reform programme, which will focus on the systematic promotion of agricultural co-operatives throughout the value chain, including agro-processing in the agricultural areas. Support measures will be developed to ensure improved access to markets and finance by small farmers, including fencing and irrigation systems.
- Establish a much stronger link between land and agrarian reform programmes, as well as water resource allocation to ensure that the best quality of water resources is available to all our people, especially the poor.
- Ensure that all schools and health facilities have access to basic infrastructure such as water and electricity by 2014.
- Introduce the provision of proper sanitation systems in rural areas.
- Strengthen the partnership between government and the institution of traditional leadership to focus on rural development and the fight against poverty.
- Work together with farming communities to improve the living conditions of farm dwellers, including the provision of subsidised houses and other basic services.
- Provide support for organised labour to organise and unite farm workers and increase the capacity of the Department of Labour to enforce labour legislation.

- Use the Expanded Public Works Programme during the implementation phase by making use of local labour thus furthering community involvement.

**Implications:** ADM should take into consideration Rural Planning Programmes. There should be a form of community engagements to ensure that the planning has community-based traditional knowledge.

## 2.A. 25 Breaking New Ground 2004

### Why do we need change?

The Housing Policy and Strategy (1994) focused on stabilizing the environment to transform the extremely fragmented, complex, and racially based financial and institutional framework inherited from the previous government, whilst simultaneously establishing new systems to ensure delivery to address the housing backlog. The significant achievements of this programme have been recognized both nationally and internationally. Significant socio-economic, demographic and policy shifts have also occurred over the past 10 years.

### New Housing Vision

Whilst Government believes that the fundamentals of the policy remain relevant and sound, a new plan is required to redirect and enhance existing mechanisms to move towards more responsive and effective delivery. The new human settlements plan reinforces the vision of the Department of Housing, to promote the achievement of a non-racial, integrated society

through the development of sustainable human settlements and quality housing. Within this broader vision, the Department is committed to meeting the following specific objectives:

- Accelerating the delivery of housing as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- Utilising provision of housing as a major job creation strategy
- Ensuring property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- Leveraging growth in the economy
- Combating crime, promoting social cohesion, and improving quality of life for the poor
- Supporting the functioning of the entire single residential property market to reduce duality within the sector by breaking the barriers between the first economy residential property boom and the second economy slump.
- Utilizing housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements, in support of spatial restructuring.

### Progressive Informal Settlements Eradication

Informal settlements must urgently be integrated into the broader urban fabric to overcome spatial, social, and economic exclusion. The Department will accordingly introduce a new informal settlement upgrading instrument to support the focused eradication of informal settlements. The new human settlements plan adopts a phased in-situ upgrading approach to informal settlements, in line with international best practise. Thus, the plan supports

the eradication of informal settlements through in-situ upgrading in desired locations, coupled to the relocation of households where development is not possible or desirable. The upgrading process is not prescriptive, but rather supports a range of tenure options and housing typologies. Where informal settlements are upgraded on well-located land, mechanisms will be introduced to optimize the locational value and preference will generally be given to social housing (medium density) solutions.

### Promoting Densification and Integration

Integration and restructuring are public interventions in the way in which towns and cities are built and the processes by which wealth is generated and distributed. The key objective is to integrate previously excluded groups into the city and the benefits it offers, and to ensure the development of more integrated, functional, and environmentally sustainable human settlements, towns and cities. The new human settlements plan includes the following interventions, which are discussed in greater detail in the Spatial Restructuring and Human Settlements Business Plan.

- Densification policy - Suitable policy instruments and adjustments to promote densification in urban areas are required. The National Department of Housing, in conjunction with the Department of Provincial and Local Government, will investigate the development of suitable policy instruments and adjustments to promote densification. This will interrogate aspects of promoting densification, including planning guidelines, property taxation,

zoning, subdivision, and land swaps and consolidation. A draft densification policy will be ready for consideration by October 2004.

- Residential development permits – The Department will investigate the introduction of mechanisms such as residential development permits. These permits are used extensively in the international context and facilitate income integration by obliging developers either to set aside units within residential developments for lower-income groups or, alternatively developing lower-income residential accommodation in adjacent areas. In this instance it is proposed that 20% of all residential development would constitute low cost to affordable housing and would be prescribed through the permit. This can be achieved on site or in an alternative location initially to overcome negative perception about property value depreciation. It is envisaged that once the programme has been successfully implemented those perceptions will change and on-site development can be achieved in the medium term. In all instances, adequate provision is to be made for the construction of supportive social infrastructure in support of residential development.
- Fiscal incentives - The Department, in conjunction with Treasury and SARS, will investigate the development of fiscal incentives to promote the densification of targeted human settlements and whilst introducing disincentives to sprawl. This may require engagement with DPLG and municipalities.

## Enhancing the Housing Product

There is a need to develop more appropriate settlement designs and housing products and to ensure appropriate housing quality in both the urban and rural environments. The new human settlements plan accordingly proposes the following:

- **Enhancing settlement design** – The Department will investigate the introduction of enhancing measures and incentives to include design professionals at planning and project design stages and will develop design guidelines for designers and regulators to achieve sustainable and environmentally efficient settlements. This is aimed at promoting the development of dignified size of house that supports morality of family and society.
- **Enhancing housing design** - Within the rural context, there is a need to make housing interventions more effective, to enhance the traditional technologies and indigenous knowledge which are being used to construct housing in rural areas and to improve shelter, services and tenure where these are priorities for the people living there. Within the urban context, there is a need to focus on “changing the face” of the stereotypical “RDP” houses and settlements through promotion of alternative technology and design. The Department will investigate measures and incentives to enhance housing design and promote and alternative technologies, including support and protection of indigenous knowledge systems.
- **Addressing housing quality** - The Department will undertake an audit of and develop a programme to address the poor quality of

houses built before the introduction of national norms and standards and the NHBRC Warranty Scheme. Municipalities must also play an increasing role to ensure compliance with building plan approvals and township establishment conditions. The maintenance of construction standards in the face of the shift towards supporting smaller economic interests will be addressed by capacitating municipalities and the National Home Builders Registration Council to monitor quality.

**Implications:** ADM should establish new systems that will try to address the housing backlogs. The systems should be accommodative to all income classes. Furthermore, ADM should advocate for rural integration into the broader urban fabric whilst slowly eradicating informal settlements through adopting the in-situ upgrading approach for their desired rural areas. The housing plans should include the previously disadvantaged groups and ensure quality housing.

## 2.B. Provincial Policy Alignment

Ensuring that the District SDF aligns to the legislation and plans developed at a Provincial scale is of upmost importance. The section below highlights the provincial policy alignment.

### 2.B. 1 Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS), 2016

The Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (PGDS) developed by the Provincial Government of KwaZulu - Natal, is a document aligned to the NDP and the National Spatial Development Framework. The purpose of a PGDP is to provide the strategic framework, sectoral strategies and projects that will place the province and its people on a trajectory of growth and prosperity. To achieve this, the PGDP addresses issues of economic growth, social development, environmental protection, employment creation, poverty eradication and good governance concretely with implementable projects to advance the liveability of all in the province.

This PGDS provides KwaZulu-Natal with a reasoned strategic framework for accelerating and sharing the benefits of an inclusive growth through deepened, meaningful, effective, and sustainable catalytic and developmental interventions. This must be achieved within a coherent equitable spatial development architecture, putting people first, particularly the poor and vulnerable and other groups currently marginalised, through building sustainable communities, livelihoods and living environments. At the same time, attention also must be given to the provision of infrastructure

and services that cater for the needs of the people, in a manner that preserves and restores natural and historical assets and resources.

The Revised 2016 KZN PGDS continues to:

- a) Be the primary growth and development strategy for KwaZulu-Natal, but now to 2035;
- b) Mobilise and synchronise strategic plans and investment priorities in all spheres of government, state owned entities, business, higher education institutions, labour, civil society, and all other social partners, to achieve the desired growth and development goals, objectives, and outcomes;
- c) Spatially contextualise and prioritise interventions to achieve greater spatial equity;
- d) Guide clearly defined institutional arrangements that ensure decisive and effective leadership, robust management, thorough implementation and ongoing inclusive reviews of the growth and development plan;
- e) Provide a firm basis for monitoring, evaluation, and reporting, as well as a framework for public accountability.

The PGDS puts forward 31 strategic objectives to achieve seven strategic goals, as indicated in the table below.

STRATEGIC GOAL	No	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE 2016
<b>1</b> <b>INCLUSIVE ECONOMIC GROWTH</b>	1.1	<b>Develop and promote</b> the agricultural potential of KZN
	1.2	Enhance sectoral development through trade investment and <b>business retention</b>
	<b>1.3</b>	<b>Enhance spatial economic development</b>
	1.4	Improve the efficiency, <b>innovation and variety</b> of government-led job creation programmes
	1.5	Promote SMME and entrepreneurial development
	1.6	Enhance the Knowledge Economy
<b>2</b> <b>HUMAN RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT</b>	2.1	Improve early childhood development, primary and secondary education
	2.2	Support skills development to economic growth
	2.3	Enhance youth and adult skills development and life-long learning
<b>3</b> <b>HUMAN AND COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT</b>	3.1	<b>Eradicate</b> poverty and improve social welfare services
	3.2	Enhance health of communities and citizens
	3.3	<b>Safeguard and</b> enhance sustainable livelihoods and food security
	3.4	Promote sustainable human settlements
	3.5	Enhance safety and security
	3.6	Advance <b>social cohesion</b> and social capital
	<b>3.7</b>	<b>Promote youth, gender and disability advocacy and the advancement of women</b>
<b>4</b> <b>INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT</b>	<b>4.1</b>	<b>Development of seaports and airports</b>
	4.2	Develop road and rail networks
	4.3	Develop ICT infrastructure
	<b>4.4</b>	<b>Ensure availability and sustainable management of water and sanitation for all</b>
	<b>4.5</b>	<b>Ensure access to affordable, reliable, sustainable and modern energy for all</b>
	<b>4.6</b>	<b>Enhance KZN waste management capacity</b>
<b>5</b> <b>ENVIRONMENTAL SUSTAINABILITY</b>	<b>5.1</b>	<b>Enhance resilience of ecosystem services</b>
	<b>5.2</b>	<b>Expand the application of green technologies</b>
	<b>5.3</b>	<b>Adapt and respond climate change</b>
<b>6</b> <b>GOVERNANCE AND POLICY</b>	6.1	Strengthen policy, strategy coordination and IGR
	6.2	Build government capacity
	6.3	Eradicate fraud and corruption
	6.4	Promote participative, facilitative and accountable governance
<b>7</b>	7.1	<b>Enhance the resilience of new and existing cities, towns and rural nodes, ensuring equitable access to resources, social and economic opportunities</b>
		<b>and financial investment</b>

Figure 11: KZN Strategic Framework

**Implications:** ADM needs to take into consideration the seven strategic goals of the PGDS ensuring that all planning and proposed developments of the area stimulates job creation, promotes human resource development and human and community development, promote environmental sustainability while enhancing and /or creating strategic infrastructure, promote governance and policy and last but not least promote spatial equality within the area. Furthermore, The ADM is identified as an Area of Economic Value Adding. The tertiary sector consists of four broad economic sectors namely the trade, transport, finance and the community services sector. Tertiary nodes are mainly centres, which should provide service to the sub-regional economy, and community needs.

### 2.B. 2 KwaZulu – Natal Provincial Spatial Development Framework, 2021

The transformation of any area into a ‘development state’, is enshrined by the constitution, requires a dedicated integrated planning process, which effectively incorporates innovative and best-practice strategies, pertaining to its obligation in achieving social, economic, and environmental sustainability. It remains of paramount importance to remain cognizant of the fact, that the Provincial Spatial Development Framework (PSDF), remains an extension of the Provincial Growth and Development Plan, expressing the needs and aspirations of the people of the province in the spatial context, as highlighted in the development drivers of the Provincial Growth and Development Plan (PGDP).

## Key Issues Facing the Province

If the spatial structure which determines development with KwaZulu-Natal is to transition towards a more inclusive, productive, and resilient provincial it would need to identify the key spatial challenges that the province faces and reflect on why there has been slow progress in addressing these. Key spatial challenges listed below:

LEGACY CHALLENGES	CURRENT CHALLENGES	FUTURE CHALLENGES
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Spatial Inequity / no-integration</li> <li>2. Scattered and inefficient Settlements</li> <li>3. Poor Rural Accessibility to social services and amenities</li> <li>4. Insecure Land Tenure</li> <li>5. Varied Land Governance Systems</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Poverty Concentrations</li> <li>2. Unsustainable Settlement Patterns and Fragmentation</li> <li>3. Poor Regional Integration</li> <li>4. Regional Infrastructure Backlogs and Needs</li> <li>5. Dysfunctional urban space-economies</li> <li>6. Degeneration of Small Towns</li> <li>7. Required Spatial Transformation</li> <li>8. Migration Patterns</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Water Deficit</li> <li>2. Climate Change</li> <li>3. Food Security</li> <li>4. Emerging Peripheral Settlements</li> <li>5. Loss of Biodiversity</li> <li>6. Loss of Productive Land</li> <li>7. Rapid Urbanisation</li> </ol>
<b>REDRESS</b>	<b>ADDRESS</b>	<b>ADAPT AND MITIGATE</b>

Figure 12: Key Spatial Challenges

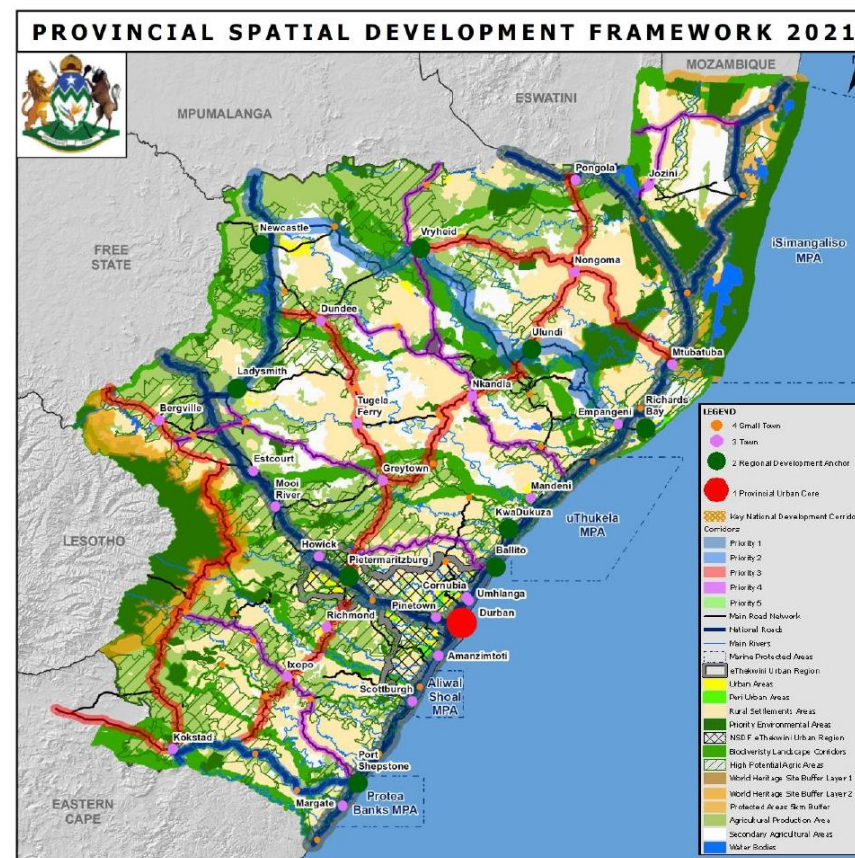
## Vision

The vision of PSDF is as follows:

*“Equitable utilisation of physical and environmental resources toward greater spatial integration and sustainability in development”*

The spatial development vision of the province is based on the policy directives as well as current known spatial and land use challenges. To ensure that the vision is clearly expressed a series of outcomes have been

identified and grouped in anticipated outcomes of the provincial development vision for an equitable, resilient, sustainable, productive, and efficient, and well-managed province.



PLAN 13: KZN PSDF, 2021

are major urban interventions in Newcastle, Vryheid and Ermelo, including socio-economic, transport and infrastructure projects. Newcastle is a

National Urban Node. There is a need for key urban and rural node upgrades, inclusive development and improved connectivity and access—Nquthu, Utrecht, KwaMakane, eMondlo, Volksrust, Daggakraa. The ADM needs to position itself to benefit from the envisaged passing trade and gear itself to align its tourism offerings with those of its neighbours. In this regard, detailed planning has been commissioned which spells out how the calibration of the corridor is to serve the ADM as well as its neighbours.

In addition to these major corridors, the composite SDF Map also depicts a hierarchy of road networks that serve as conveyor belts of all sorts of social and commercial activities; linking up various nodal points.

**Implications:** There are parts of Amajuba DM that are identified by the KwaZulu-Natal Spatial Development Framework as a High Eco-Resource Production Area. These areas have been recognized as the poorest of the poor. According to PSDF, these sections are heavily dependent on by the poor.

### 2.B. 3 Provincial Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF), 2014

The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is a policy framework guiding the reorganization of the urban system of South Africa so that cities and towns can become inclusive, resource efficient and adequate places to live.

The general result of the IUDF is spatial transformation. This new focus for South Africa steers urban growth towards a sustainable growth model of compact, connected and coordinated cities and towns. The IUDF implementation plan identifies a number of short-term proposals to achieve spatial transformation.

The overall objective of the IUDF is to create efficient urban spaces by:

- Reducing travel costs and distances,
- Aligning land use, transport planning and housing,
- Preventing development of housing in marginal areas,
- Increasing urban densities and reducing sprawl,
- Shifting jobs and investment toward dense peripheral townships,
- Improving public transport and the coordination between transport modes.

**The IUDF is built on the premise of the following nine levers:**

1. Integrated Urban Planning and Maintenance,
2. Integrated Transport and Mobility,
3. Integrated and Sustainable Human Settlements,
4. Integrated Urban Infrastructure,
5. Efficient land governance and management,
6. Inclusive economic development,
7. Empowered active communities,
8. Effective urban governance,
9. Sustainable finances.

The above levers are premised on the understanding that:

- Spatial planning forms the basis for achieving integrated urban development, which follows a specific sequence of urban policy actions,
- Integrated transport that informs targeted investment into integrated human settlements, underpinned by integrated infrastructure network system,
- Efficient land governance which all together trigger economic diversification inclusion and empowered communities,
- Deep governance reform to enable and sustain all the above.

**Implications:** The listed levers relate very specifically to the pillar of spatial transformation and Amajuba District Municipality has embraced several of them.

#### 2.B. 4 Provincial Rural Development Framework, 2013

KZN Framework is a commitment of provincial government address the deeply embedded socio-economic deprivation, under-development, inequities in service delivery. Target the rising prominence of the triple challenge. Harness, integrate and coordinate the implementation of rural development programs by government and all sectors where the dislocation in planning has undermined efforts to meet governments priorities for advancement of rural communities.

The need for a comprehensive approach arises from the fact that in KZN, more than 50% of our population resides in rural areas, characterised in the majority by the elderly, women, youth and children. Hence the need for KZN's own rural development strategy and implementation plan

#### Vision:

*“By 2030 rural communities in KwaZulu Natal will have sustainable prosperity through viable development, growing economies, healthy and skilled people, full employment and universal access to all basic social services”*

Rural Development strategies are designed to improve the economic and social life of a specific group of people - the rural poor. It involves extending the benefits of development to the poorest amongst those who seek a livelihood in the rural areas. Rural areas are commonly defined as “areas in which people farm or depend on natural resources, including villages and small towns that are dispersed throughout areas connecting larger towns and cities, In the South African context this includes large settlements created by apartheid removals which depend on migratory labour and remittances for survival” (National RDF, 1997)

#### Goal 1: Job Creation

- Rural business initiatives, agro-industries, cooperatives, cultural initiatives, vibrant local markets, Agri-tourism

- Support establishment of Agriculture, Mining, Forestry enterprises, etc
- Marketing and export
- Promote diversification of agricultural activities. Mechanisation Programme (Extension Officers, Tractor Conductors)

#### Goal 2: Human Resource Development

- Provincial Bursary Scheme
- HRD STRATEGY AND HR Council to prioritise rural areas for implementation models
- Early Childhood Development • Delivering Quality Education
- Further Education and Training review • Expansion of Agricultural Colleges
- Post-school training facilities for rural areas
- Improving matric outputs
- ABET acceleration

#### Goal 3: Human and Community Development

- Accelerate nutrition programmes
- Provision of support for household food production, community gardens
- Poverty Alleviation & Social Welfare
- Enhancing Health of Communities and Citizens
- Enhance Sustainable Household Food Security
- Promote Sustainable Human Settlements

- Enhance Safety & Security

#### Goal 4: Strategic Infrastructure

- Revitalisation of old and revamping of new Economic, Social, ICT infrastructure, public amenities and facilities in villages and small rural towns
- Small Town Rehabilitation
- Road & Rail networks
- Input and logistical services (warehousing)
- Improve Water Resource Management & Supply
- Development of ICT Infrastructure
- Energy production and supply
- Corporate Social Investments
- Number of community libraries
- Number of new schools, clinics / health facilities, social service facilities built
- Number of new sport facilities built

#### Goal 5: Environment Sustainability

- GREEN ECONOMY: water, sanitation, climate change, disaster management
- Increase Productive Use of Land
- Advance Alternative Energy Generation

- Manage pressures on Biodiversity
- Adaptation to Climate Change

#### Goal 6: Governance & Policy

- Number of rural Municipalities with clean audits
- Number of functional Ward Committees
- Number of functional Traditional Administration Centres
- Rural Development Council of Stakeholders
- Number of IDP's actioned and implemented

#### Goal 7: Spatial Equity

- Restitution, Redistribution and Tenure reform
- Integrated planning models for delivery of basket of services
- Spatial planning and development to create economic hubs in rural areas and stimulate production opportunities
- Establishment of Rural Activity Clusters creating a Retail (formal /informal), Service (Public/Private) and Production component
- Participatory, community-based planning (“nothing about us-without us”)
- Identification of drivers of development unique to each area

## 2.B. 5 KwaZulu – Natal Integrated Infrastructure Master Plan, 2019

The Provincial Integrated Infrastructure Master Plan is a strategic tool that is developed to GUIDE, INTEGRATE, COORDINATE, MONITOR AND EVALUATE the implementation of strategic infrastructure programmes in KwaZulu- Natal and in accordance with the Provincial Growth and Development Plan 2035.

There are Ten (10) strategic objectives of the KZNIIMP which are as follows:

- **Policy Alignment:** To ensure that infrastructure delivery is undertaken with National Planning Policy parameters including but not limited to the Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs); KZN PGDP and other relevant documents that have a significant impact on the objectives of the PGDP.
- **Strategy Alignment:** To review the infrastructure delivery progress for each sector in accordance with the PGDP Vision 2035.
- **Demand Alignment:** To ensure that the need of the receiving environment is thoroughly evaluation before execution of projects.
- **Performance Alignment:** To ensure that implementation is undertaken in accordance with “Best Practice Guidelines” as set out in the IDMS Treasury Regulations and Asset Management Best Practice.
- **Spatial Alignment:** To ensure that the interventions are integrated in the areas of highest provincial priority.

- **Level of Service Check:** To ensure that the “level of service provided” is commensurate with the “receiving environment”.
- **Timeframe Alignment:** To ensure that infrastructure packages to local areas are timed in accordance with the local service delivery expectations.
- **Impact Alignment:** To ensure that the interventions are providing “Value for Money” and reducing fruitless expenditure.
- **Sustainability Check:** To ensure that the interventions are affordable to the Provincial fiscus without compromising the needs and plans of other government stakeholders at present and the future.
- **Improvement Check:** To ensure that future decision-making on implementation is continuously enhanced through the appropriate institutional arrangements and tools.

The KZNIIMP is primarily aimed at supporting public entities and its officials who are central to the implementation of infrastructure related programmes and projects in the province. The Provincial Infrastructure Coordinating Work Group (PICWG) through the development of the Provincial Integrated Infrastructure Master Plan and the Provincial Infrastructure Database, and Databank, is therefore intended to provide the platform for all the national and key infrastructure delivery agents to share information on and align the long-term infrastructure planning for the province.

The sectoral comparative advantage for the ADM includes recommendations which state:

Newcastle forms part of the district, and it is a prime economic development zone. The municipality has a comparative advantage in the following:

- Coal mining
- Battle fields tourism
- Skins processing
- There are a lot of bulk infrastructure builds in the area however offering further EPWP opportunities.

## 2.B. 6 KwaZulu – Natal Human Settlements Master Spatial Plan, 2016

The South African spatial planning policy framework has undergone various stages of transformation since 1994 and resulted in the finalization and official approval of South Africa’s National Development Plan (NDP) during 2012 and the eventual culmination of the reform of the planning system in South Africa with the promulgation of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA, Act 16 of 2013) in August 2013. A provincial human settlement spatial master plan has a specific role to play in the implementation of this new planning system and has to include both an understanding of the demand side reality of the demographic, economic and social circumstances at various spatial scales as well as of supply side factors such as the historical extent and anticipated future of both public and private sector programmes. The concept notes on Human Settlements Spatial Planning Framework (2014) identified the purpose of a human settlement spatial plan.

In addition to the above-mentioned, the 2019-2024 MSTF advocates for new ways to address the housing issues in the KwaZulu-Natal Province, also making reference to the ADM.

**Implications:** The Human settlements master plan will have many implications such as, creating a spatial framework to guide investment by all state departments and state-owned companies and private sector actors in relation to the human settlement sector, create balance between spatial equity, economic competitiveness and environmental sustainability to overcome the legacy of apartheid spatial planning, provide guidance to the implementation of all the Medium-Term Strategic Frameworks (MTSF) targets in alignment with a human settlement spatial plan, provide guidance to the implementation of strategically chosen catalytic interventions to achieve spatial transformation.

### 2.B. 7 Provincial Norms and Standards Public Social Facilities, 2020

The norms and standards study is aimed at looking at linkages between land use planning and transportation system as well as findings pointed the enormous lack of alignment on the provision and distribution of public social facilities such as schools, health facilities, and related social services like police station, libraries and community halls. In terms of Chapter 11 of the KwaZulu-Natal Planning and Development Act, 2008 (Act 6 of 2008), the Steering Committee was formed to draft Provincial Planning and Development Norms and Standards for Public Social Facilities.

The constitution requires every citizen to have access to basic services towards their wellbeing. The norms and standards are thus required for improved governance and performance measure in the provision of social services and public facilities.

**Implication:** Amajuba District must consider the matters contemplated by these Provincial Norms and Standards when it considers any category of land use application and/or development application for municipal approval as contemplated within its land use management by laws.

### 2.B. 8 Provincial Norms and Standards Spatial Equity ,2020

The historical path of South Africa has resulted in the current inequitable distribution of land and sharply skewed access to resources. These roots lie in Colonialism system of differentiation and system of Reserves, which was further entrenched through the implementation of Apartheid. A plethora of legislation including the 1913 Land Act and the Group Areas Act in 1950 resulted in dispossession and segregation and an inequitable distribution of wealth.

Spatial Equity/Spatial Transformation has not been adequately addressed through the spatial planning processes of all three spheres of government. It is noted that there are some exceptions where the planning has been adequate, but the challenge has been with the implementation.

An underlying cause of the spatial problem not being addressed adequately of coherently, is an inadequate and divergent understanding of the cause of the persistent problem, and the most effective way it should be addressed.

**Implication:** Amajuba District must use the tool to support decision making due to the tool having several assessments. The tool allows the municipality to ensure there is alignment as everyone is using the same information base PSDF, PGDS, MSDFs.

## 2.B. 9 Provincial Planning and Development Norms and Standards for Electronic Communication Facilities, 2016

Telecommunication has revolutionised the way we communicate. Telecommunication facilities connect phones, computers, and other devices. Along with the benefits brought about by telecommunication technology, there has been the concern over the impact of telecommunication facilities, particularly on our health, the environment, and our surroundings. Telecommunication facilities need to be planned and managed to optimise our ability to communicate without unduly compromising our health, our amenity, or the environment. These norms and standards are binding on all municipalities and on all persons, companies, and other entities, including the state, that that intends to use land for the purpose of operating a telecommunication facility.

**Implication:** Amajuba District must as far as possibly use its land use scheme to plan and regulate the use of land for telecommunication purposes and must consider all relevant factors when it zones land for telecommunication purposes or determines a land development application for a telecommunication facility

## 2.C. District Policy Alignment

An assessment of the proposals contained in the District Municipality Spatial Development Framework plans was carried out to ascertain the nature of district spatial policy, areas of potential, key development issues, the alignment between districts and the nature of spatial structuring elements being used for land use management and development management.

### 2.C. 1 Amajuba District Growth and Development Plan, 2017

This is a relatively new approach to address economic development at a local level. The plan takes its lead from the Provincial Planning Commission in stating that employment equity and other measures of redress should continue and be made more effective by focusing on the environments in which capabilities are developed. The objectives of the Amajuba DGDP are:

- To establish and outline long term vision and direction for development in the district (vision 2035);
- To provide an overarching and coordinating framework for planning and development initiatives within each of the local municipalities and across municipal boundaries;
- To provide a spatial context and justification for priority interventions;
- To guide resource allocation of various spheres of government, service delivery agencies and private sector working within the district;

- To align and integrate departmental strategic plans at a district level;
- To facilitate commitment of resources (human, financial, etc) towards and implementation of strategic objectives, catalytic initiatives and other district priorities.

**Implications:** Amajuba needs to put its focus on a limited but strategic, high impact, fast-track implementations that can act as catalysts for accelerated shared growth within the local municipalities. Furthermore, it must put its focus on creating jobs by exploiting the agricultural potential in its local municipalities enhancing industrial development through investment into the key productive sectors of manufacturing, tourism, transport and logistics, the green economy and service sectors, expansion of government-led job creation programmes, promoting SMME and entrepreneurial development and developing the knowledge base to enhance the knowledge economy.



- Facilitate the alignment and integration of the DGDP objectives with Departmental strategic plans, municipal IDP's, and sector strategies and plans;
- Provide a common platform for resource commitments and budget alignment of departments and municipal entities through the agreed set of objectives and targets of the DGDP.

### Strategies

- Implementation of KZN stewardship Programme within the ADM
- Implementation of Open Space System in the ADM and Signing of Research Partnerships with local Higher Institutions through MOUs
- Incorporation of environmental concerns in Land Use administration through Environmental Management Zones
- Designation of the R34 as a national freight and logistics corridor.
- Designation and Establishment of Food Security Hubs
- Incorporation of the final Climate Change Response Plan and Implementation Actions into the ADM's IDP and SDBIP
- ADM Intermodal Hub and ancillary initiatives
- Rehabilitation of Existing & installation of new Water Treatment Plants
- Revitalization of Mining Industry's coal belt for SMME development
- Eco, Battlefields & Cultural Heritage Tourism Routes
- Monetization of Heritage Assets Study, Strategy, & Business Case Proposition
- Livelihood Diversification Strategy

- Promotion of Bio-Resource Entrepreneurship
- Multi-faceted Strategy to deal with Urban Decay, Illegality & Design and Erection of the market stalls for the SMMEs
- Multi-faceted Strategy to deal with Urban Decay, Illegality & Design and Erection of the market stalls for the SMMEs

### Spatial Structuring Elements

- Conservation Corridors
- Nodes
- Rural service centres
- Functional areas
- Tourism and recreational nodes

### 2.C. 3 Amajuba District Municipality Integrated Development Plan 2019/2020 (IDP)

The role of the District Municipality's IDP is to provide an investment plan that will provide strategic investment plans and ensure that the required budgets are allocated to important projects within the DM.

Amajuba District IDP set out to ensure that they identify district priorities which are in-line with national key performance areas. The table below gives an indication of these priorities and how they align with National Key Performance Areas.

Table 1: IDP KPA's

Key Performance Areas (KPA)	Goals	Objective
<b>KPA 1: Municipal Transformation &amp; Institutional Development</b>	Improve organizational cohesion and effectiveness	Adhering to the Municipal Adopted Policies
<b>KPA 2: Basic Service Delivery</b>	Eradicate backlogs to Improve access to services and ensure proper operations and maintenance	Improve Basic services delivery
<b>KPA 3: Local Economic Development &amp; Social Development</b>	Create an environment that promotes the development of the local economy and facilitate job creation	Implement LED Strategy and address the MEC comments.
<b>KPA 4: Municipal Financial Viability &amp; Financial Management</b>	To improve overall financial management in the municipality by developing and implementing appropriate financial	Effectively manage the municipal resources and ensure financial sustainability

	management policies, procedures, and systems	
<b>KPA 5: Good Governance &amp; Public Participation</b>	Promote a culture of participatory and good governance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-Improve communication and public participation between the municipality and communities.</li> <li>-Enhance healthy communities and citizens.</li> <li>-Provision of a sound oversight role to ensure effectiveness and guidance in all municipal committees.</li> </ul>
<b>KPA 6: Cross Cutting Interventions</b>	Effective Spatial Planning, Land Use Management, Environmental Planning & Management; Disaster Management and	-Development of spatial strategic documents and development of procedures to ensure sustainable future development.

	Building Control and Compliance	
--	---------------------------------	--

**Implication:** The projected SDF will need to consider the districts IDP goals and objectives. This means that the planning tools will need to support developments that will assist the district in realizing its objectives and goals set out by the IDP. ADM IDP acknowledges the dominance of tertiary industries. Furthermore, it indicates that Newcastle is an area which brings hope that if innovative and creative strategies are devised then the primary sector can aim its place in the economy of Amajuba.

### 2.C. 4 Amajuba District Municipality Environmental Management Framework, 2019

An EMF is a study of the biophysical and socio-cultural systems of a geographically defined area to reveal where specific activities may best be practiced and to offer performance standards for maintaining appropriate use of such land.

An EMF includes a framework of spatially represented information connected to significant environmental (i.e., ecological, social, and economic) parameters, such as ecology, hydrology, infrastructure and services. A key function of an EMF is to proactively identify areas of potential conflict between development proposals and critical/sensitive environments.

With regards to the Amajuba District Municipality, the key economic activities of the ADM include commercial agriculture, coal mining and industrial manufacturing. As an example, the area constitutes the largest producer of chrome chemicals in Africa.

#### Objectives:

To address the triggers for sustainable development in the ADM and the priority environmental opportunities and constraints, the specific objectives of the EMF will include the following:

- To facilitate decision-making to ensure sustainable management of natural resources;
- To provide strategic guidance on environmental, economic, and social issues in the district;
- To identify environmentally sensitive areas;
- To identify the environmental and development opportunities and constraints;
- To assess the economic and environmental potential of the area;
- To provide a decision support system in respect of environmental issues and priorities in the EMF area;
- To formulate a strategy that will incorporate issues such as land use, planning and sensitive environmental resources; and
- To include existing policies as frameworks for establishing values, guidelines, and standards for future developments.

### Implications:

with socio-economic information; pollution; spatial planning and development; agriculture and built; and cultural heritage resources of the district which will be used to guide the SDF in-terms of suitable land use(s) to ensure sustainable land use. To guide that the land uses and economic activities within the district do not pose any threat which is related to air pollution that can take place at a large scale. However, mining activities need to be closely monitored since it generates emission that can be hazardous to the neighbouring communities over the long term. The mountainous areas in the Amajuba DM are identified as important Eco-production resource areas in terms of water production.

### 2.C. 5 District Rural Development Plan, 2019

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR / the Department) is mandated by the President of the Republic of South Africa to champion the Rural Development Programme in the country. To achieve this, the department developed programmes and plans with the aim of addressing the needs of people who live in extreme poverty and who are subjected to underdevelopment in rural parts of South Africa.

The Branch Spatial Planning and Land Use Management (KZN) developed 1st generation DRDPs for the ten (10) districts in KwaZulu-Natal, with the intention of identifying opportunities within the rural spaces of the Province of KwaZulu-Natal and ensuring that the districts achieve their development potential.

These rural development plans need to enhance the impact of intensified government investments through the reviewing of current developmental realities and potential in these areas and come up with interventions that will bring change in the livelihoods of people in these rural communities.

In terms of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (Act 16 of 2013), spatial planning and land development in the country should not exclude rural areas and should address their inclusion and integration into the spatial, economic, social, and environmental objectives of the relevant sphere

### Aims and objectives:

The overall objective of the project is understood to be the formulation of District Rural Development Plans for each of the districts within KwaZulu-Natal, which would:

- Direct rural development and ensure development and improvement in lives of people.
- Align the 1st generation DRDPs of the Southern KZN Region and Northern KZN Region with second Generation DRDPs of RSA in terms of methodology and approach followed.
- Align & give effect to Planning Directives (SDFs, LUSs) of the DMs & LMs.
- Align with National Legislation and initiatives (e.g., National Development Plan).

- Have a multi-sectoral approach and must identify and highlight the focus areas of the different DRDLR Branches.
- Align to and support the Agri-Park Initiative and its associated components.
- Give guidance to the Provincial Shared Services Centre (PSSC) for monitoring, evaluating, and implementing initiatives, programmes & projects through the IDP process of the DMs.
- Be guided by the five (5) development principles as contained in Chapter 2 of SPLUMA.
- Be informed by and linked to the phases of the CRDP, which are i) meeting basic needs (Phase1); ii) large-scale infrastructure development (Phase 2); and iii) the emergence of rural industrial and credit financial sectors, which is driven by small, medium and micro-enterprise and village markets.

**Implications:** The Amajuba District should adopt the draft Rural Development Plan which consists of a few strategic interventions for growth. The actions to be taken are but not limited to:

- Improving productivity in the agricultural sector
- Improving productivity in the Mining sector
- Improving production in the manufacturing sector
- Improving tourism competitiveness in the district
- Promoting rural-urban linkages and functionality

## 2.C. 6 Amajuba District Municipality Water Services Development Plan 2016

The WSDP is not simply a legal requirement; it is a tool towards achieving sustainable water services (where water services include both water supply and sanitation services). When addressing sustainable water services, there are three major goals that WSAs should aim to achieve. These are:

- Delivery of sustainable water services
- Integrated water resource management
- Efficient and effective water services institutional arrangements (WSA capacity and WSP arrangements)

Spatial development is directly related to the provision and availability of water services; therefore, development should follow sustainable planning in the WSDP and not force water services provision into areas that are currently not economically viable or sustainable to supply.

The ADM WSDP supports the KZN PGDS Strategic Framework. WSDP goals, objectives, interventions, and projects are aligned to place ADM in a position to fulfil its role as WSA in achieving the provincial PGDS for 2035. While the focus has been predominantly on providing each person with sustainable infrastructure and eradicating backlogs, the status of existing and aging infrastructure, as well as the availability and sustainability of water resources has been neglected. As water provision will increase, so will water resources needs, operation and maintenance of existing infrastructure,

efficient institutional and financial capacity to manage infrastructure and revenue etc.

The KZN ADM aims to eradicate all water and sanitation backlogs through various programmes, and implementation will continue as funding allocations allow it.

## WATER

According to the 2016 WSDP, there are approximately 5251 households (19.7%) regarded as backlogs for water (no formal water services up to RDP level).

## SANITATION

Sanitation backlogs in terms of rural RDP standards comprises of a total of 1576 households (5.9%). It will take a few years to eradicate all rural sanitation backlogs. There will be however, a need to address infill households once all settlements have been served. These are accumulated households in each settlement since sanitation has been provided.

### 2.C. 7 Amajuba District First Generation One Plan, 2020/2021

The District Development Model was initiated by the President of South Africa Mr. Cyril Ramaphosa in his Budget Speech in 2019. Subsequently, the District Development Model (DDM) was discussed and adopted by Cabinet, the 2019 Presidential Coordinating Council (PCC), the March 2020 extended PCC and various MINMECs.

To date the three spheres of government have been largely operating in silos, a challenge that has led to a lack of coherence in planning and implementation and has made monitoring and oversight of government's programmes extremely difficult. The consequence of this has been a non-optimal delivery of services and a diminished impact on the triple challenges of poverty, inequality, and employment.

The DDM approach consists of a process by which joint and collaborative planning is undertaken at local, district and metropolitan levels by all three spheres of government resulting in a single

strategically focussed One Plan for each of the 44 districts and 8 metropolitan geographic spaces in the country, wherein the district is seen as the 'landing strip'.

The DDM approach is seen as a practical Intergovernmental Relations (IGR) mechanism to enable all three spheres of government to work together, with communities and stakeholders to plan, budget and implement efficiently and effectively.

**The District Development Model (DDM) is based on the following Objectives:**

- Solve the Silos at a horizontal level and vertical level;
- Maximise impact and align plans and resources at our disposal through the development of One District, One Plan and One Budget;

- Narrow the distance between people and government by strengthening the coordination role and capacities at the district and city levels;
- Ensure inclusivity by gender budgeting based on the needs and aspirations of our people and communities at a local level;
- Build government capacities support to Municipalities;
- Strengthen monitoring and evaluation at District and Local Levels;
- Implement a balanced approach towards development between urban and rural areas;
- Ensure sustainable development whilst accelerating initiatives to promote poverty eradication, employment, and equality; and
- Exercise oversight over budget and projects in an accountable and transparent manner.

The focus of the DDM aims to improve the coherence and impact of government service delivery with focus on 44 Districts and 8 Metros around the country as development spaces that can be used as centres of service delivery and economic development, including job creation.

The DDM Plan is aligned and built upon the strategic frameworks development through the Amajuba District Growth and Development Plan (DGDP) and the subsequent COVID Economic Recovery Plan. The strategies developed therein have been reviewed and linked to planned projects at a provincial and municipal level. With regards to the Amajuba

District Municipality, the following goals can be used to improve the economy within the municipality.

**Goal 1:** Expansion of the Agricultural Sector

**Goal 2:** Expansion and diversification of the Manufacturing Sector

**Goal 3:** Development and support for the Tourism Sector

**Goal 4:** Improving the institutional and policy environment for effective LED

**Goal 5:** Ensuring effective education, skills, and capacity development

**Goal 6:** Expansion and development of strategic economic infrastructure

**Goal 7:** Support Small Enterprises

**Goal 8:** Promote a green economy

**Goal 9:** Establish a strong ICT Sector

## 2.C 8 Development Plan for Amajuba District Municipality, 2017

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR / the Department) is mandated by the President of the Republic of South Africa to champion the Rural Development Programme in the country. To achieve this, the department developed programmes and plans with the aim of

addressing the needs of people who live in extreme poverty and who are subjected to underdevelopment in rural parts of South Africa.

The Branch Spatial Planning and Land Use Management (KZN) developed 1<sup>st</sup> generation DRDPs for the ten (10) districts in KwaZulu-Natal, with the intention of identifying opportunities within the rural spaces of the Province of KwaZulu-Natal and ensuring that the districts achieve their development potential.

In January 2015, the Lekgotla resolutions identified agricultural development as a key sector for rural economic transformation and called for the faster implementation of the Agriculture Policy Action Plan (APAP).

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform has further developed a programme called the rural economic transformation model (RETM) which identified district “gateway” towns with the highest economic potential to establish agro-processing facilities. The model presents four development measurable targets, specifically being:

- Meeting basic human needs;
- Rural enterprise development;
- Agro-village industries sustained by credit facilities and value-chain markets; and
- Improved land tenure systems.

The policy intended on bringing one million hectares of under-utilised land into full production over a three-year period. Although the target was not

met, programmes & initiatives (such as the DRDP) are still implemented in trying to achieve the set goal.

The Agricultural Policy Action Plan specifically targets revitalization of South Africa’s agricultural sector through increased resources, tighter alignment of economic infrastructure, link to land reform and value market chains. The Agricultural Policy Action Plan was proposed with the sole purpose of responding to the New Growth Path (NGP) and National Development Plan (NDP) by identifying agriculture as a job driver and an important sector in driving food security, poverty alleviation and rural development.

The proposed review of the various District Rural Development Plans within KwaZulu-Natal is aimed at firstly aligning the various DRDPs within the province and with national best practices, but also to incorporate various key national and provincial rural and agricultural initiatives, which have been formulated and adopted since the development of the first generation DRDPs. These include (among others) the Agriculture Policy Action Plan and the Agri-Park initiatives.

From the Rural Development Plan, the ADM has a potential for growth. For inclusive and sustainable development, the district is to adopt strategic objectives. The Objectives are as follows; Improving productivity in the agricultural sector, improve productivity in the mining sector, improving productivity in the mining sector, improve the tourism competitiveness in the region, and promote rural to urban linkages and functionality.

## 2.C. 9 Amajuba District Municipality Climate Change Response Plan, 2018

The Climate Change Response Plan outlines the key climate change vulnerabilities and responses to address these vulnerabilities for the Amajuba District Municipality. The Climate Change Vulnerability Assessment and Response Plan were developed through the Local Government Climate Change Support Program (LGCCSP), an initiative of the National Department of Environmental Affairs and the International Climate Initiative (IKI).

The response plan identifies and speaks to the following Climate Change Indicators;

- Agriculture
- Biodiversity and Environment
- Human Health
- Disaster Management, Infrastructure and Human Settlements
- Water

### AGRICULTURE

Climate is important in determining potential agricultural activities and suitability across the country, especially in smallholding and homestead settings. Irrigation and conservation tillage practices can overcome rainfall constraints, especially in the high-value commercial agricultural sector. Irrigation currently consumes roughly 60% of the country's surface water

resources, with important implications for agricultural exports, and food and water security in the context of climate change.

For better results in the agricultural Sector, ADM can;

1. Manage the change in other crop production by rebuilding the agricultural forum. Furthermore, ADM should research the current climate patterns to align with planting seasons and suitability of crops. Also focus on cabbage, spinach and potatoes.
2. Manage increasing risks to livestock by developing a funding proposal for commodity-based plans related to agriculture and;
3. Manage food insecurity by increasing water resources through a process of collecting and harvesting water in eMadlangeni and Dannhuuser.

### BIODIVERSITY AND ENVIRONMENT

Well-functioning ecosystems provide natural solutions that build resilience and help society adapt to the adverse impacts of climate change. This includes, for example, buffering communities from extreme weather events such as floods and droughts, reducing erosion and trapping sediment, increasing natural resources for diversifying local livelihoods, providing food and fibre, and providing habitats for animals and plants which provide safety nets for communities during times of hardship. Sustainably managed and/or restored ecosystems help in adapting to climate change at local or landscape level.

For better results in the biodiversity and environment Sector, ADM can;

1. Manage loss of High Priority Biomes by increasing the number of fire breaks and also build human capacity by promoting environmental education and community awareness;
2. Manage increased impacts on threatened ecosystems by restoring and rehabilitating the health of wetlands and rivers in the district.
3. Manage increased impacts on environment due to land use change by rehabilitating and restoring the degraded and eroded areas.

## HUMAN HEALTH

Under-nutrition and socio-economic stress are important contributors to poor human resilience and contribute to conditions that facilitate the emergence and propagation of disease. Malnutrition and disease interact strongly, and there is a key relationship between environmental quality, food security, and the disease burden of communities. Adaptation to the potential effects of climate change on human health is viewed in this context. However, significant knowledge and information gaps are preventing well supported quantitative projections of human health impacts in South Africa.

The ADM can achieve Human Health by;

1. Managing the increasing water borne and communicable diseases (typhoid fever, cholera and hepatitis) by implementing a primary health promotion project and identifying water borne hotspots in the district. In addition, ADM should look into providing procure medical supplies for all health care facilities.

## DISASTER MANAGEMENT, INFRASTRUCTURE AND HUMAN SETTLEMENTS.

To develop an appropriate adaptation response for human settlements, a more nuanced understanding of the challenges and options is required. This understanding needs to take into account the unusually diverse urban forms of human settlement in the South African context, and the importance of ecological infrastructure in supporting service delivery and building resilient communities.

To achieve appropriate human settlements, ADM should;

1. Manage increased impacts on traditional and informal dwellings by conducting a pilot awareness campaign on the effects of climate change and also coordinate greening projects in the district.
2. Manage the potential increase in the isolation of rural communities by coordinating the construction of agricultural villages in the eMadlangeni and Dannhauser Local Municipalities and;
3. Manage the potential decrease in income from the tourism industry by implementing projects with resort owners and tourism facilities to diversify tourism product offerings and activities.

## WATER

Surface water resources were already over-allocated by the year 2000 in five of nineteen water management areas historically used for water planning and management purposes. The potential demand for water is expected to increase with economic growth, increased urbanisation, higher

standards of living, and population growth. Because of the critical importance of water in the South African economy the country has a sophisticated water resources planning capacity, founded on a good understanding of the country's variable rainfall. This planning capacity will be a key capability for adaptation planning under ongoing and future climate change.

As a way to ensure sufficient water supply, ADM should;

1. Manage the quantity of water availability for irrigation and drinking by conducting a feasibility study on the construction of new raw water storage/ dams in the district and removing of silt from dams that are used for domestic and industrial water use;
2. Manage the increased impacts of floods due to litter blocking the sewer system by conducting a feasibility study on the possibility of recycling stormwater in the district for agricultural use. In addition, the district should establish projects that will focus on cleaning stormwater drains and culverts.

**Implications:** The projected District SDF should consider the key climate change vulnerabilities and responses to the five sectors to achieve a municipality that is ready to fight against Climate Change.

## 2.C. 10. Air Quality Management Plan, 2019

The Air Quality Management Plan (AQMP) developed for the Amajuba DM is in line with the guidelines outlined in the 2007 National Framework for Air Quality Management in the Republic of South Africa (NFAQM) (Government

Notice No. 1138, 2007), the 2012 reviewed National Framework for Air Quality Management in the Republic of South Africa (Government Notice No. 919, 2013) and the Air Quality Management Plan Guideline Documents (DEA, 2012) provided by the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA).

Air quality in South Africa is governed under the National Environmental Management Air Quality Act, (NEM: AQA) (Act No. 39, 2005) and related legislation such as the National Ambient Air Quality Standards (NAAQS) (Government Notice No. 1210, 2009). The NEM: AQA (Section 15(2)) requires Municipalities to introduce Air Quality Management Plans (AQMPs) that seek to improve air quality, identify and address emissions that have a negative effect on human health. Municipalities are required to include an AQMP as part of their Integrated Development Plans (IDP).

Implementation of the AQMP follows the guidelines of the Amajuba District vision, mission and goals for air quality as articulated below.

Vision: To attain and maintain good air quality for the benefit of all inhabitants and natural ecosystems within the Amajuba District Municipality.

### **Mission**

- To ensure the maintenance of good air quality, through proactive and effective management principles that take into account the need for future sustainable development.
- To work in partnership with communities and stakeholders to ensure that air is healthy to breathe and is not detrimental to the well-being of the residents of Amajuba DM.

- To ensure that future developments (transportation, housing etc.) incorporate air quality impacts.
- To reduce the potential for damage to sensitive natural environmental systems from air pollution both in the short and long-term.
- To facilitate intergovernmental communication at the Local, Provincial and National levels to ensure effective air quality management and control in the Amajuba DM.

**Implications:** The District has the following responsibilities regarding the Air Quality Management Plan.

- Implementing the Air Quality Management Plan within the District.
- Assigning clear responsibilities and functions for air quality management
- Air quality training of current and future air quality personnel at the local levels.
- Obtaining the necessary resources and funding for air quality management.
- Compliance monitoring and enforcement air quality legislation, policies and regulations.
- Assessing the contribution of various activities/ sources to ambient air quality and establishing measures to control emissions from these sources.

## 2.C. 11. DISASTER MANAGEMENT SECTOR PLAN

The Disaster Management Plan was developed and approved by the Municipal Council in May 2024 and will undergo a review every two years.

The Plan is designed to achieve the following objectives:

- Prevention and reduction of disaster risks
- Mitigation of impacts
- Preparedness for effective disaster response
- Minimization of loss and property damage
- Swift recovery from adverse effects

This Plan outlines strategies for both preventing and mitigating disasters, focusing on long-term risk reduction measures as well as short-term emergency management, which includes preparedness, response, and recovery. As a dynamic document, the Plan must be updated annually.

### SWOT Analysis



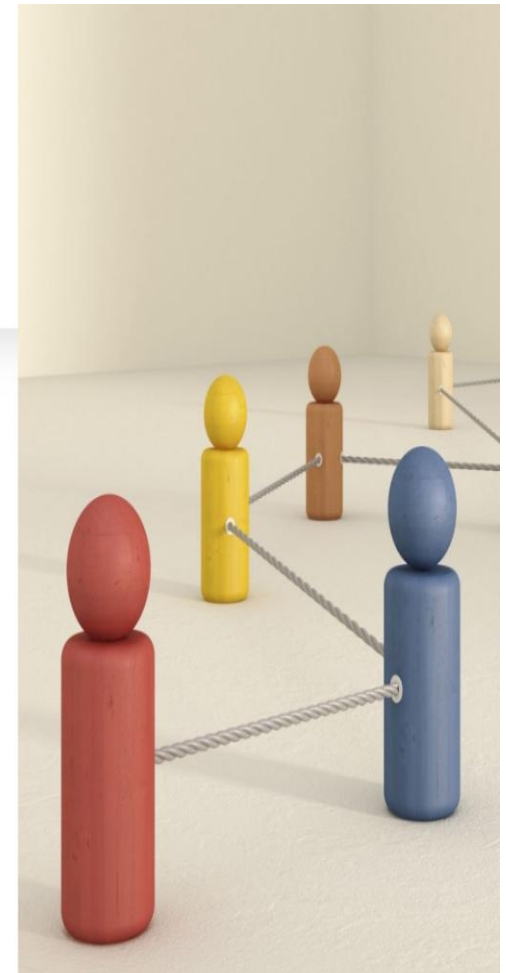


## Weaknesses

- Insufficient resources to deal with disaster-related issues, fire and rescue.
- Recruitment of the fire and rescue staff complement.
- Cross-border mutual assistance with the neighbouring district municipalities
- Outdated Disaster Management Policy Framework.
- The eMadlangeni Local Municipality disaster management response vehicle is not adequate.
- Dannhauser LM shortage of staff complement.
- Installation of ICT System

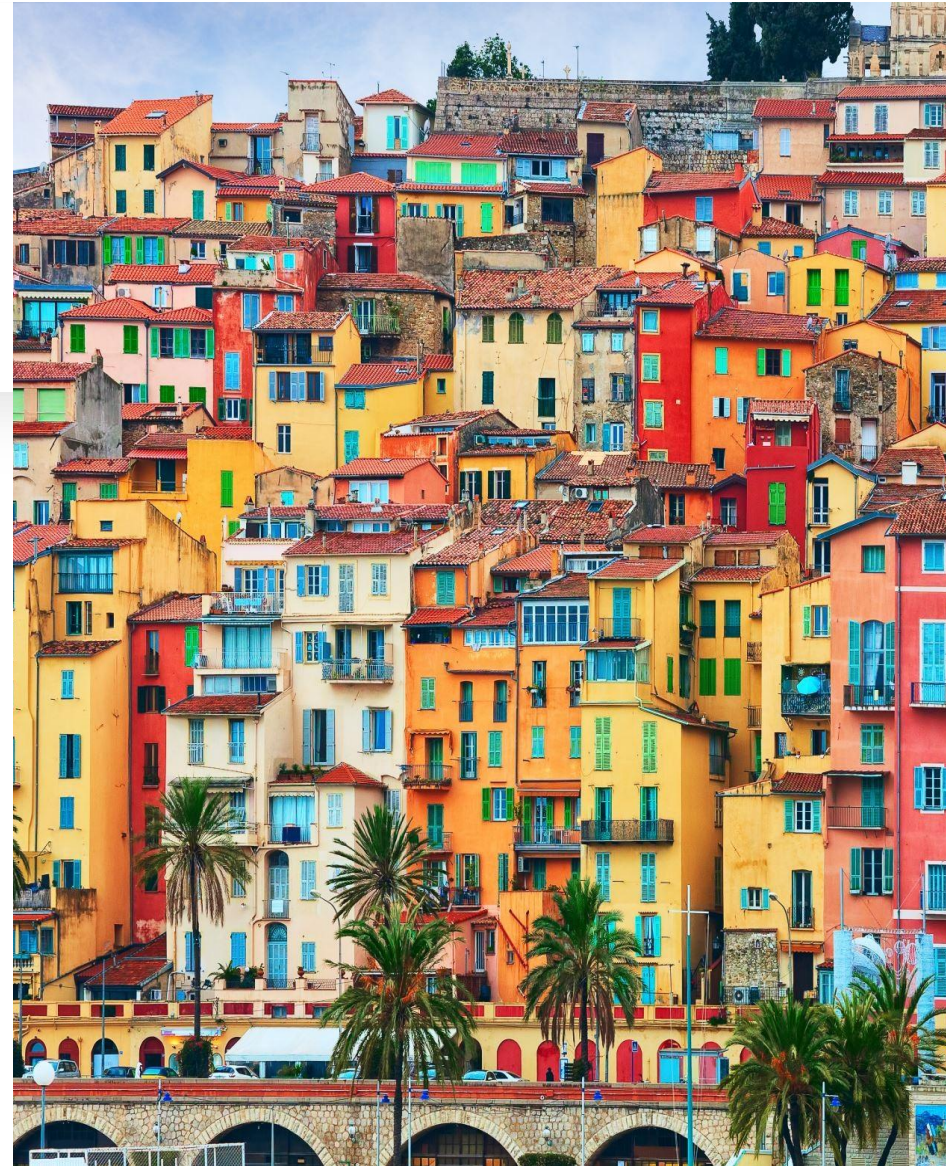
## Opportunities

- Implementation of Climate Change Strategy projects
- Integrating Disaster Management projects with other stakeholders



# Threats

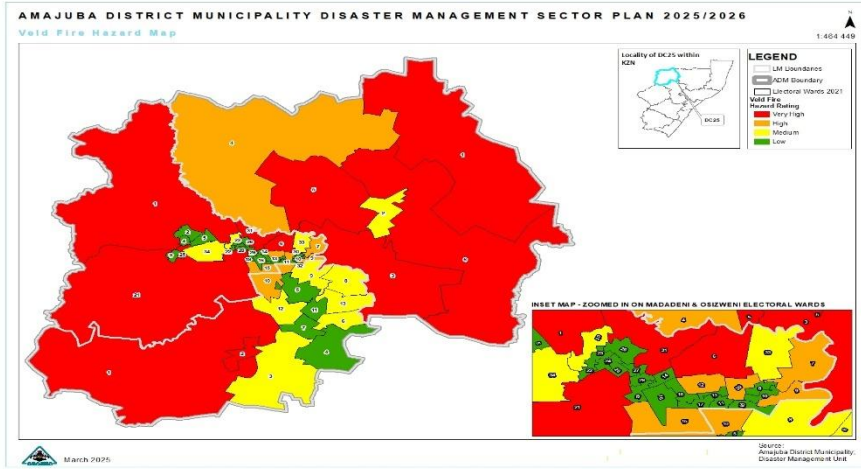
- Aging infrastructure in all LMs
- Civil unrest
- Loadshedding
- Increasing traditional and informal dwellings
- Majority of Emadlangeni Local Municipality does not have network coverage.
- Land invasion
- The increasing mining activities within the district
- Contamination of river systems by sewer spillage
- Water and air-borne diseases
- Foreign nationals spaza shops
- Climate Change
- Raising water table
- Air pollution



### List of Priority Risks (Hazards)

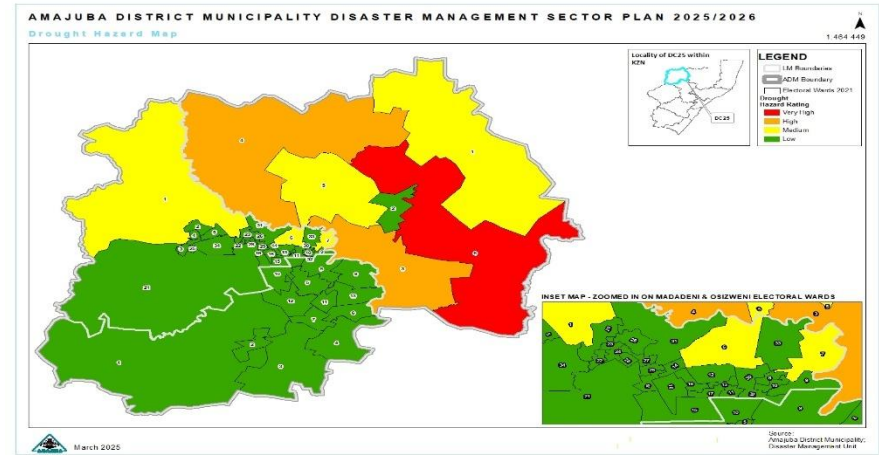
The Amajuba District Municipality faces various potential hazards that could pose challenges to its environment and community:

- Structural fires
- Veld fires
- Heatwaves
- Lightning
- Strong winds
- Heavy rains
- Floods
- Storms
- Snow
- Drought
- Hazmat
- Water and Airborne Disease
- Drowning

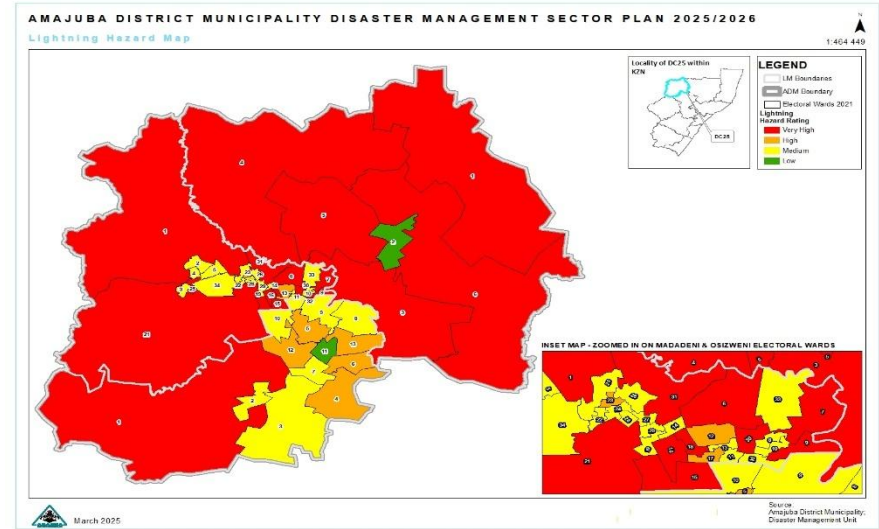
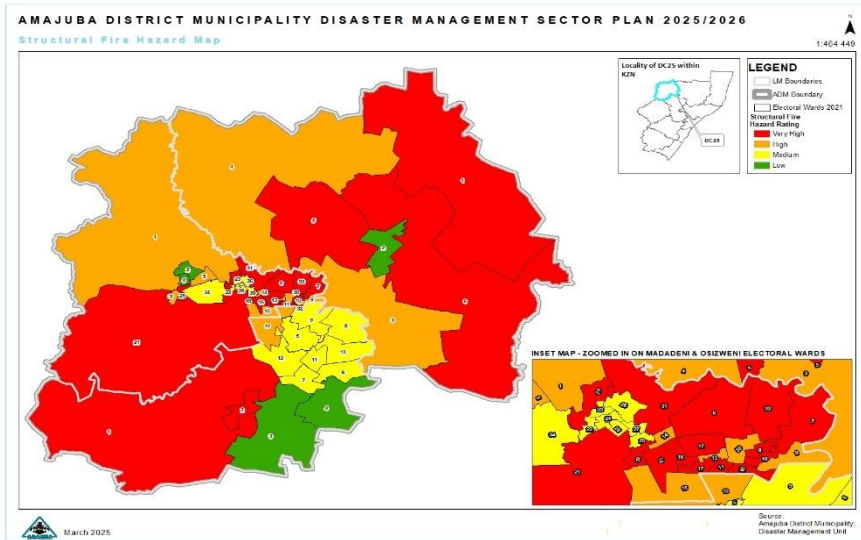


Map: Veld Fires Hazard

Map: Structural Fire Hazard

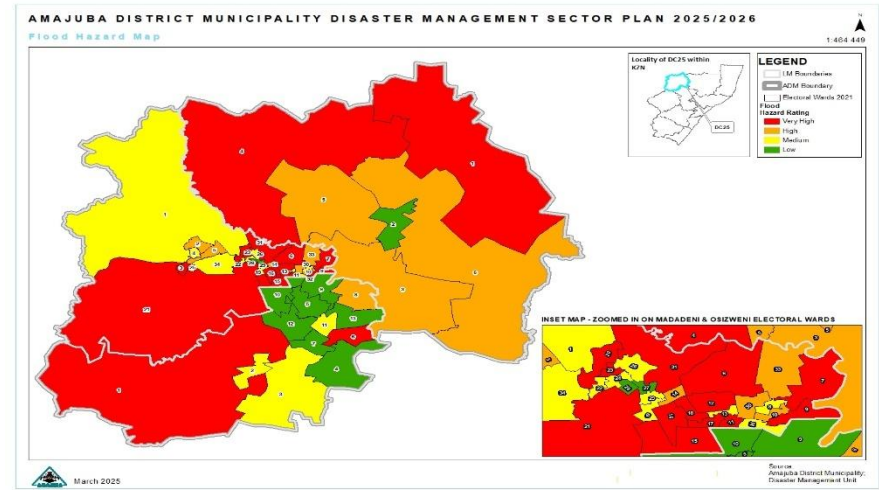
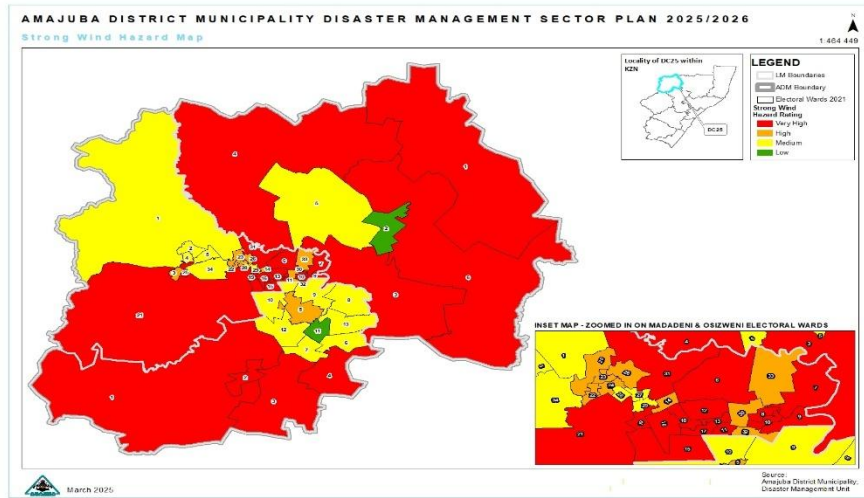


Map: Drought Hazard

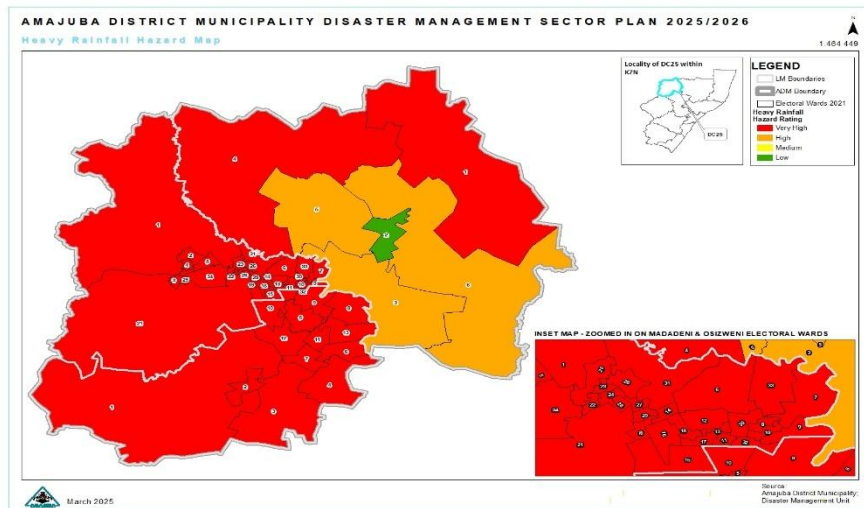


Map: Lightning Hazard

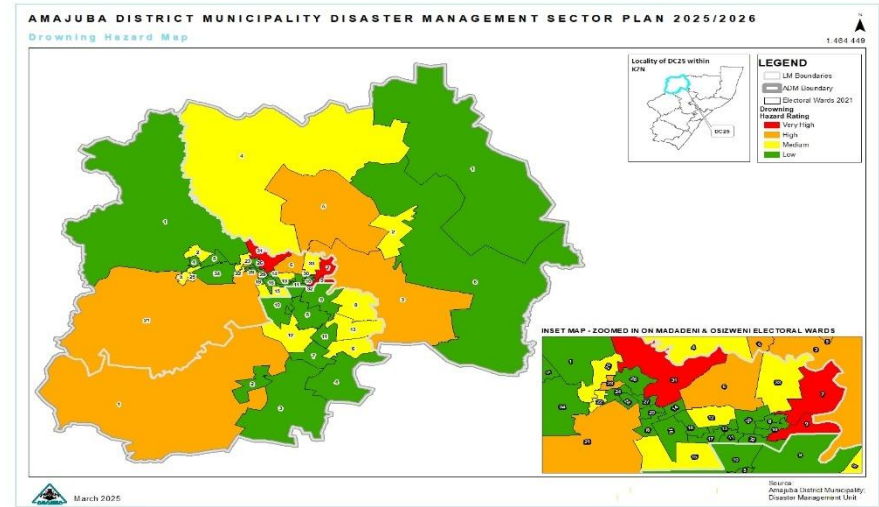
Map: Heavy Rainfall Hazard



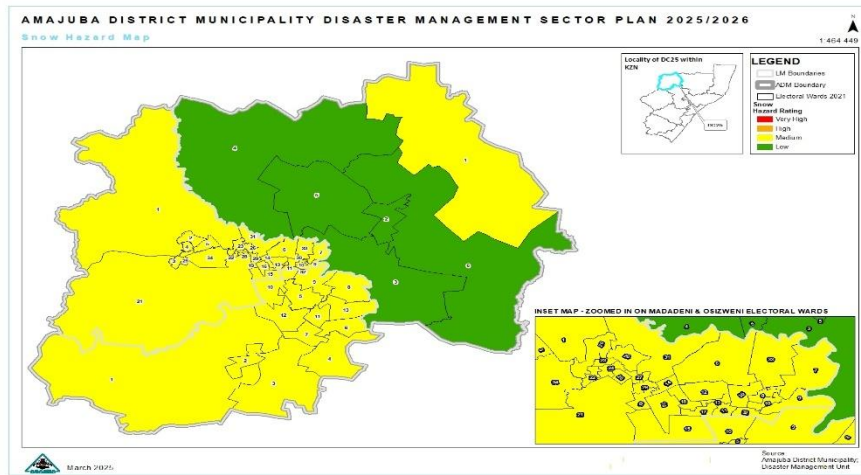
Map: Strong Winds Hazard



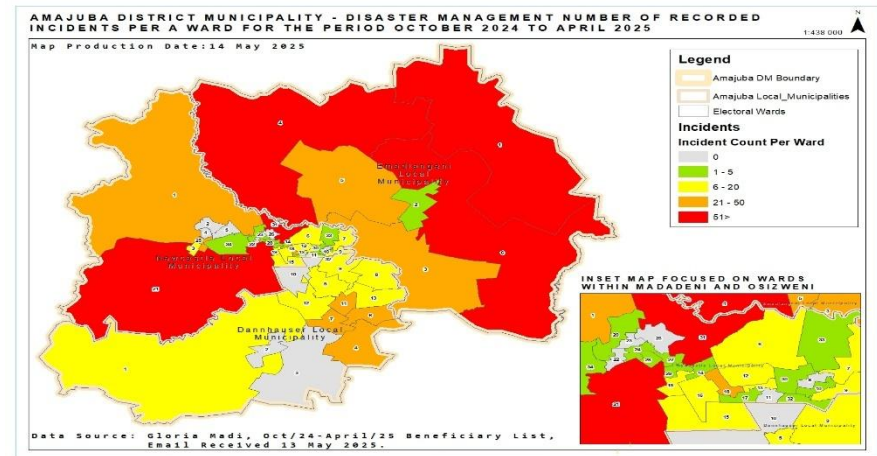
Map: Flood Hazard



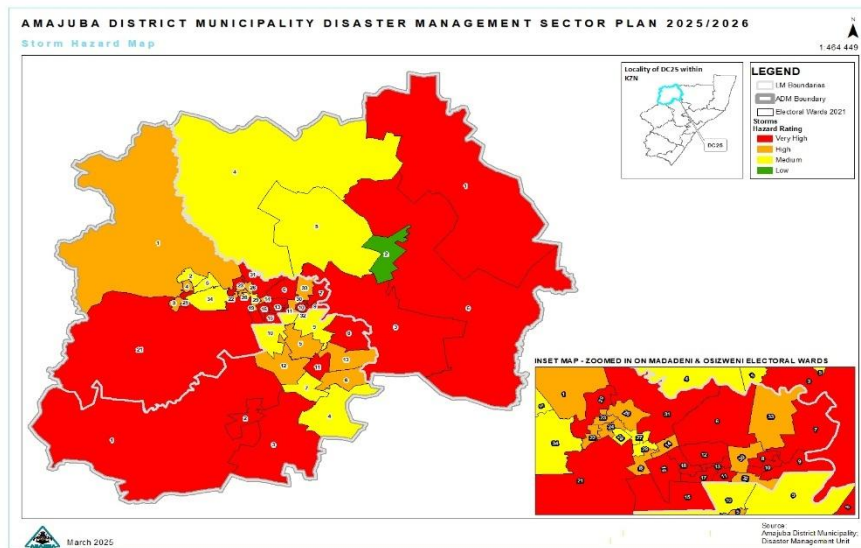
Map: Drowning Risk



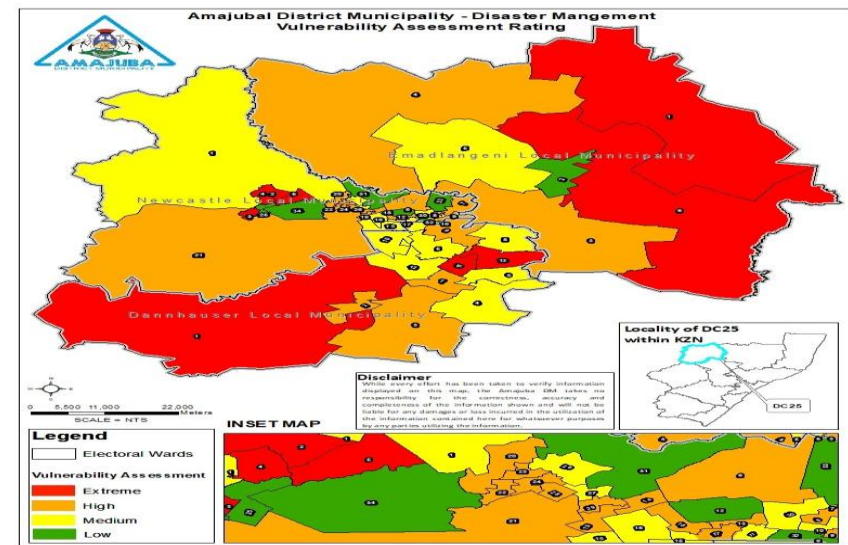
Map: Storms Risk



Map: Snow Risk



Map: Recorded Incidents per Ward



Map: Vulnerability Assessment Rating

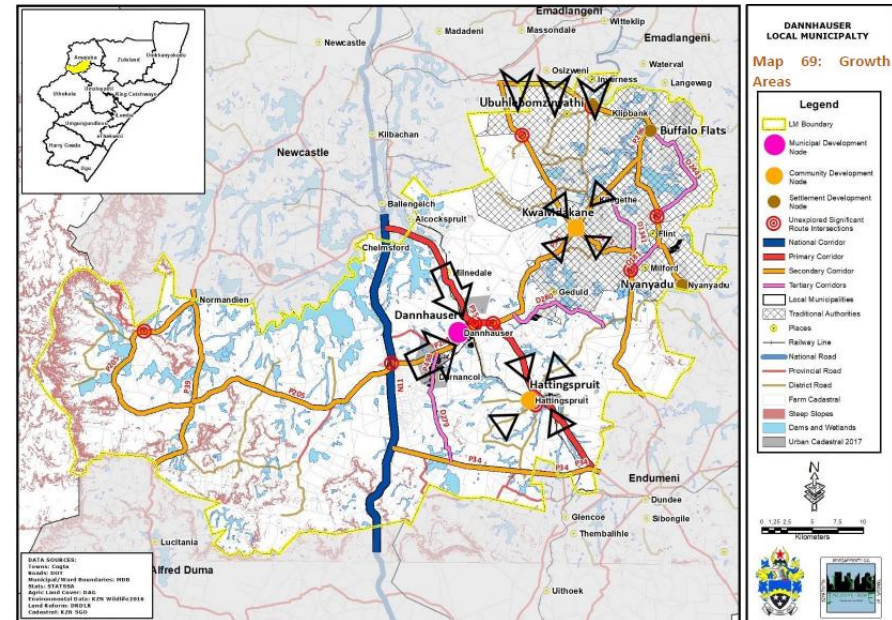
## 2.D. Local Municipal Policy Alignment

### 2.D. 1 Dannhauser Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework, 2017/2040

The Dannhauser town in the local municipality functions as a small rural service centre (providing commercial and service facilities and agricultural industries and services) and is not a large employment generator. Residents of the municipal area rely on the larger urban centres of Dundee and Newcastle for employment opportunities and higher order goods and services. Dannhauser Municipal area does not have a discernible structure or pattern, however there are spatial key features that have been identified within the DLM. These are:

- **Commercial Farmlands:** These dominate the municipal landscape and accounts for the majority of the municipal area;
- **Urban Settlements:** Located mainly around Dannhauser Town. These include Durnacol, Hattingspruit, etc;
- **Peri-urban settlements:** These stretch from east of Osizweni (Newcastle LM) to the northern part of Dannhauser. These include Mahlwane, Imfundwane, Mbabane, Hadebe, Zondo etc. Some of these are on privately owned land and some on Ingonyana Trust Land; and
- Settlements established through land reform programs: These include Alcockspruit, Mossdale, Elandsklip and Long Lands.

The municipality has a good linkage with the other two municipalities making it convenient for one to travel throughout the Amajuba District.



PLAN 5: Dannhauser SDF

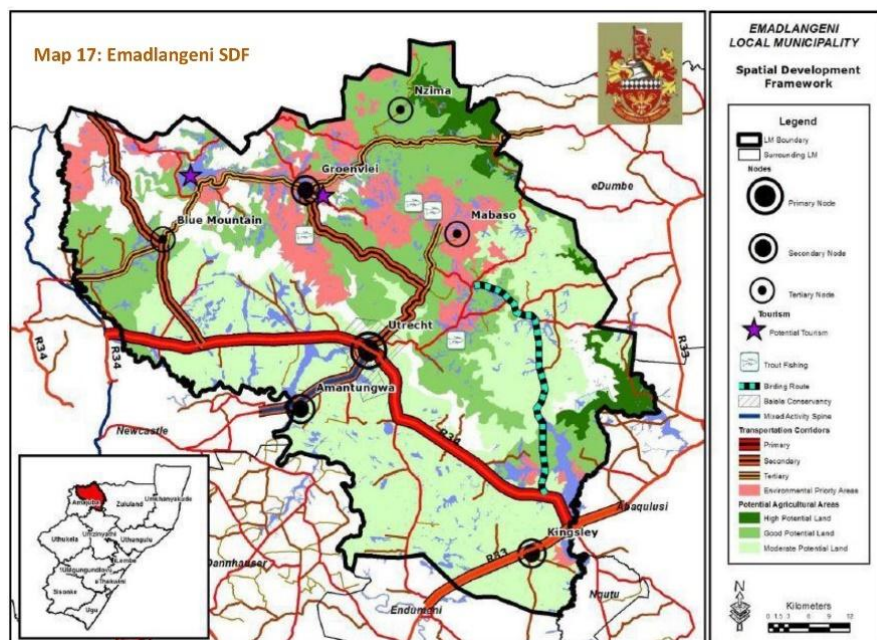
### 2.D. 2 eMadlangeni Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework, 2024/2025

Emadlangeni LM is situated to the north east of Dannhauser LM within Amajuba DM. Within this municipality exists Utrecht town which is the main administrative centre for Emadlangeni Municipality and is identified as a **tertiary node** as an **Agricultural Hub**. It has a good **potential** as a tertiary node **for investment promotion** and centre of supply of services in the district. The eastern area is where there seems to be denser households, which include Nyanyadu, Milford, Rutland, Kilegethe, Klipbank and

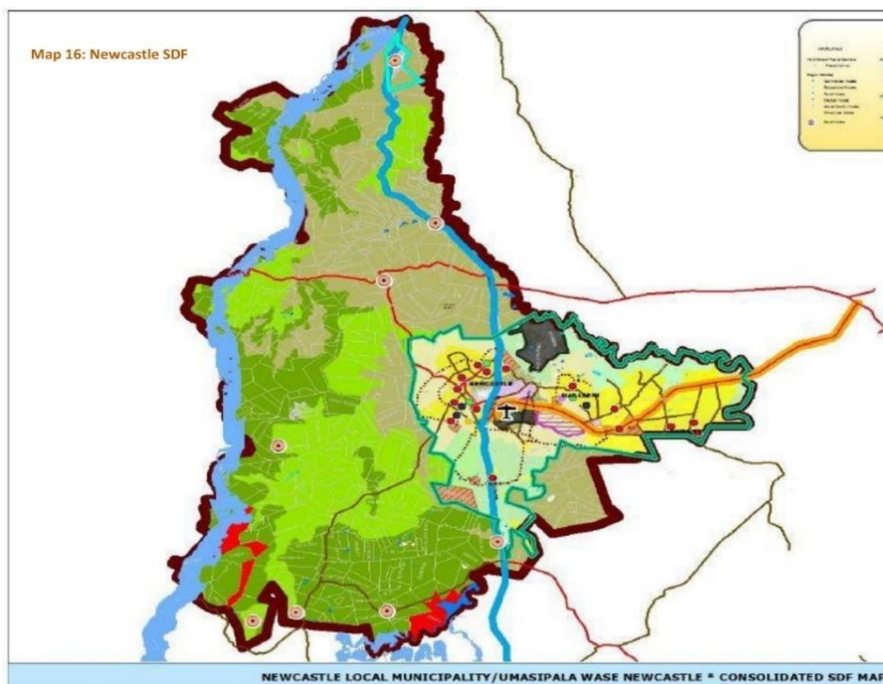
Inverness, under the traditional authority of UBuhlebomzinyathi and Nyanyadu. The community of Inverness within Newcastle could make use of public amenities such as health facilities and the police station accessible at Utrecht (within Emadlangeni) due to the fair proximity. Dannhauser and eMadlangeni municipalities are adjoined by a provincial (from Kilegethe heading north to Newcastle) corridor, P241. The linkages between these two municipalities are virtually non-existent, although R33 from Emadlangeni to Endumeni, also potentially links with Dannhauser.

### 2.D. 3 Newcastle Local Municipality Spatial Development Framework, 2024/2025

Newcastle Local Municipality is located to the north of Dannhauser Municipality and both these municipalities generally have good linkage within Amajuba District. They are linked through the provincial route R621 (P35-2) from Hattingspruit to Dannhauser and then unto N11 (to Newcastle). The Newcastle SDF has indicated **N11 as the primary mobility route**. The northern part of the municipality comprises of a number of rural settlements which includes KwaMdakane and Ubuhlebomzinyathi. These settlements are within the close administrative boundaries of Newcastle and are surrounded by the settlements such as Osizweni. Households located at north of the municipality enjoys that advantage of utilizing facilities provided within Osizweni. There are parts of the northern area which are considered as prime agricultural and conservation area.



PLAN 6: Emadlangeni SDF



PLAN 7: Newcastle SDF

## 2.D. 4 Implications of the Local Municipalities to the Neighbouring District Municipalities.

### *Uthukela District Municipality*

The district is well endowed with water, pockets of good soils and the natural beauty of the Drakensberg. Two national roads, the N3 and N11 transcend the district, which has a potential for economic development. Ladysmith and

Estcourt are the two major towns and economic hubs within the uThukela District Municipality.

Uthukela enjoys much stronger competitive advantages in terms of regional economy with the N3 and N11 traversing within it as well as a larger part of the Drakensberg Heritage Site. Alfred Duma LM is the only municipality within Uthukela that shares the boundaries with ADM.

### *Alfred Duma*

Alfred Duma LM is located to the south of Dannhauser. It is within uThukela DM.

The linkage at the western segment of Dannhauser together with north of ADLM has potential for sustainable agricultural practises because this area has numerous wetlands, receives relatively good climate and since the land use at Lutitania and Sundays within Alfred Duma municipality expresses prevalently good potential land.

### *Umzinyathi District Municipality*

The district is characterized by large infrastructure backlogs, particularly in respect of water and sanitation and mainly in the rural areas. Dundee is the tertiary node in the district with Greytown, Nquthu and Tugela Ferry serving as quaternary nodes. Even though Pietermaritzburg, Newcastle and Vryheid are centres that fall outside the district they are considered as important as they serve a large portion of the district. The key routes that link Amajuba and Umzinyathi are R33 that is considered as a secondary corridor.

### ***Endumeni Local Municipality***

The R33 links Emadlangeni to Endumeni municipality on the southeast. The R33 is identified as a secondary corridor in Emandlangeni while it is identified as a corridor of local influence in the PSEDS (2016). Overall, the municipalities do not have strong linkages other than those provided by the R33. They both utilise the services of the regional centre of Newcastle which offer a greater variety of services.

### ***Zululand District Municipality***

There are two municipalities that shares boundaries with Amajuba and these are Abaqulusi and Edumbe. Zululand SDF identifies Vryheid as a major town and acknowledges the regional significance of Abaqulusi as the economic powerhouse of the district. It also acknowledges that the influence of the town goes beyond the district boundaries to include portions of Amajuba and Umzinyathi Districts.

### ***Abaqulusi Local Municipality***

The R33 corridor links the two municipal areas. According the Emadlangeni SDF, the municipality has strong linkages to the urban core of Vryheid. Additionally, the Abaqulusi Municipality offers higher order services than those offered in the Emadlangeni urban area. portions of Emadlangeni generally have good linkages with Abaqulusi

### ***Edumbe Local Municipality***

The P332 provides the strongest linkages between Edumbe municipality and Emadlangeni. This is due to the farming in the northeast linking these two regions. The P332 is identified as a tertiary corridor in Emadlangeni SDF while it is identified as an agricultural corridor in the eDumbe SDF.

# SITUATIONAL ANALYSIS

This section aims to unpack the current Situation pertaining to the ADM. It also unpacks the relationship that the neighbouring DMs and LMs have with Amajuba. This assessment is aligned to the 3 SPLUMA Pillars of Biophysical, Socio Economic and Built Environment.

## 2.E. CROSS BORDER ALIGNMENT

“Cadastral boundaries do not necessarily conform to the characteristics of land, the natural environment, residential activities, economic activities and natural phenomena traverse’s municipal, provincial and international boundaries. All municipalities do not possess the required resources to provide services to communities e.g. water. Hence the aim of this objective is to ensure that spatial planning is aligned to allow government organisations to take advantage of comparative advantages offered within an area. This also refers to cross boundary provision of services such as education facilities, which can be utilised by communities residing in two municipalities. This allows for cost effective provision of services and is applicable to the provision of civil services, social services and economic opportunities. Alignment of initiatives will also prevent conflicting initiatives and land uses to be implemented on opposite sides of a boundary i.e. mining activities versus tourism due to pristine natural environment.” (KwaZulu-Natal PGDS, 2011, p131 – 132)

As per the National and Provincial policies and legislation (MSA-S26 (d), MSA Regs S2 (4) (h), municipalities are required to provide a clear indication of how the SDF is aligned with the planning of neighbouring municipalities. Amajuba District Municipality has a mandate to ensure that its IDP is in compliance with the planning legislation and policies to give effect to the development of an SDF as spatial representation of the IDP. The District SDF, in turn, directs and guides strategic investments that are developmental and beneficial within the district and across neighbouring district municipalities as well as local municipalities.

It is further reiterated that Amajuba District Municipality forms an integral part of a larger system of local governance and regional economy. It also influences development in the adjoining regions. Cross-border planning issues have become more prevalent and significant. The focus is on strategic or shared development issues that would benefit from a joint approach and engaging with the relevant neighbouring authorities to explore joint operational potential. This section is thus intended to ensure that there is no disharmony between proposals that are suggested by Amajuba District Municipality’s Spatial Development Framework and its neighbouring municipalities.

## 2.E. 1 Implications of the Amajuba District Municipality to the Neighbouring Local and District Municipalities.

### *Uthukela District Municipality*

The district is well endowed with water, pockets of good soils and the natural beauty of the Drakensberg. Two national roads, the N3 and N11 transcends the district, which has a potential for economic development. Ladysmith and Estcourt are the two major towns and economic hubs within the uThukela District Municipality.

Uthukela enjoys much stronger competitive advantages in terms of regional economy with the N3 and N11 traversing within it as well as a larger part of the Drakensberg Heritage Site. Alfred Duma LM is the only municipality within Uthukela that shares the boundaries with ADM.

Alignment Indicator	Alignment Status
<b>Development Corridors</b>	The N3 and N11 transverses through the district and joining it to the Amajuba district.
<b>Cross Boundary Influences</b>	The district being well endowed with water, pockets of good soil. This would promote good agricultural developments.
<b>Cross Boundary Corporation</b>	It is recommended that the municipalities cooperate on the protection of the landscape corridor and the future development of the N3 and N11 since they have the potential for economic developments.

<b>Potential Conflicting Issues</b>	None apparent between the 2 SDF's.
-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

### *Alfred Duma Local Municipality*

Alfred Duma LM is located to the south of Dannhauser. It is within uThukela DM.

The linkage at the western segment of Dannhauser together with north of ADM has potential for sustainable agricultural practices because this area has numerous wetlands, receives relatively good climate and since the land use at Lutitania and Sundays within Alfred Duma municipality expresses prevalently good potential land.

Alignment Indicator	Alignment Status
<b>Development Corridors</b>	The N3 is identified as the main economic corridor linking it to Gauteng and Durban while the N11 links it to Mpumalanga and the Free State Province.
<b>Cross Boundary Influences</b>	Lady Smith in the municipality is considered the main economic hub and it connects to the Dannhauser municipality which forms part of the ADM.
<b>Cross Boundary Corporation</b>	The provision of services should not be duplicated on the identified nodes within the region. Tourism linkages

<b>Potential Conflicting Issues</b>	No potential contradictions discovered.
---	---

### *Umzinyathi District Municipality*

The district is characterized by large infrastructure backlogs, particularly in respect of water and sanitation and mainly in the rural areas. Dundee is the tertiary node in the district with Greytown, Nquthu and Tugela Ferry serving as quaternary nodes. Even though Pietermaritzburg, Newcastle and Vryheid are centres that fall outside the district they are considered as important as they serve a large portion of the district. The key routes that link Amajuba and Umzinyathi are R33 that is considered as a secondary corridor

Dannhauser is situated within the Amajuba District Municipality. It borders Endumeni LM to the north-west. Dannhauser has access to Newcastle town as the primary corridor, although there is a fair proximity to Dundee town (in Endumeni) residents have an option to access both corridors based on preference and situation dependant on needs which may not be available in another town. Both municipalities share the R621 secondary corridor which links the town of Dannhauser to the N11 (and onto Newcastle) to the north and Dundee and Glencore (and onto the R33 main road). This corridor provides vital linkages to services satellites and ensure connectivity within service delivery in communities. Furthermore, it is noted that the N11 does not pass through Endumeni.

<b>Alignment Indicator</b>	<b>Alignment Status</b>
<b>Development Corridors</b>	R33 is identified a secondary corridor which runs through both district municipalities.
<b>Cross Boundary Influences</b>	Pietermaritzburg, Newcastle and Vryheid are centres that fall outside the district they are considered as important as they serve a large portion of the district.
<b>Cross Boundary Corporation</b>	Dannhauser and Dundee have Functional linkages. Agricultural and tourism linkages
<b>Potential Conflicting Issues</b>	No potential contradictions discovered.

### *Endumeni Local Municipality*

The R33 links Emadlangeni to Endumeni municipality on the southeast. The R33 is identified as a secondary corridor in Emandlangeni while it is identified as a corridor of local influence in the PSEDS (2016). They both utilise the services of the regional centre of Newcastle which offer a greater variety of services.

<b>Alignment Indicator</b>	<b>Alignment Status</b>
<b>Development Corridors</b>	Endumeni Local Municipality is linked to ADM through eMadlangeni using the R33 which is identified as a secondary corridor in eMadlangeni

<b>Cross Boundary Influences</b>	There is a strong agricultural linkage between Dannhauser and Dundee provided by the R33.as they are both earmarked for Agri-parks
<b>Cross Boundary Corporation</b>	Newcastle is the main service supplier to both the eMadlangeni and Endumeni Local Municipalities.
<b>Potential Conflicting Issues</b>	No potential contradictions discovered.

### **Zululand District Municipality**

There are two municipalities that shares boundaries with Amajuba, and these are Abaqulusi and Edumbe. Zululand SDF identifies Vryheid as a major town and acknowledges the regional significance of Abaqulusi as the economic powerhouse of the district. It also acknowledges that the influence of the town goes beyond the district boundaries to include portions of Amajuba and Umzinyathi Districts.

The R33 corridor links the two municipal areas. According the Emadlangeni SDF, the municipality has strong linkages to the urban core of Vryheid. Additionally, the Abaqulusi Municipality offers higher order services than those offered in the Emadlangeni urban area. portions of Emadlangeni generally have good linkages with Abaqulusi

The P332 provides the strongest linkages between Edumbe municipality and Emadlangeni. This is due to the farming in the northeast linking these two regions. The P332 is identified as a tertiary corridor in Emadlangeni SDF while it is identified as an agricultural corridor in the eDumbe SDF.

<b>Alignment Indicator</b>	<b>Alignment Status</b>
<b>Development Corridors</b>	The Abaqulusi municipality has strong linkages to the urban core of Vryheid and is linked to ADM through the R33 via the eMadlangeni.  eDumbe Municipality is linked to ADM through the P332 which is identified as a tertiary corridor.
<b>Cross Boundary Influences</b>	There isn't a strong linkage other than those provided by the R33.
<b>Cross Boundary Corporation</b>	There shouldn't be a duplication of the services offered in the different municipalities.  The P332 linkage is identified as an agricultural corridor and should be fully exploited.
<b>Potential Conflicting Issues</b>	No potential contradictions discovered.

This section of the report analyses the current municipal situation and is therefore carried out in terms of the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform’s Spatial Development Framework Guidelines and Evaluation Framework 2014.

These Guidelines outline 3 pillars which the SDF should be developed in line with, i.e., Biophysical, Socio – economic and Built environment. Each pillar has various subcomponents. These are outlined in the figure below.

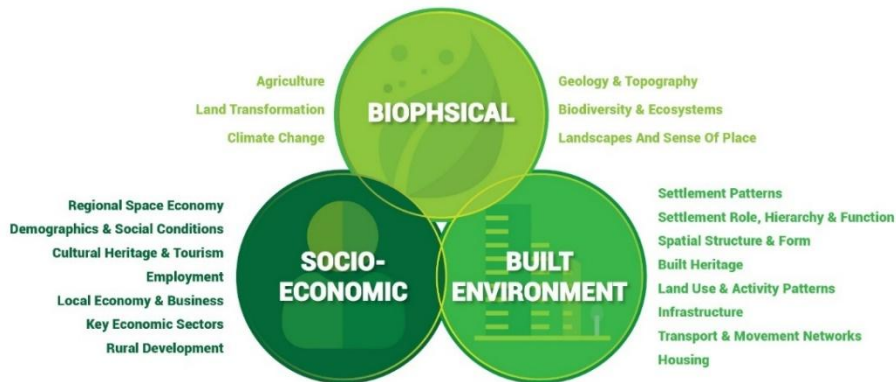


Figure 14: SPLUMA Pillars

The Amajuba District Municipality is a Category C municipality located in the north-western corner of KwaZulu-Natal, bordering on the Free State Province and Limpopo. It is one of the smallest districts in the province, making up only 8% of its geographical area.

## 2.F. SOCIO – ECONOMIC ANALYSIS

The following assessment will unpack the Socio-economic conditions of the for the Amajuba District.

This will include Demographic Assessment, Social Facility Assessment, Economic, Tourism, etc.

Socio-Economic:  
 “Social and economic factors that influence growth or progress of/or within an area.”

### 2.F 1 Demographic Assessment

#### Population

The total population for Amajuba District Municipality was estimated at **499 838 people** dispersed across three (3) municipalities in 2011, while in **2016** the population was estimated at **531 327** as per the table below. The population growth rate was estimated at 6.3% from 2011 to 2016

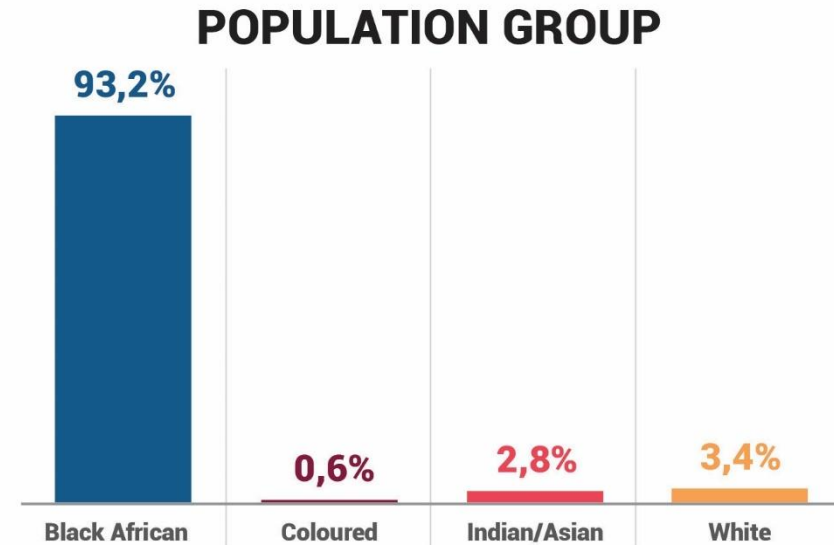
Table 2: Population Per Municipality

TOTAL POPULATION		
MUNICIPALITY	2016	2022
Newcastle Local	389 117	507 910
Emadlangeni Local	36 869	36 948
Dannhauser Local	105 341	142 750
Amajuba District	531 327	687 608

The total population grew by (156 281) since 2016. The population is dominated by females accounting for 52 percent of the total population, this may be attributed by employment opportunities that reside elsewhere outside of the municipal boundary which in most males are thus obliged to migrate out to get better chances of being employed. The Newcastle is home to the majority of the population of the district, accounting for about 73.2% while Emadlangeni hosts 6.9% and Dannhauser with 19.9%.

### Population Group

As indicated below, figures recorded revealed that the predominant population group residing within the Amajuba District Municipality is Black African which accounts for 93.19% of the total population followed by White at 3.4%, Indian/Asian at 2.78%, and Coloured at 0.63%.



### Gender Split

The split between males and females, in 2016 within the Amajuba District Municipality, was 48% and 52%, respectively. This indicates a fairly even split between the two sex groups, as one sex group does not significantly dominate the other. However, there are 4% more females than males within the district jurisdiction. The same gender split percentages are seen in the 2022

Community Survey, this goes to show that the district is growing at a balanced gender split percentage.

The figure below depicts the percentage of females versus the percentage of males in the respective local municipalities within the jurisdiction of the ADM, as per Statistics South Africa Census of 2016 and Community Survey 2022.



NEWCASTLE LOCAL MUNICIPALITY				
	2016	Percentage (%)	2022	Percentage (%)
<b>Male</b>	186 246	48	243434	47.9
<b>Female</b>	202 871	52	264476	52

DANNHAUSER LOCAL MUNICIPALITY				
	2016	Percentage (%)	2022	Percentage (%)
<b>Male</b>	49 860	47	68839	48.2
<b>Female</b>	55 482	53	73911	51.8

Table 3: Gender Split Per Municipality

EMADLANGENI LOCAL MUNICIPALITY				
	2016	Percentage (%)	2022	Percentage (%)
<b>Male</b>	17 724	48	18189	49.2
<b>Female</b>	19 145	52	18759	50.8

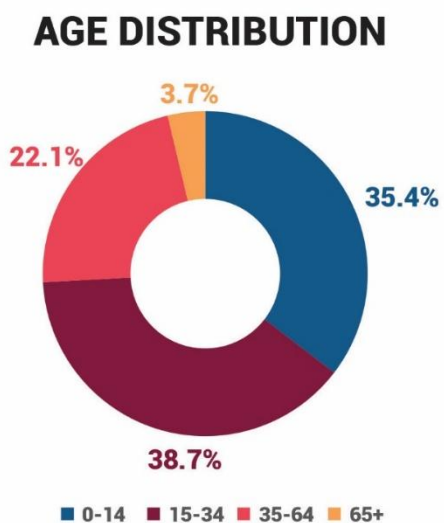
## Age Structure

According to Statistics South Africa, the district is predominantly characterised by a young population, which is divided into the following strata; - The Amajuba District Municipality shows a significant proportion of youth dependency.

The age structure shown alongside illustrates that a total of 60.85% of the population are of the 'working age' grouping.

35.43% of the population are under the age of 15 years, while only 3.72% of the population are pensioners over the age of 65 years.

A relatively young population requires innovative economic interventions. The dominance of mining and agriculture may pose challenges to job opportunities, if there are no deliberate efforts to find innovative aspects of traditional sectors for integrating young population. A young population also requires responsive government, given the inclination for social unrest among this younger population. It also requires economic and social interventions modelled after the social and economic needs for younger population. Technology innovation, social programmes integrated into schools, sports and re-creation, skills development -all these are critical in responding to the socio-economic demands of a young population.



## Languages

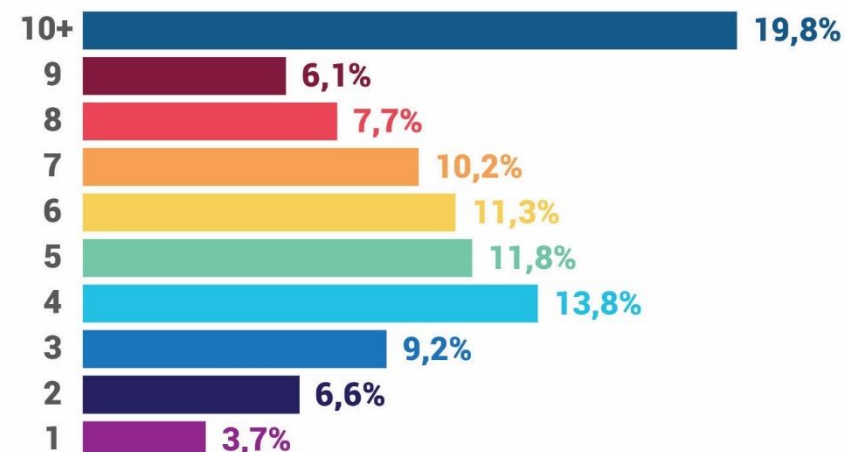
There are 3 main languages spoken within the District Municipality **namely Isi-Zulu 89,38%, English 4,19%, and Afrikaans 2,86%**. Although there are other languages spoken in the municipality, they are very few calculating to an unmeasurable in number in percentages. (Source: Community Survey, 2016).

Table 4: Languages

Languages	Total	Percentage (%)
<b>Afrikaans</b>	15 212	2,86
<b>English</b>	22 268	4,19
<b>Isindebele</b>	459	0,09
<b>Isixhosa</b>	1 338	0,25
<b>Isizulu</b>	474 903	89,38
<b>Sepedi</b>	336	0,06
<b>Sesotho</b>	2 756	0,52
<b>Setswana</b>	236	0,04
<b>Sign language</b>	28	0,01

<b>Siswati</b>	406	0,08
<b>Tshivenda</b>	71	0,01
<b>Xitsonga</b>	174	0,03
<b>Khoi</b>	13	0,00
<b>Other</b>	1 705	0,32
<b>Not Specified</b>	9	0,00
<b>Not Applicable</b>	11 414	2,15
<b>Total</b>	531 327	100

population has a household size of approximately 3 to 7 people as shown below.



### Household Size

**Definition:** A household is either a group of people who live together and provide themselves jointly with food and/or other essentials for living, or it is a single person living on his/her own. An individual is considered part of a household if he/she spends at least four nights a week within the household. To categorise a household according to population group, the population group to which the head of the household belongs, is used.

It is important to note that ADM is characterised by predominantly small household sizes, according to the Community Survey of 2022. Majority of the

### Type of Dwelling

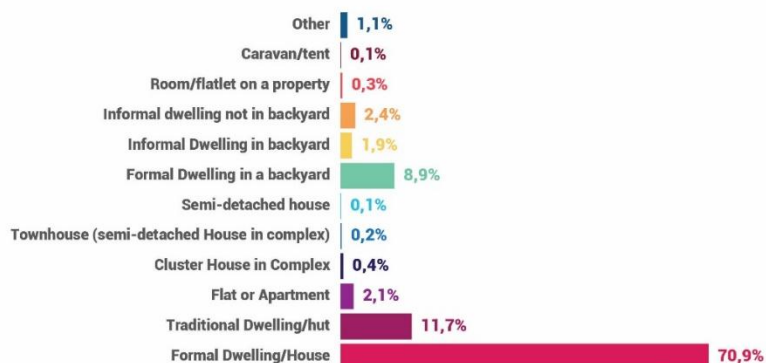
With regards to household types, it is important to note that decent housing matters in terms of improved access to health and the ability to participate in the labour market. Decent housing plays a critical role in savings, and investment, in addition to enabling positive social consequences such as identity and self-esteem (Harris and Arku, 2006). These benefits allow better living standards.

The type of dwelling does link with poverty or social mobility. Overcrowded housing is synonymous with poor living conditions (making this phenomenon

an indicator of poverty (See Leventhal and Newman 2010 and Lund et al. 2010). Poor access to basic services by and large, depends on the type of a household. Thus said, as illustrated below, most household types are formal houses (70.91%) followed by traditional dwellings (11.74%) and formal houses in a backyard (8.9%).

Below is a graphical illustration of the aforementioned.

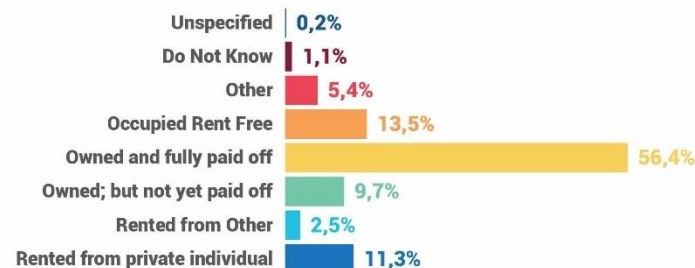
### TYPE OF MAIN DWELLING



### Household Tenure Status

In terms of ownership, 56.38% of households in ADM are owned and fully paid off.

### TENURE STATUS



### Head of Household

Globally and in South Africa, household headship is an important indicator of the overall characteristics of a given household. According to Rosenhouse, household heads are summed to occupy a hierarchical relationship, they are regularly present in the household they make major decisions in the household and, they provide economic support to the rest of the household members (Rosenhouse 1989;4). On this basis, women headed households are often more vulnerable than those headed by their male counterparts. Numerous studies suggest that employed women tend to earn lesser than men, they often have less time to engage in productive market labour -due to care work-, they are discriminated against in access to opportunities (Buvinic and Gupta, 1997). Buvinic and Gupta (1997) further attribute the vulnerability of female headed households to teen pregnancy, as well as political conflicts. Furthermore, the means test approach to social welfare access requires women to leave their care work in order to access social grants. This is an either-or choice in most cases. All these factors enable poverty in female headed households.

The above in perspective, there are more female headed households in the district, the same is prevalent in the province as seen in the below. (Source: Community Survey, 2022).

Table 5: Head of Household

	Amajuba DM		KwaZulu-Natal	
	Total	%	Total	%
<b>Male</b>	222 996	42%	4 785 126	43%
<b>Female</b>	308 301	58%	6 280 114	57%

## 2.F 2 Economic Assessment

The main economic sectors are assessed as follows.

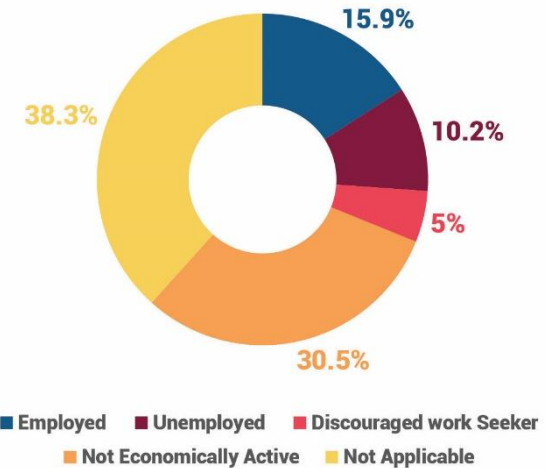


### Employment Status

Employment data is a key element in the estimation of unemployment. In addition, trends in employment within different sectors and industries normally indicate significant structural changes in the economy. Employment data is also used in the calculation of productivity, earnings per worker, and other economic indicators. According to Statistics South Africa 2011, there is a total of 30.5% of the population of ADM are not economically active. This is a fairly high percentage when considering that an additional 43.34% of the population

which makes up youth unemployment rate, between the ages of 15 and 34 are economically inactive (Source: Census 2016).

## EMPLOYMENT STATUS (2011)



**Definition:** Total employment consists of two parts: employment in the formal sector, and employment in the informal sector

Table 6: Employment Per Municipality

	Newcastle	Emadlangeni	Dannhauser
<b>Employed</b>	17.3%	16.9%	10.6%
<b>Unemployed</b>	10.4%	10.2%	9.6%
<b>Discouraged work seeker</b>	4.7%	6.3%	5.6%

<b>Not economically Active</b>	30.9%	25.7%	30.8%
<b>Not Applicable</b>	36.7%	40.9%	43.3%
<b>Total</b>	100%	100%	100%

### Sector Employment

Below shows employment by sector in Amajuba District Municipality. It shows that the formal sector is the main contributor to employment in the district absorbing approximately the majority of its labour force.

The community services sector employed the highest percentage of residents followed by manufacturing, finance, mining, trade and transport. It is noticeable that the agricultural sector has declined.

In terms of sector performance within the District, the structure of an economy is inherently divided into three sectors, these being the primary, secondary and tertiary sectors. Ideal economic performance should be driven mainly by the primary and the secondary sectors as these are the main catalysts for export and employment opportunities. However, the country, the province, and the economy of the District is driven to a large extent by the services sector. In Amajuba, the tertiary sector in 2018 constituted 58.2% of the total district GDP-R in real terms.

Sector	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017	2018
<b>Primary Sector</b>	<b>17,70</b>	<b>18,7</b>	<b>18,6</b>	<b>18,7</b>	<b>19,3</b>	<b>19,6</b>	<b>16,8</b>	<b>16,9</b>	<b>17,4</b>	<b>17,1</b>
Agriculture	4,5	3,9	3,8	3,6	3,6	3,6	3,6	3,8	4	3,7
Mining	13,2	14,8	14,8	15,1	15,7	16	13,2	13,1	13,4	13,4
<b>Secondary Sector</b>	<b>24,5</b>	<b>23,1</b>	<b>21,2</b>	<b>20,5</b>	<b>20,3</b>	<b>20,7</b>	<b>21,3</b>	<b>21,1</b>	<b>20,4</b>	<b>20,3</b>
Manufacturing	20,7	19,5	17,4	17,1	16,8	17,1	17,6	17,7	17,1	17
Construction	3,8	3,6	3,8	3,4	3,5	3,6	3,7	3,4	<b>3,3</b>	3,3
<b>Tertiary Sector</b>	<b>55,4</b>	<b>55,4</b>	<b>56,5</b>	<b>56,7</b>	<b>56,4</b>	<b>65,9</b>	<b>57,9</b>	<b>57,9</b>	<b>58</b>	<b>58,2</b>
Trade	11	11	11,6	11,4	11	10,6	11,1	11,1	<b>11,1</b>	11
Transport	8,6	8,3	8,6	9	9,5	9,5	9,5	9,2	<b>9</b>	8,9
Finance	14,9	14,4	14,3	14,6	14,3	14,1	14,7	14,7	<b>14,9</b>	14,8
Community Services	20,9	21,7	22	21,7	21,6	21,7	22,6	22,9	<b>23</b>	23,5

Source: IHS Markit, 2019

Figure 15: Sector Performance Analysis

The Tertiary Sector, which constitutes Trade, Transport, Finance and Community services, is the primary driver of growth in the Amajuba District. During the period 2009 through 2018, these Sectors' contribution to the GDP-R recorded an average of 51.1%. The major contributors to the GDP-R within this sector in 2018 were, Community services at 23.5%, followed by Finance at 14.8%, Transport at 8.9%, and Trade at 11%.

Averaging 21.3% over the period 2009 to 2018, the Secondary Sector, constituting Manufacturing and Construction was the second largest contributor to the GDP-R of the region. This Sector showed a decrease of 4.2% over the 10-year period from 24.5% in 2009 to 20.3% in 2018. When evaluated singularly, Manufacturing far outweighs Construction, the reason being that the district is a "textile" and clothing industry hub as well as the fact that it houses the Natal Portland Cement Company, the LANXESS Chrome Chemical Plant and Arcelor Mittal.

Over a ten-year period, the average annual contribution to the GDP-R from the Primary sector, comprising of Agriculture and Mining, equated to an averaged 18.1%. The Mining industry in Amajuba is the main sector within this category and averaged 14.27% to Amajuba's GDP. Agriculture comprised 3.7% of the districts GDP in 2018, with cattle and sheep farming being two of the main types of agronomy.

Table 7: Sector Employment

	Amajuba DM	Newcastle LM	Emadlangeni LM	Dannhauser LM
Type of Sector	%	%	%	%
Formal Sector	11.7%	13.2%	10.4%	6.9%
Informal Sector	2.5%	2.3%	5.4%	2.3%
Private Household	1.4%	1.5%	1.3%	1.2%
Do not know	0.6%	0.6%	0.2%	0.4%

Not Applicable	83.8%	82.4%	82.7%	89.2%
----------------	-------	-------	-------	-------

### Informal Economy

The informal sector stakeholders are of the view that local informal economy of ADM is strangled by foreign illegal businesses whose main strengths are working together through bulk buying and trading amongst each other. Although there is a huge potential of economic growth in the townships, poor infrastructure and lack of trading spaces are hindering investment and trade by informal sector. In addition, there seems to be poor regulation of informal business and lack of support by government.

There is poor implementation of land-use by-laws by the respective municipalities. Even though the Spatial and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA) has a potential of redressing some of the socio-economic imbalances created by apartheid laws, for its successful implementation it needs the cooperation and collaboration with traditional leaders who are the custodians of tribal land. Currently, the informal traders cannot invest more in their businesses as they do not own their business areas and that contributes to instability and lack of growth of their respective businesses. There is a sense that Tribal Authorities may not be aware of the crucial role they can play in the effective implementation of SPLUMA, to the advantage of informal traders; they need to be sensitised through workshops on land-use management issues.

As a result of government sector departments and the respective municipalities working in silos, inter-governmental relations (IGR) are

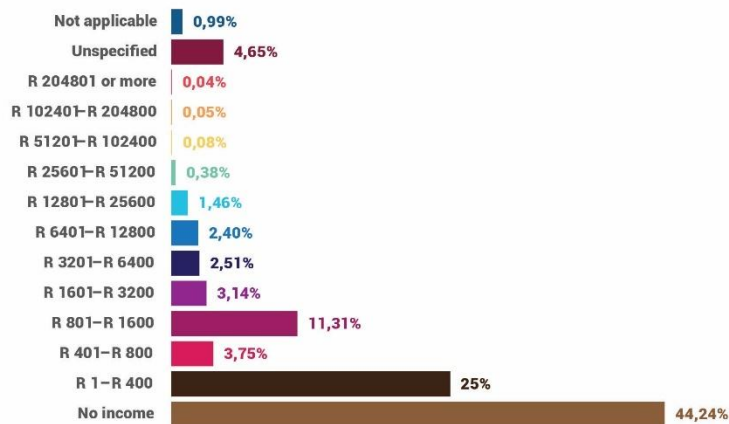
negatively affected; the programmes and policies that are established for informal sector tend to confuse the sector as they are developed at different worldview points; and finally, the informal stakeholder group are of the view that there is poor regulation of informal trading in general and lack of support by government.

Some of the challenges facing SMEs and Cooperatives were identified as lack of understanding the importance of circulation of money amongst the SMEs and within the district; the weakness of engaging in similar and oversaturated business activities by SMEs and Cooperatives; perceived lack of basic support by government; and poor implementation of cooperatives.

### Individual Monthly Income

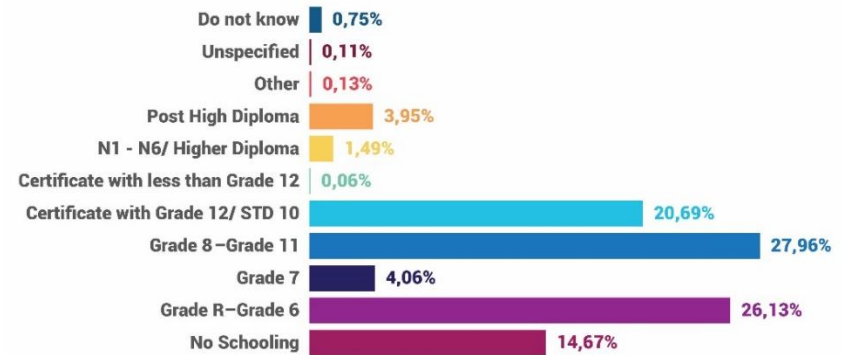
Referring to the Statistics South Africa 2011, It is interesting to note that 44.24% of the population of ADM who are of working age, do not earn an income at all. This is a significant figure to note.

#### INDIVIDUAL MONTHLY INCOME (2011)



### Educational Level

Statistics South Africa (2011) illustrates that 27.96% of the population has some secondary schooling, 20.69% has a Grade 12 with certificate and 1.49% is in possession of a higher Diploma. It therefore becomes important to interrogate why a significant proportion of the population has no individual monthly income.



### GDP Contribution

The Amajuba District contributes 2.7% of KZN's GDP making it the seventh largest provincial contributor out of the 11 districts.

With a GDP of R 22.2 billion in 2019 (up from R 12.5 billion in 2009), the Amajuba District contributed 2.76% to the KwaZulu-Natal Province GDP of R 805 billion in 2019. The largest contributor to Amajuba's GDP is Newcastle at 78.6%, followed by Dannhauser at 13.6%, and then by Emadlangeni at 7.9%. The Town of Newcastle is the economic hub of the region and is based in the local municipality of Newcastle. In contrast, Emadlangeni is mainly a rural

district, hence it contributes the lowest portion of GDP to the Amajuba District.

## CONTRIBUTION TO **AMAJUBA DISTRICT GDP- 2018**



**Implications:** The above-mentioned demographics assists with understanding the types of population that exists within the district in order to adequately plan for this population. The demographics above illustrate a population pyramid that constitutes of a predominately young population, which remains chronically unemployed. Furthermore, the demographics illustrate a relatively learned population, however almost half of this population is unable to make any income. This is one of the contributing factors to a declining population which results in an outward migration. The SDF will therefore have to analyse the aforesaid, as well as other factors which may contribute to curbing outward migration, alleviating poverty, ensuring job creation, and promoting sustainable development.

### 2.F. 3 Social Facilities

Social facilities are a vital aspect of human settlements as they serve as sources for social and public services; including health, education, recreation, cultural and socializing spaces among other services.

Access to and availability of social facilities is an important factor which attracts and keeps people in an area. Therefore, the section below indicates the number of social facilities within the municipality jurisdiction.

The following strategies for social infrastructure are based on the criteria as stipulated in terms of the CSIR Human Settlement Guidelines: -

Table 8: CSIR Human Settlements Guidelines

Planning Thresholds	Walking Distance	Minimum Requirements
Crèche	2 km Radius	2 400 – 3 000 people
Primary School	5 km Radius	1 000 – 7 000 people
Secondary/ High School	5 km Radius	2 500 – 12 500 people
Library	8-10 km Radius	20 000 – 70 000 people
Clinic	5 km Radius	24 000 – 70 000 people
Hospital	30 km Radius	300 000 – 900 000 people
Police Station	8 km Radius	60 000 – 100 000 people
Post Office	5-10 km Radius	10 000 – 20 000 people

Pension Pay Points	5 km Radius	Variable
Community Halls	10 km Radius	10 000 – 60 000 people
Shops	10 km Radius	1 x 5000 people
Cemetery	15 km Radius	8.8Ha / 50 000 people

The section below aims to highlight the number of social facilities which are currently accessible to the people of the Municipality, as well as determine if these social facilities are sufficient to cater to the population as per the CSIR thresholds above.

### Educational Facilities

Educational facilities are categorised differently based on grades. For this section, education facilities will be differentiated according to grades / ages; Creche, Primary School, and Secondary School. In terms of the CSIR Standards on Human Settlement and Design, the following planning thresholds are applicable:

Table 9: Educational facilities, Use Capacity and threshold

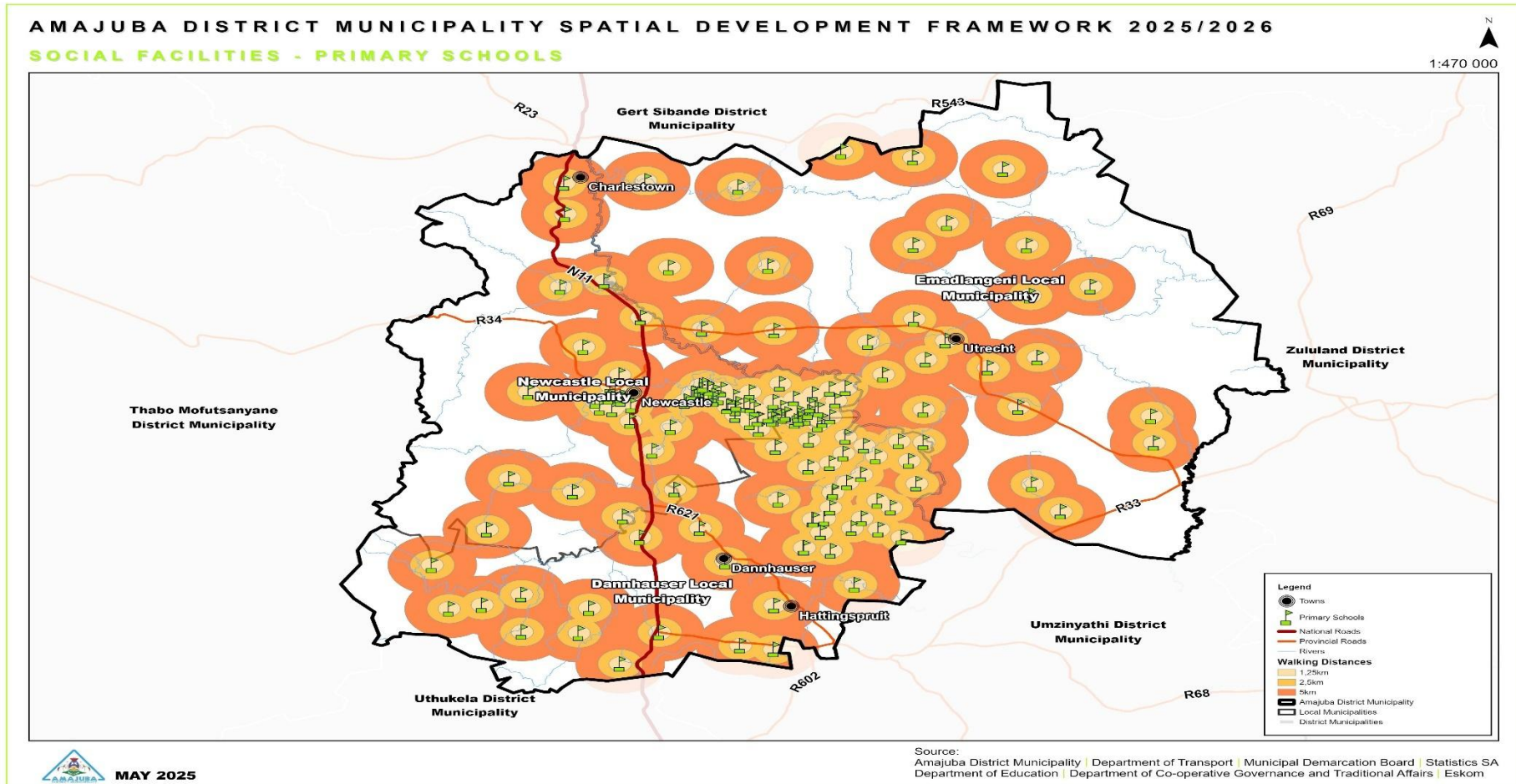
Facility	Use capacity and threshold
<b>Creche</b>	A maximum of 1.5km walking distance is applied here
<b>Primary School</b>	To serve an estimated minimum population of between 3 000 and 4 000

**Secondary  
School**

To serve an estimated minimum population of between  
6 000 and 10 000

## Primary Schools

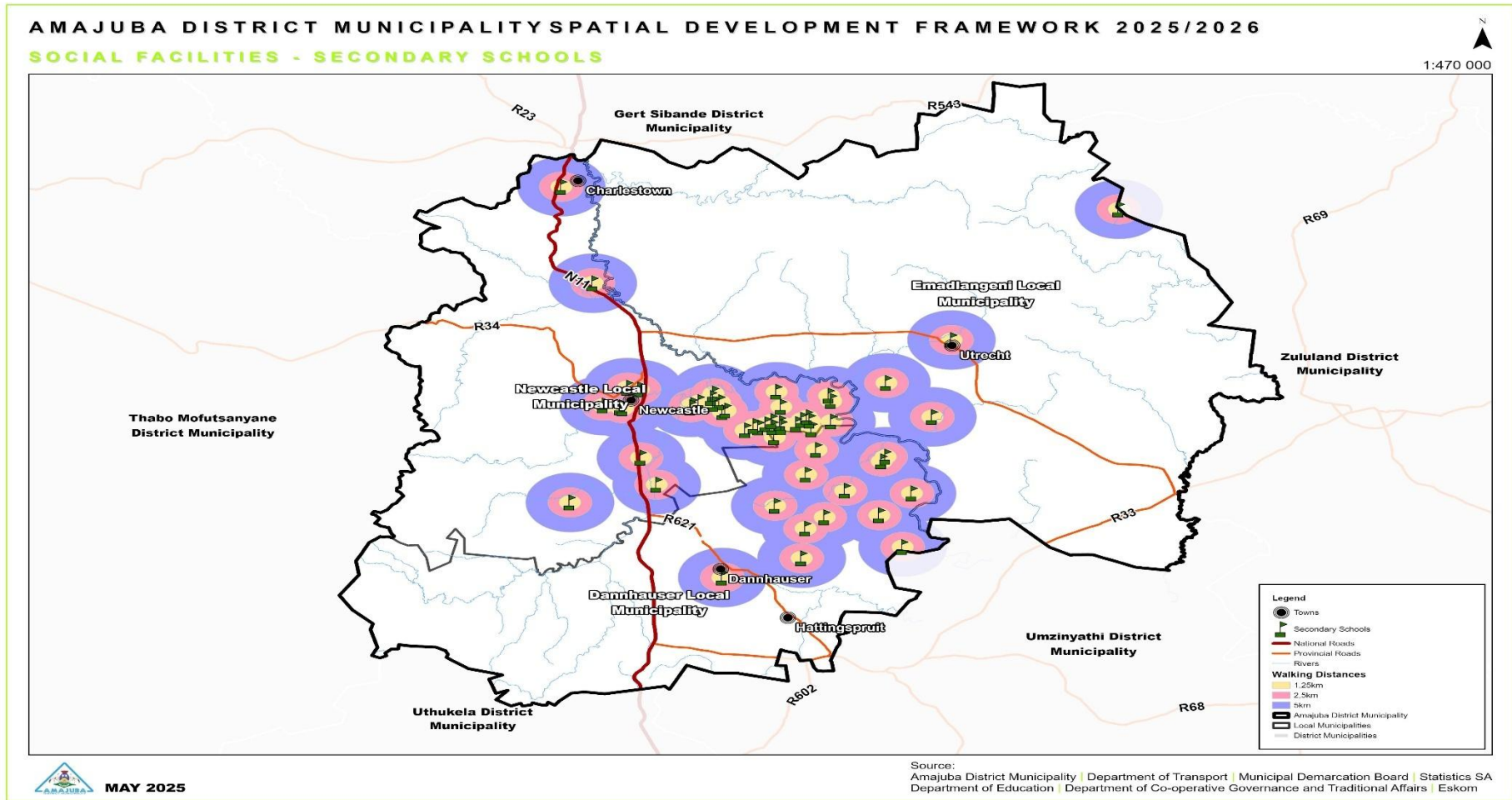
There are 132 Primary Schools in the District.



PLAN 8: Primary Schools

## Secondary Schools

There are 44 Secondary School in the District

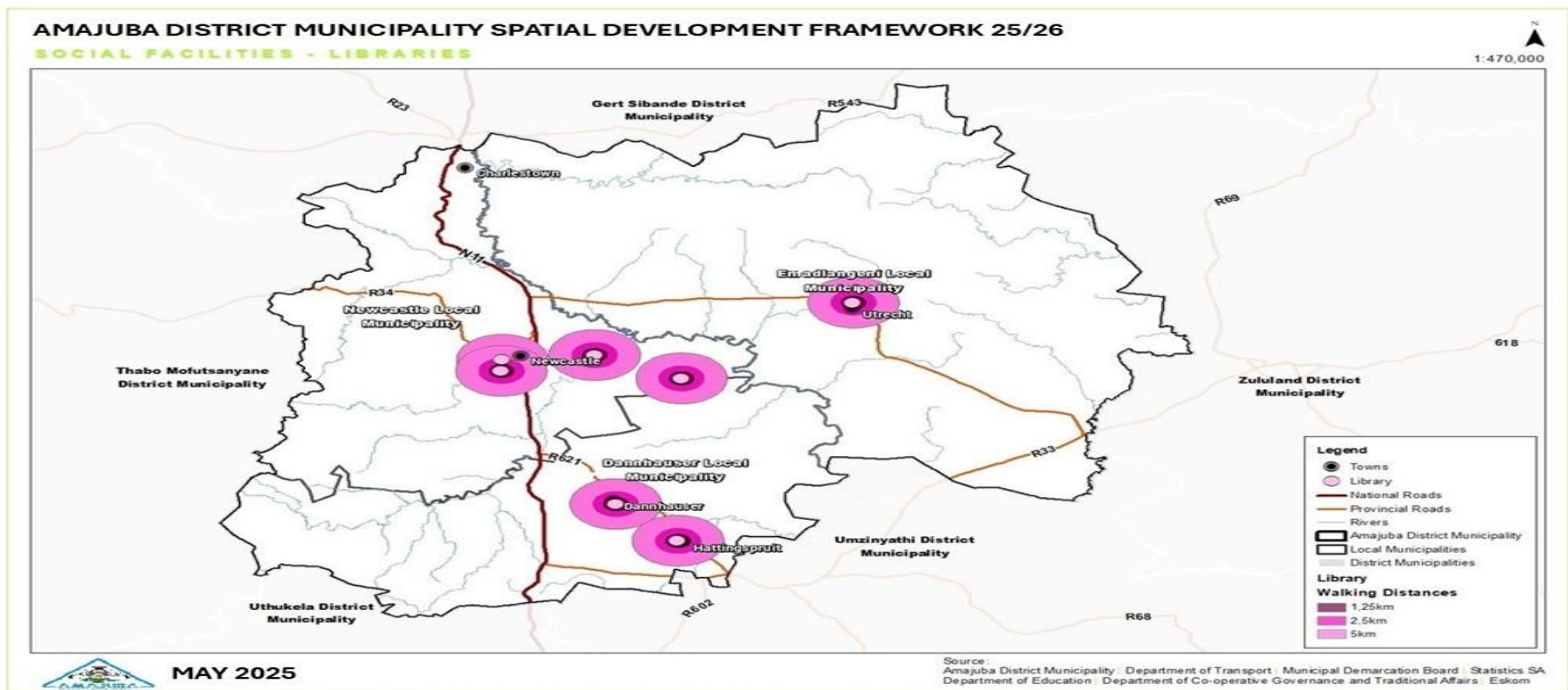


PLAN 9: Secondary Schools

## Library

In terms of the Human Settlement Planning and Design (CSIR Guidelines), an 8km to 10km radius is deemed to be the recommended walking distance to a Library. The CSIR Guidelines also indicate that a Library is to serve a population of approximately 20 000 to 70 000 people.

The district has 4 Libraries.

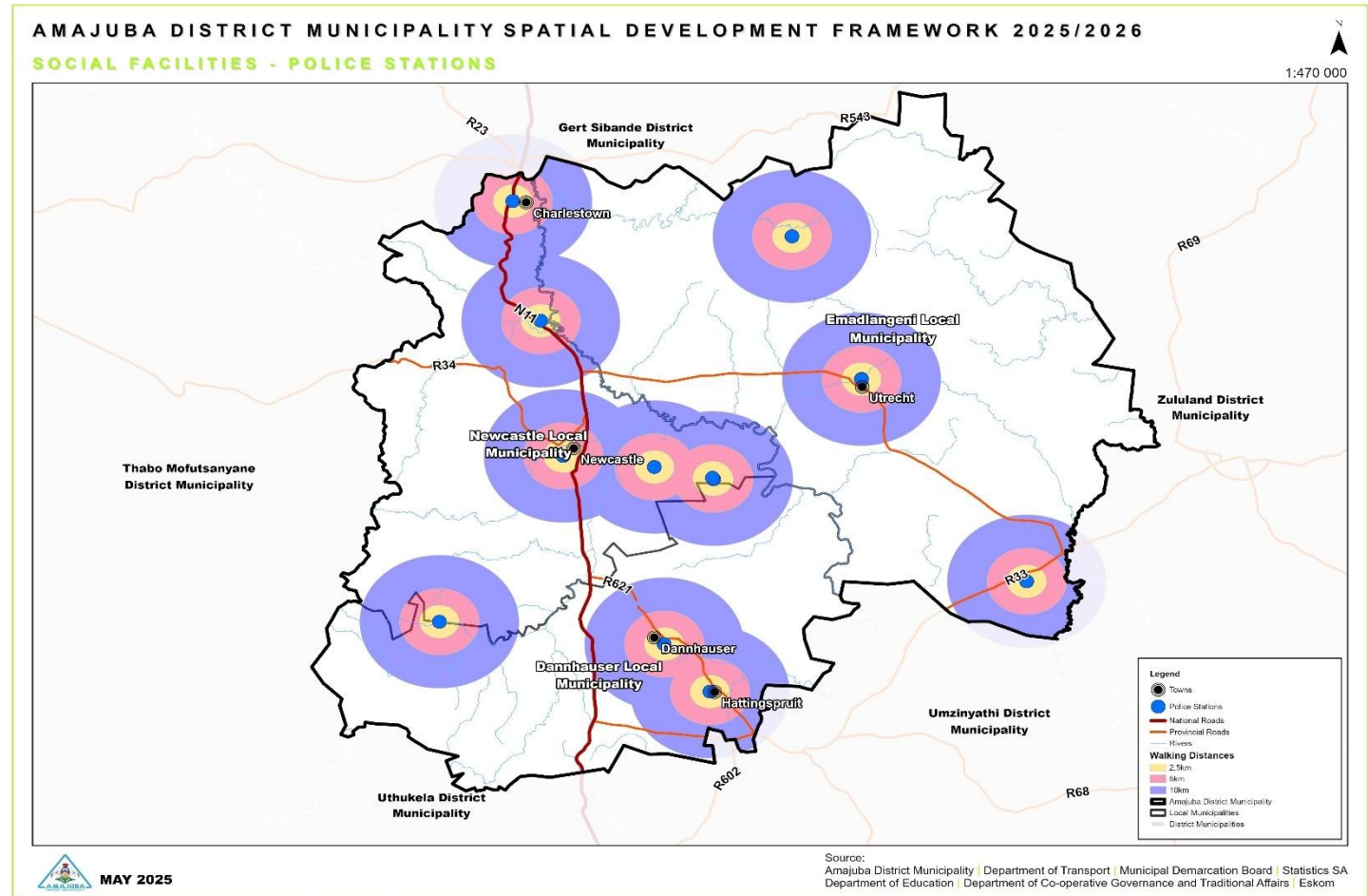


PLAN 10: Libraries

## Police Station

In terms of the Human Settlement Planning and Design (CSIR Guidelines), an 8km radius is deemed to be the recommended travelling distance to a Police Station. The CSIR Guidelines also indicate that a Police Station is to serve a population of approximately 60 000 to 100 000 people. The number of Police Stations for the area is considered sufficient as they are within the recommended traveling distance.

The district municipality has 12 permanent police stations and 1 satellite Police Station



PLAN 11: Police Stations

## ***Health Facilities***

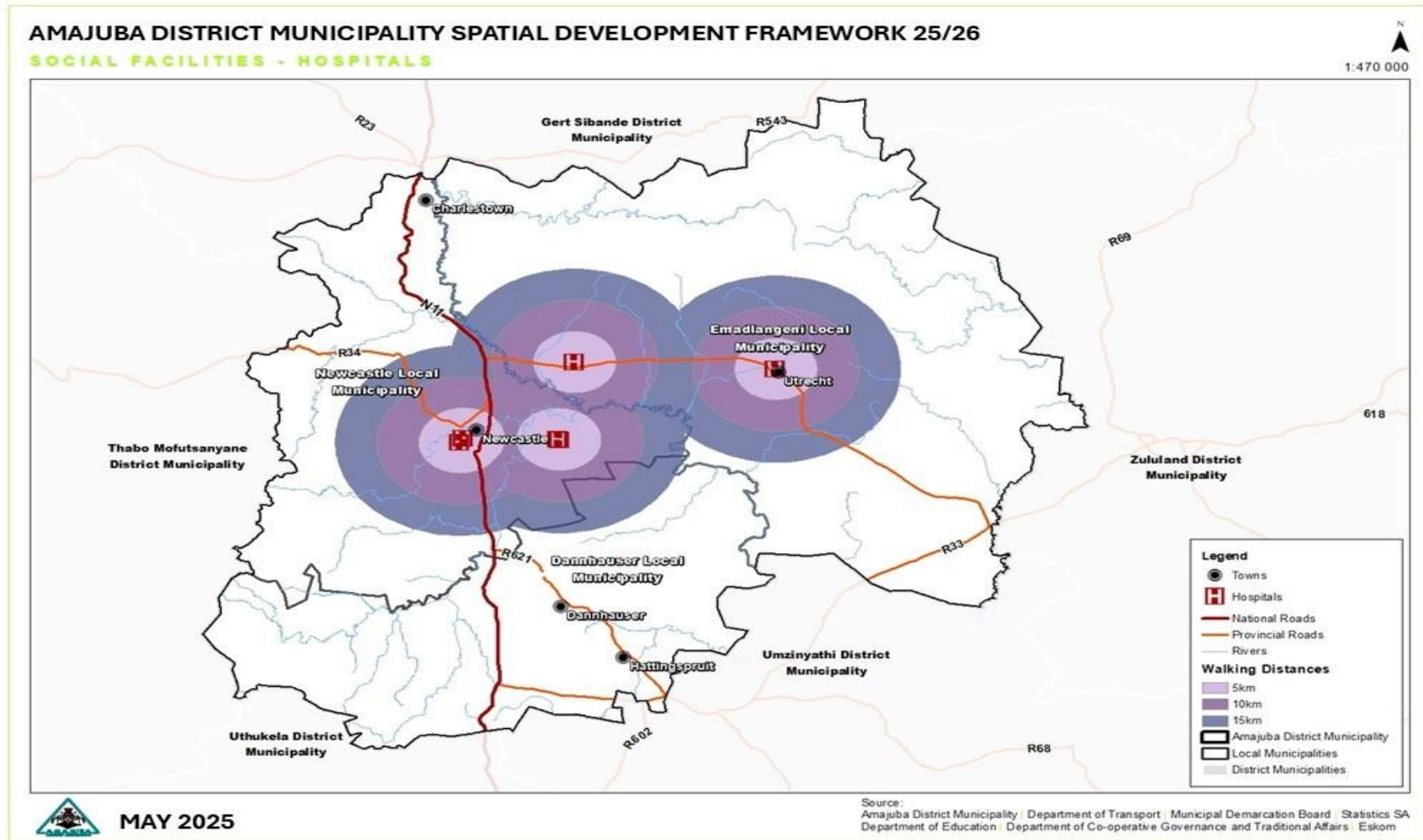
The analysis of the social determinants of health is a critical exercise in district health planning, in that it provides an indication of the burden of non-health factors on the provision of health services. Key factors that are considered consist of, but not limited, to the following:

- Unemployment rate;
- Percentage of population living below the poverty line per month;
- Number of households with access to portable water;
- Number of households in informal dwellings;
- Number of households in traditional structures;
- Number of households with access to electricity; and
- Adult literacy rate.

The social determinants of health listed above seem not to be major contributors to the overall district disease profile. Numerous factors converge to contribute to the poor health outcomes in the ADM. Amongst others are the phenomena of migrant labourers; poor health lifestyle and behaviour patterns (i.e. substance abuse, lack of physical fitness and dietary patterns); and environmental conditions.

## Hospitals

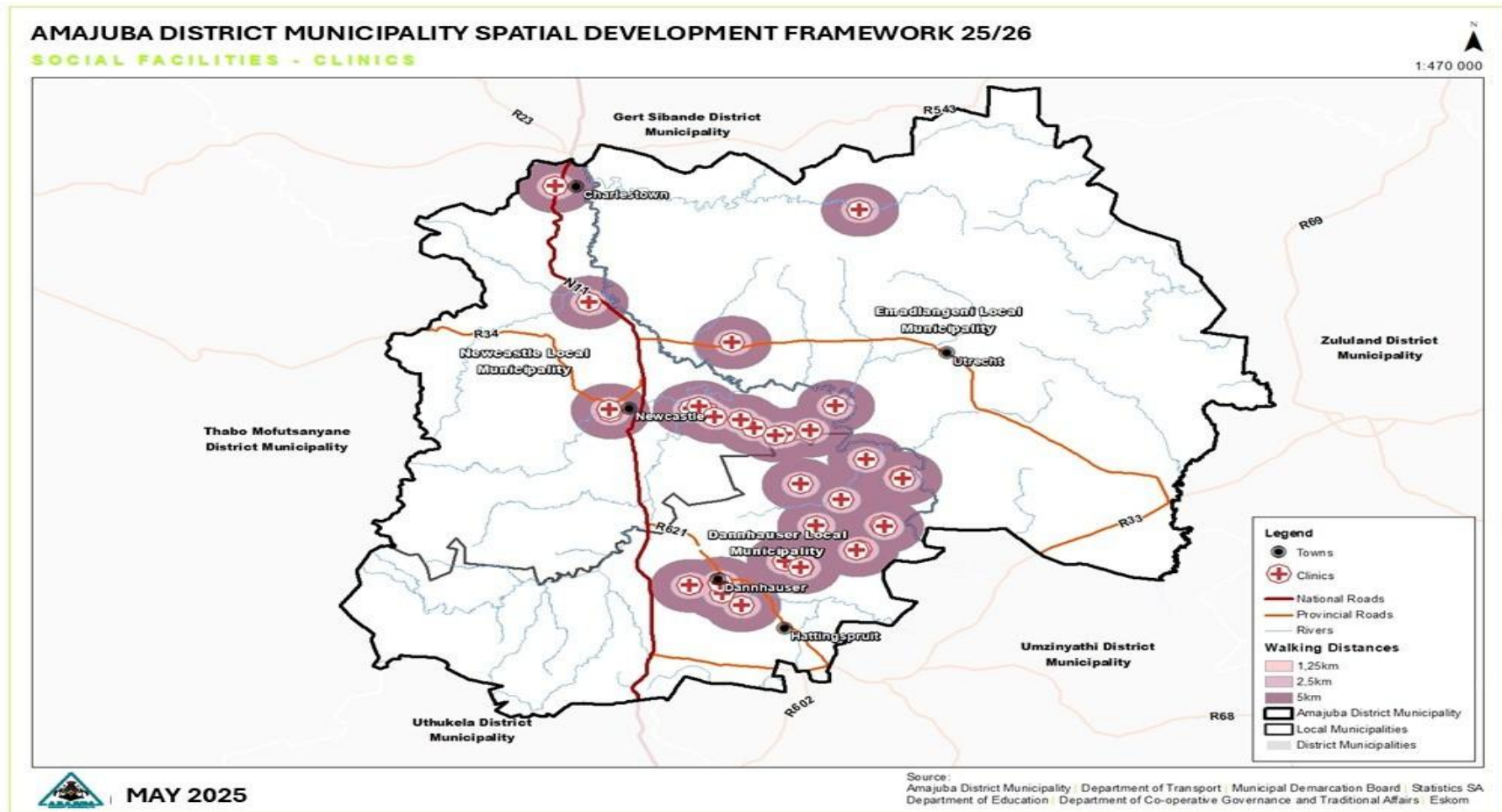
The District has 4 hospitals



PLAN 12: Hospitals

## Clinics

The district has 22 permanent clinics and 48 mobile clinics.

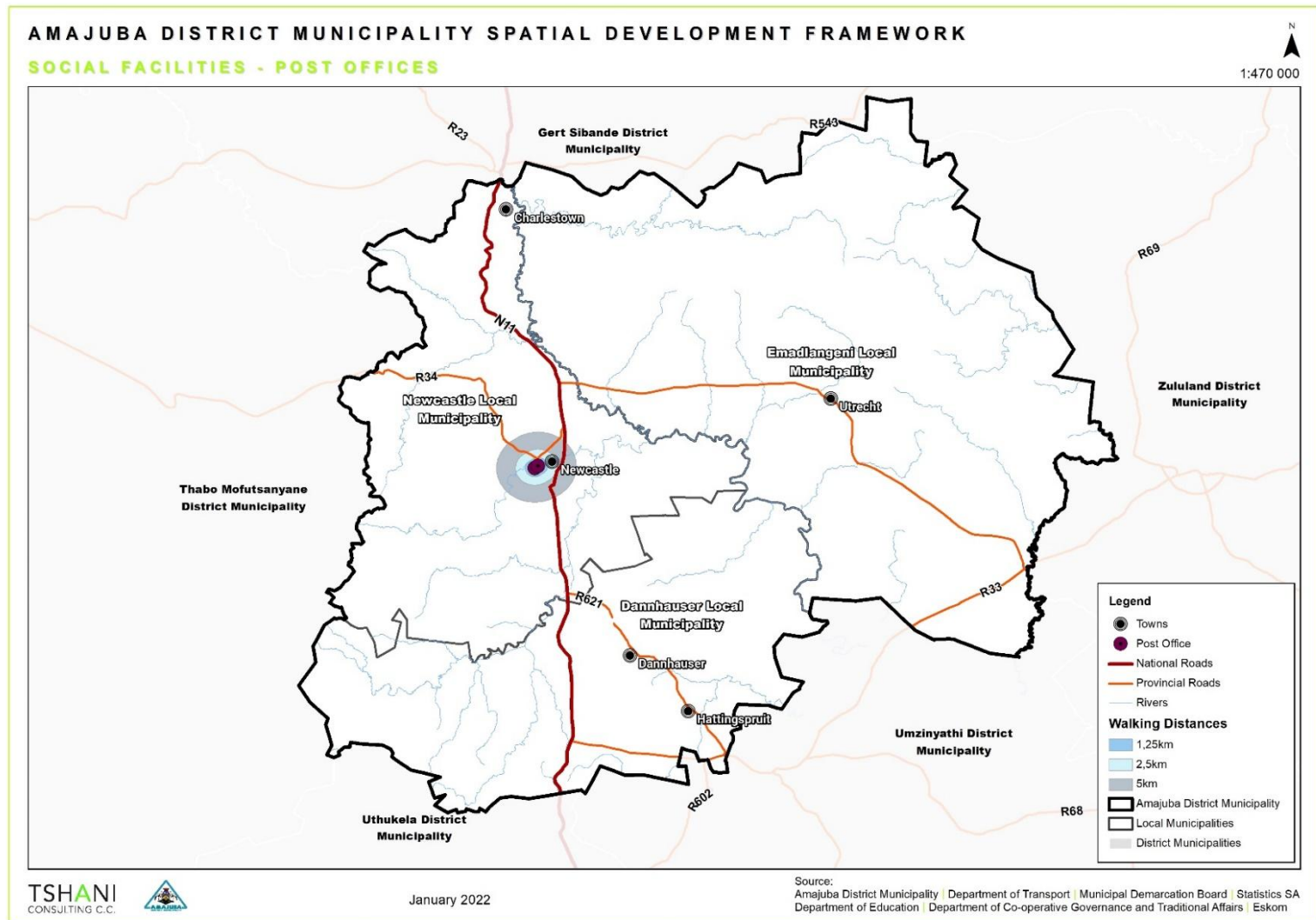


PLAN 13: Clinics

## Post Offices

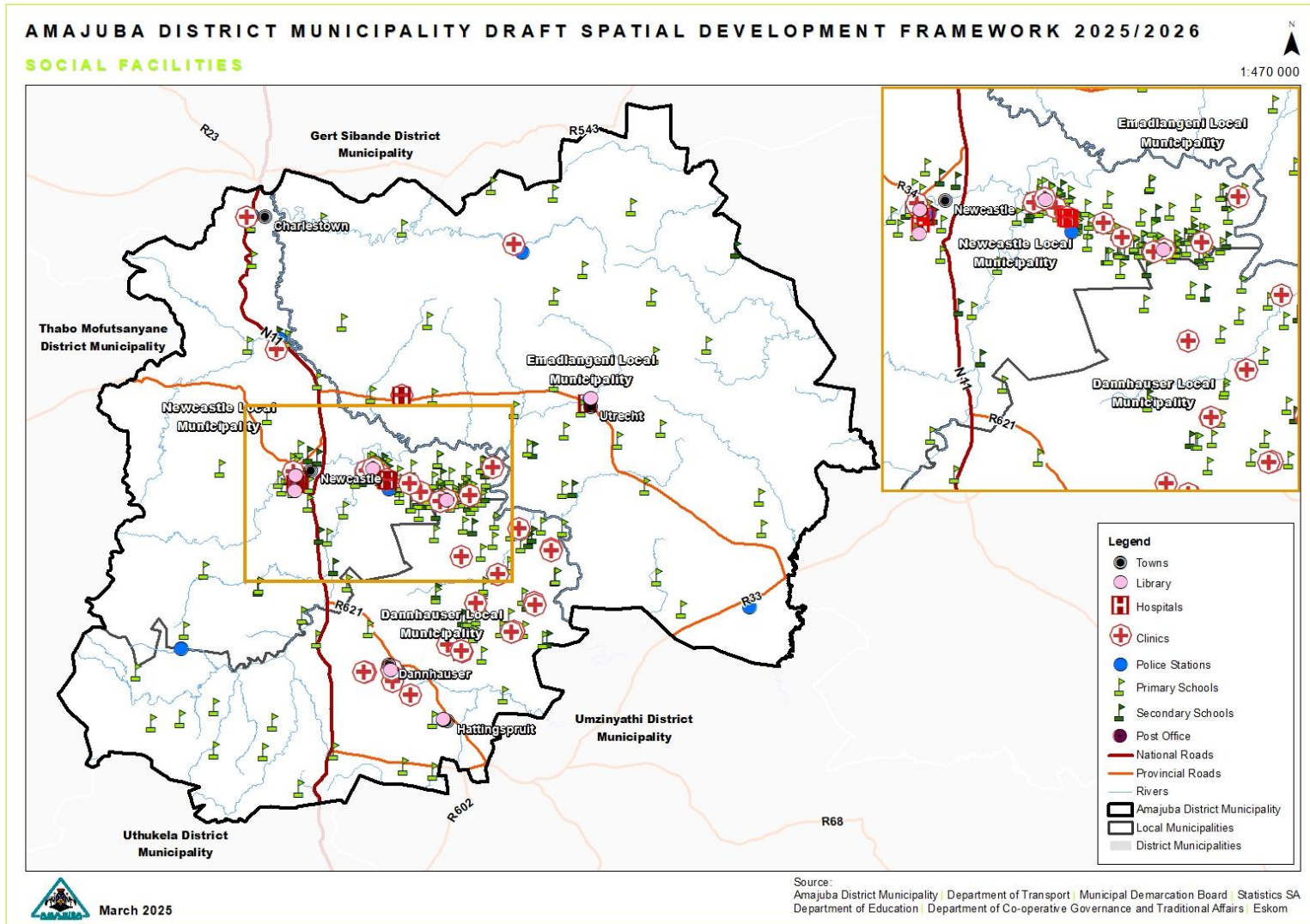
In terms of the Human Settlement Planning and Design (CSIR Guidelines), an 5km to 10km radius is deemed to be the recommended walking distance to a Post Office. The CSIR Guidelines also indicate that a Post Office is to serve a population of approximately 10 000 to 20 000 people

The district has 6 Post offices.



PLAN 14: Post Offices

## Overall Social Facilities



PLAN 15: Overall Social Facilities

## 2.F. 4 Tourism

Tourism has become one of the focus areas of growth and development in Amajuba District. Tourism within the district has grown over the past years, which is justified by the growing number of accommodation facilities and activities offered within the region. These facilities include eco-tourism (hiking, birding, etc); natural, cultural and historical attractions (battlefields, nature reserves, etc); arts and crafts; events and festivals; adventure sports; as well as hunting and fishing.

The spending on tourism in Amajuba showed a decreasing trend from 2009 to 2018. In 2012 and 2013 for example, the total tourism spend as a percentage of GDP in Amajuba stood at 3.9% to 3% of GDP in 2018. The reason for the decline is that GDP is increasing at a much faster pace than the corresponding increase in tourism.

Major tourist attractions in Amajuba include avi-tourism/birding tourism; nature and game reserves; adventure and sports tourism; and natural, cultural and historical attractions (e.g. Battlefields). These attractions present a clear opportunity for the district to position itself to take advantage of this sector.

The District has a large number of accommodation facilities, which range from lodges, to B&B's, to self-catering facilities and hotels. However, most of these facilities are located within Newcastle, with only a limited number of facilities within the Emadlangeni and Dannhauser Municipalities.

Amajuba hosts a number of tourist destinations, including the;

- Utrecht Balele Game Park,
- the Isandlwana battlefields,

- the Talana Museum,
- Adventure trails
- Chelmsford Public Resort Nature Reserve
- Bivane Adisally Waterfall
- Ncandu falls

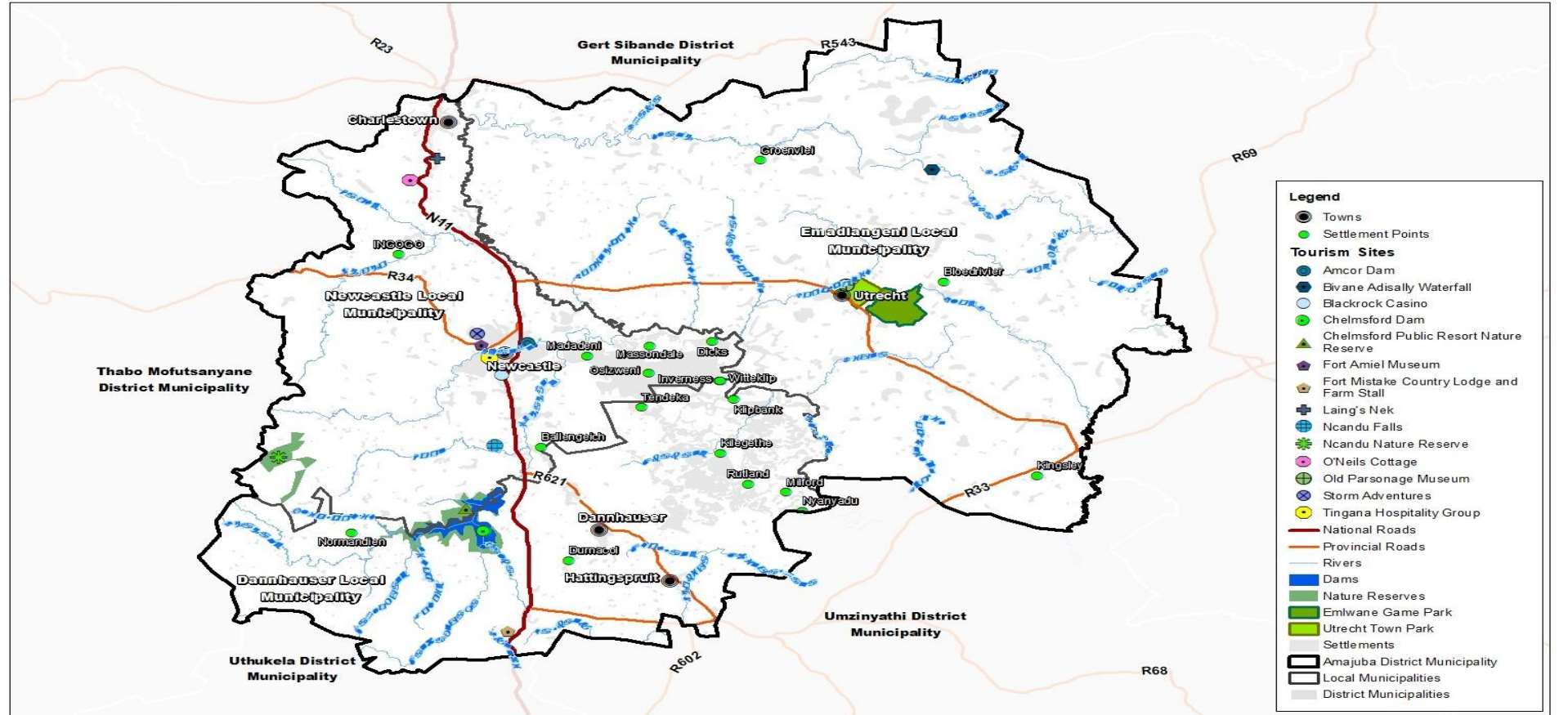
Some of the challenges faced by the sector include:

- The District has no tourism strategy;
- Fewer visitors as a result of lockdown due to Covid 19
- Historical association of the District as a mining and industrial centre;
- Lack of coordinated promotion of the region and attractions offered;
- Run-down and lack of tourism facilities;
- No specific draw-card attraction to make the District a priority for tourists;
- Lack of sufficient signage along the N3 and also within the District to promote tourism facilities and attractions; and
- Loss of tourists to larger tourist attractions such as the Durban beachfront, Drakensberg Mountains, and the north and south coast.

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

TOURISM AND HOSPITALITY PLAN

1:470 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 16: Tourism and Hospitality

## 2.G. BUILT ENVIRONMENT ANALYSIS

The following section unpacks the Built Environment Analysis which aims to assess the function, shape and configuration of buildings as well as their relationship to streets and open spaces. The Built Form Framework defines an overall structure for guiding the order and hierarchy of the future built quality and character of central area or main business and commercial area of a town or city, as shaped by the use, design, massing, scale and type of buildings.

Built Environment:

**“The man-made surroundings that provide the setting for human activity, ranging in scale from buildings and parks or green space to neighbourhoods and cities that can often include their supporting infrastructure**

The assessments looks at the aspects of settlements, Land Uses, Linkages, movement and transportation, electricity etc.

### 2.G. 1 Settlements

The 1976 Vancouver Declaration, defined Human Settlements as:

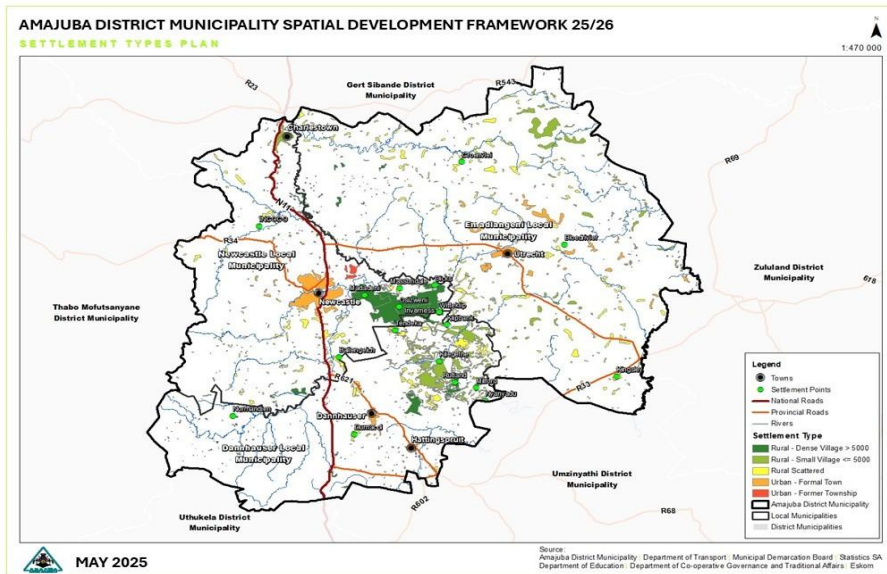
“The totality of the human community - whether city, town or village - with all the social, material, organizational, spiritual and cultural elements that sustain it”

Over the years, this concept of human settlements has been broadened to become a framework for an overall national socio-economic development in the context of formulating housing strategies. It is now contended that human settlements are the spatial dimension as well as the physical expression of economic and social activity. No creative act takes place without being influenced by settlement conditions. In turn, the creation of workable human settlements inevitably becomes an objective of, an indicator of and a prerequisite for social and economic development. Settlements are an objective of development in that place where people can live, learn and work in conditions of safety, comfort and efficiency are a fundamental and elementary need.

Settlements are also an indicator, in that they are the most visible expression of a society's ability to satisfy some of the fundamental needs of its members: they can mark accomplishments as well as expose destitution, neglect and inequality. Finally, settlements are a prerequisite for social and economic development, in that no social progress for sustainable economic growth can occur without efficient settlements systems and settlement networks. (<https://www.virtualstatisticalsystem.org> – 06/09/2016)

The term “settlement” clearly refers to the physical locale where people stay and perform socio-economic functions. (Tringham, 1972; Hagget et al, 1977; Nagle, 2000).

Settlements are therefore given meaning by three interrelated concepts namely, (i) functions, (ii) the population sustaining itself from functions and (iii) morphology or the physical manifestation of the population sustaining itself from functions in a particular locale. The ADM is predominantly rural, and majority of the land is dominated by extensive commercial farmlands.



PLAN 17: Settlement Types

### Urban Settlements

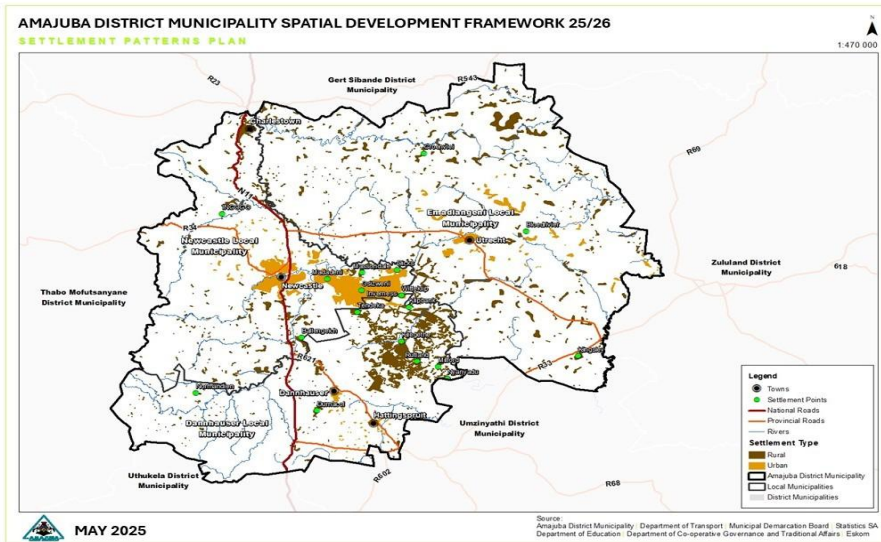
The urban settlements include the Newcastle urban complex, small towns (within Emadlangeni and Dannhauser) with an agglomeration and variety of social and economic uses. Newcastle is the third-largest urban centre in KwaZulu-Natal and is categorised as a secondary city and is located a few kilometres south of the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng Province borders, in the foothills of the Drakensberg.

### Rural Settlements

The Rural Settlements primarily includes rural villages with social facilities, subsistence agriculture but limited economic uses. Dannhauser functions as a small rural service centre (providing commercial and service facilities, and agricultural industries and services). Hattingspruit is also characterized by urban decay thus being classified as a small rural town.

The town of Dannhauser is located midway between Durban and Johannesburg on the main railway line, about 8km off the national road between the two cities. It is surrounded by some of the largest coal-producing mines in KwaZulu-Natal. In addition, there are numerous rivers flowing through the Dannhauser municipal area.

The Emadlangeni Municipality is located 52km east of Newcastle and 68km west of Vryheid on the R34, bordering with the Mpumalanga Province in the north. The municipality is characterized by the following economic sectors; Agriculture, Industrial and Tourism.



PLAN 18: Settlement Patterns

### Spatial Analysis: Patterns and Trends

As mentioned prior in the document, Manufacturing, community services, financial and business services, and trade are the main economic drivers in the district. Furthermore, the district is characterized by high percentage of economically inactive people, housing backlog and land shortages. The land scarcity is also one of the major factors hampering development within the district. Much of the land is privately owned.

#### Newcastle Local Municipality

The settlement pattern in NLM has largely followed access routes thus forming an economic system with definite interdependencies between and among

various elements. However, it has also been highly influenced by the past apartheid planning and segregationist policies. The current settlement pattern reflects a continuum of settlements from a highly urban Newcastle town through to peri-urban settlements in the JBC and extensive commercial farmlands with small, isolated farm-dweller settlements.

Newcastle CBD is currently going through a process of spatial transformation. This involves three main processes, namely:-

- Decentralisation of commercial and office space;
- Redevelopment; and
- Expansion of the town area.

#### Emadlangeni Local Municipality

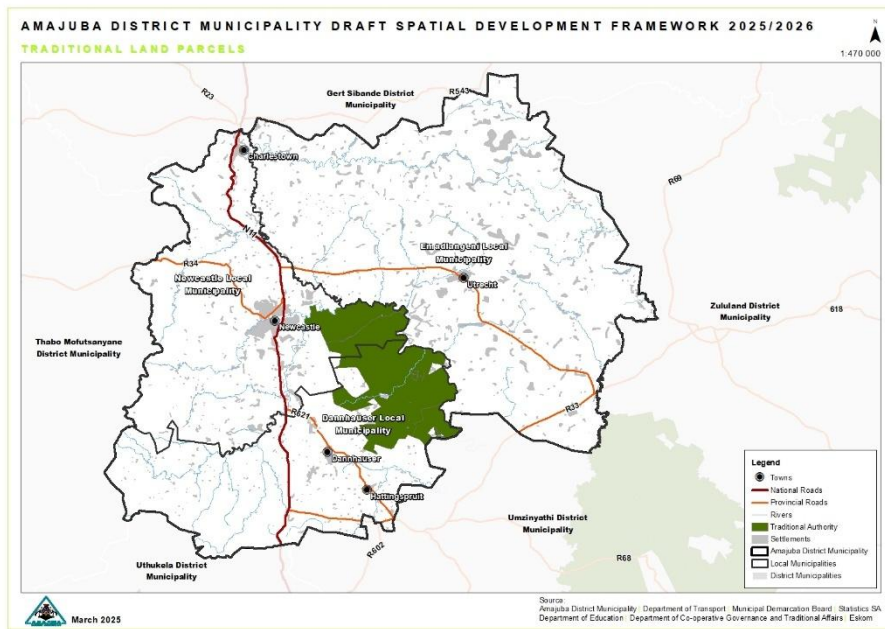
Emadlangeni is predominantly rural. Settlements range from urban, semi-urban to rural settlements. Rural settlements cover expansive tracts of land within the municipality. Urban settlements account for a smaller portion of the municipality while the majority of the municipality is covered by rural settlements.

#### Dannhauser Local Municipality

Dannhauser Town (incorporating Durnacol) is the main urban area within the municipality, with a sphere of influence that expansive to various intra-municipal rural settlements such as Kwamdakane, Nyanyadu and Ubuhlebomzinyathi.

## Traditional Authorities Areas

There are two tribal councils within Amajuba which are Ubuhle-Bomzinyathi and Nyanyadu Tribal Council Areas. The day-to-day management of this land is the responsibility of the traditional council under the leadership of the tribal chiefs concerned, but the administration and long-term leasing of these land parcels is the responsibility of the Ingonyama Trust Board.



PLAN 19: Traditional Land Parcels

## 2.G. 2 Land Uses

Most parts of Amajuba District Municipality are farmlands which are managed in terms of the Agricultural Act 70 of 1970. The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, Act No 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA), requires all municipalities in the province to develop and introduce wall-to-wall Land Use Schemes throughout their area of jurisdiction. In the case of land that is under Ingonyama Trust there are additional local structures that have the influence in terms of land allocation. These include tribal chief, their headman and sub-headmen.

The current land use pattern has evolved in response to the economic trends, settlement pattern, rural character of the district, applicable planning policies and land use management practices i.e. formal and customary.

The broad category of land uses that exist within Amajuba are:

- Urban Settlements
- Rural Settlements
- Commercial Agriculture
- Conservation Areas

The table following aims to illustrate all the different Major land uses that exist within Amajuba through ownership classification.

Table 10: Land Ownership

Ownership Classification	Area (Ha)
Agricultural	1785.7349
Communal	48017.1984
Ecclesiastical	563.5944
Mining	17129.5202
Municipal	15709.5403
Private	543716.5314
Provincial	390.0877
State Land - Unalienated	1779.0321
State Land National	31784.7508
State owned enterprise	1198.7181
Traditional	19725.6324
Unspecified - assumed to be unregistered	14025.0133
<b>Total</b>	<b>695825.354</b>

### 2.G. 3 Linkages

Networking and linkages are an important component of the economy and are a common tool used for development focusing on the mobility of people, goods and information. High density transport infrastructure and highly connected networks are commonly associated with high levels of development.

Amajuba is administratively located within KwaZulu-Natal; however, it is geographically positioned within space economy of four provinces which are Free-State, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng. The position of the Amajuba District Municipality in the regional space economy is tightly interlinked with these four provinces since the area have strong functional linkages.

The following economic trading hubs are identified to have the following linkages to the district. Newcastle was used as the point of reference.

Table 11: Linkages

LINKAGE TO:	DISTANCE	ROAD NETWORK
Harrismith	154 km	R34 and R772
Ermelo	156 km	N11
Pietermaritzburg	267 km	N11 and N3

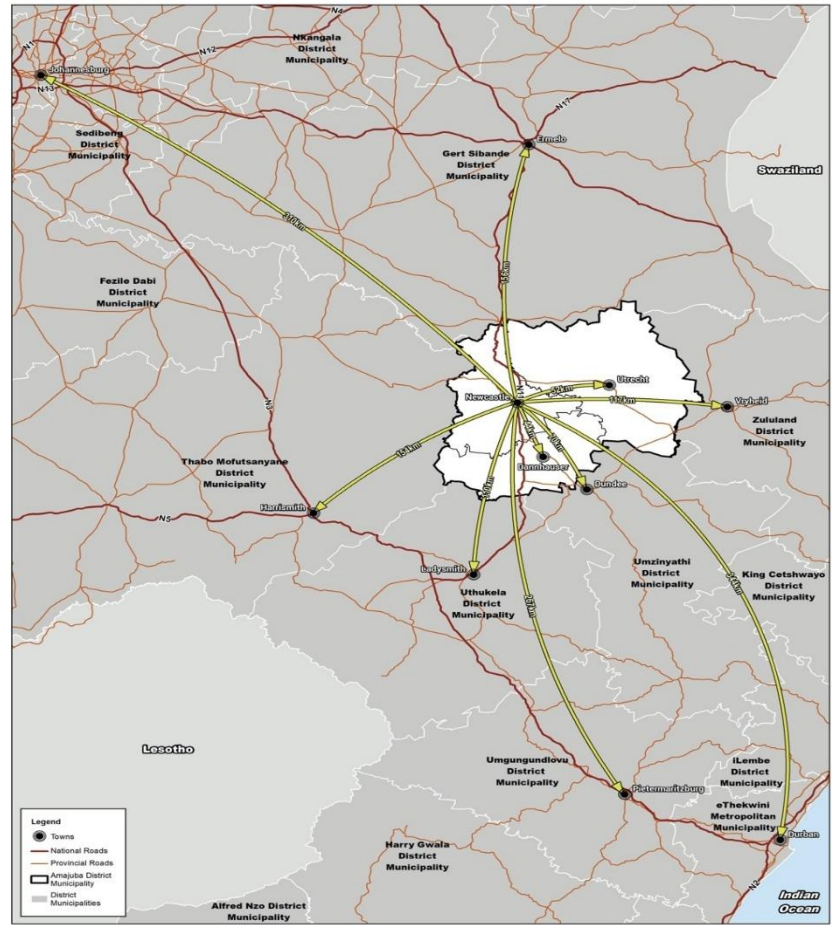
Johannesburg	310 km	R34 and N3
Durban	344 km	N11 and N3

The N11 has been identified to be the primary mobility road. The provincial route R621 (P35-2) from Hattingspruit to Dannhauser and then unto N11 (to Newcastle) provides good linkages within the district. Amajuba DM and Umzinyathi DM share the R621 route which links the town of Dannhauser to the N11 (and onto Newcastle) to the north and Dundee and Glencore (and onto the R33 main road).

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

LINKAGES PLAN

1:1 325 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA  
 Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

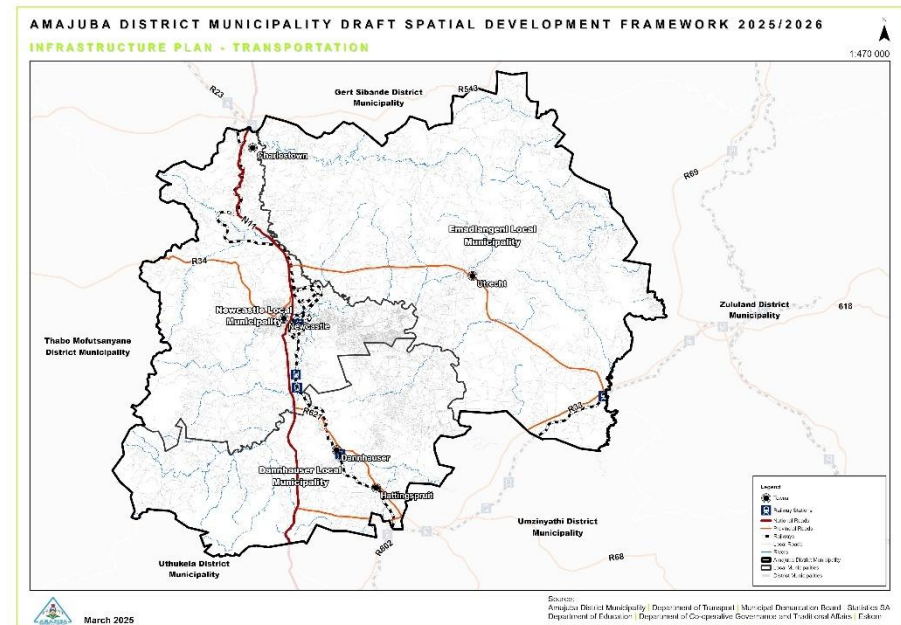
PLAN 20: Linkages Plan

## 2.G. 4 Transportation

Transportation and access to nodal points and places of employment is one of the most important issues in Land Use Planning. A transport system serves to bind the urban and rural fabric together. Traveling issues could be measured in time and distance. The most popular measurement is walking distance which becomes applicable in the planning of urban settlements. Any distance beyond a reasonable walking distance would make the consumer dependant on other forms of transport such as road or railway. The plan below indicates the road network in the Amajuba District Municipality.

The main transportation routes linking the district to its surroundings includes the N11 which is the alternative route to Johannesburg from Durban, and the rail line which is the main line from the Durban harbour to Gauteng.

The R34 also bisects the district in an east-west direction and provides a linkage from the port city of Richards Bay to the interior. The P483 provincial road forms the major access road from Newcastle to Madadeni, Osizweni and Utrecht all located to the east of Newcastle.



PLAN 21: Transportation

## 2.G. 5 Housing

Achieving sustainable human settlements is one of the main spatial goals within an area such as Amajuba District which is characterised by settlement pattern that has encounter a high level of disintegration and fragmentation. An opportunity still exists to turn the situation around through facilitating and promoting the evolution of these discrete pockets of settlements into sustainable, integrated human settlements clusters. This is bearing in mind the fact that settlements are not static, they respond to change and are continuously in the process of transformation. Housing takes into cognisance

the densified areas and the rate at which they are being densified. This assists in planning for the future looking at the current growth projections.

Alongside is the current municipal housing backlogs as per the ADM SDF 2023/2024 review. There are housing projects in the districts that are associated with the KZN Department of Human Settlements as a way to fight the housing backlog.

The Housing backlogs that have been identified from Amajuba District include those places that have Traditional Dwellings which are houses built in the rural villages using traditional Matter, Informal Dwellings which include shacks in the backyards some used for renting purposes some built due to lack of funds for formal houses and lastly informal dwellings which include those informal settlements built on informal areas

Table 12: Housing Backlog

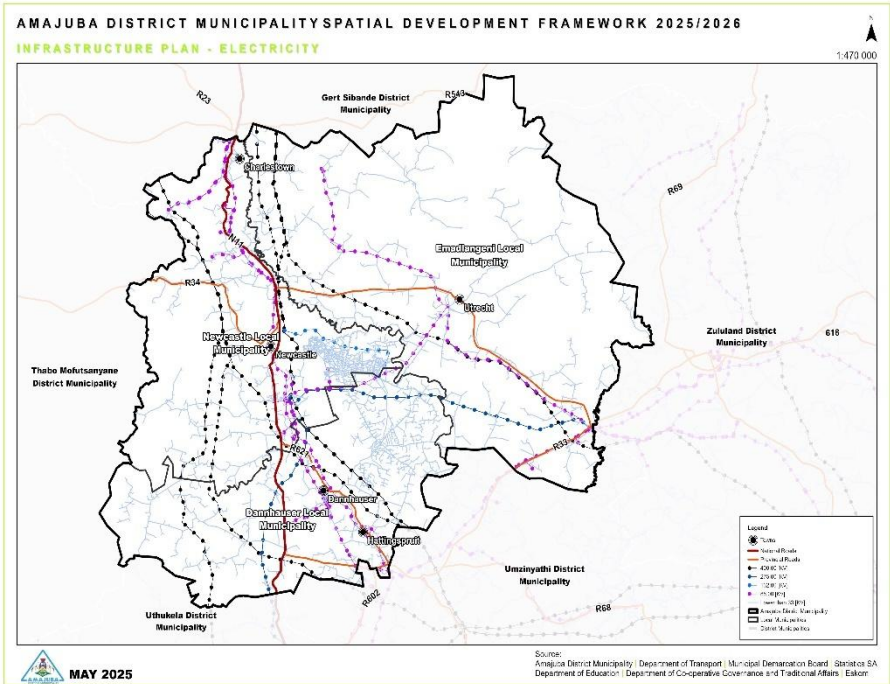
AMAJUBA DM SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2021/2022

Housing Backlogs	Newcastle LM	Dannhauser LM	eMadlangeni LM	Amajuba DM
Traditional Dwellings (Made of Traditional Matter)	4337	19 996	5 456	29 789
Informal Dwelling/ shack in the backyard	4244	90	-	4334
Informal dwelling/ shack not in backyard (Informal Areas)	14 039	228	57	14 324
<b>Total Backlogs</b>	<b>22 620</b>	<b>20 314</b>	<b>5 513</b>	<b>48 447</b>

Table 15 : Housing Backlogs within Amajuba District and its Local Municipalities.

### 2.G. 6 Electricity

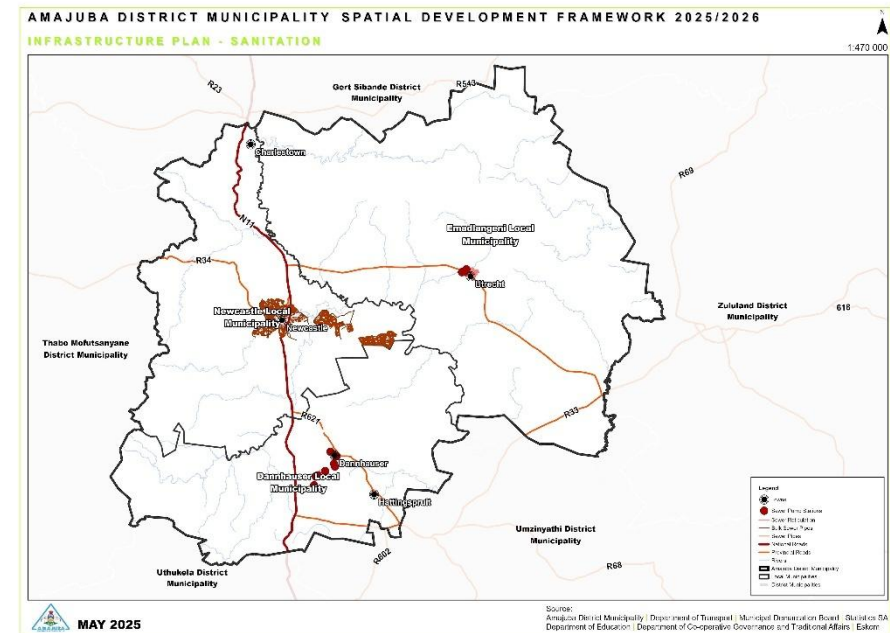
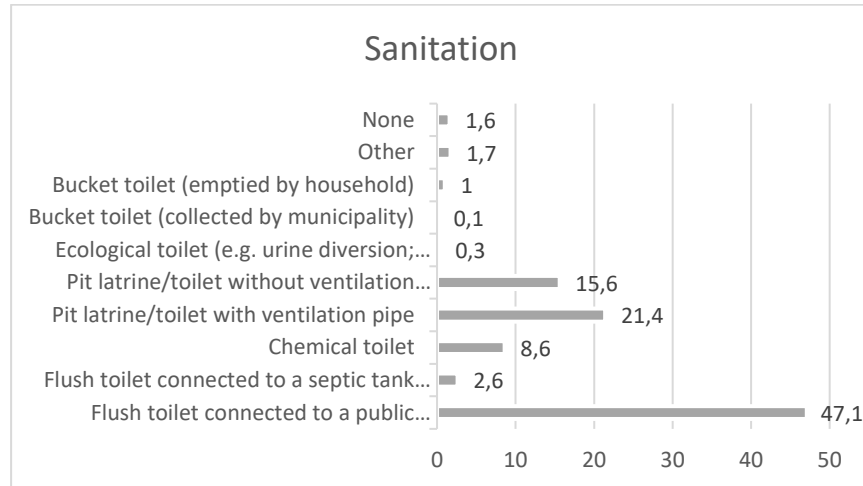
Eskom is the bulk supplier of electricity to Amajuba DM. Newcastle and Emadlangeni LMs possess licenses to supply electricity in certain areas within their LM boundaries. Typically, the CBD and suburbs are supplied by the LM, while outlying townships and rural areas are supplied directly by Eskom.



PLAN 22: Electricity

## 2.G. 7 Sanitation

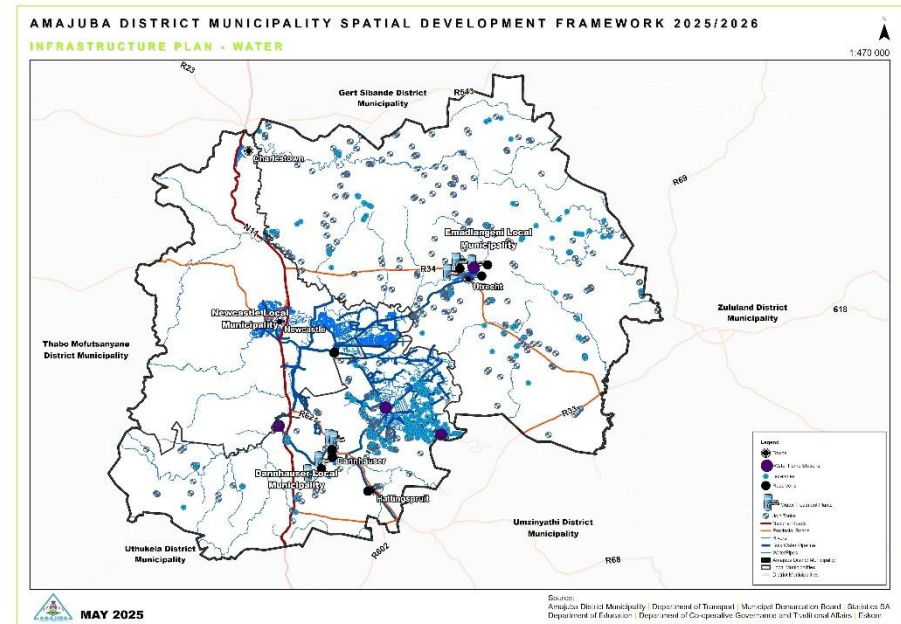
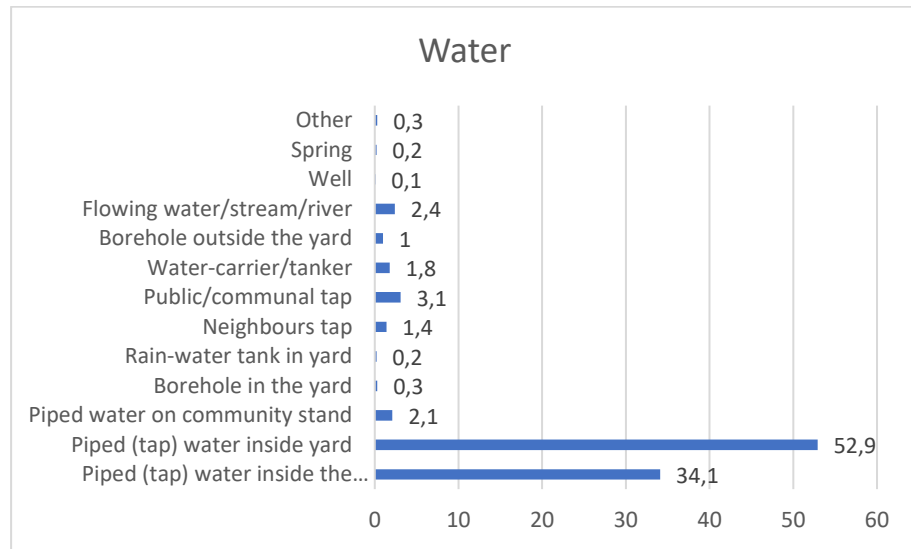
Majority of the population have access to flush toilets that are connected to the municipal sewer.



PLAN 23: Sanitation

## 2.G. 8 Water

uThukela water is the primary bulk water service provider to Amajuba District. Responsibility for distribution then rests with the two water services authorities in the District – The Amajuba District Municipality WSA services Emadlangeni and Dannhauser LMs and Newcastle LM WSA is responsible for servicing its own municipal area. According to the 2016 Community Survey, majority of the population has piped water inside the house or inside the yard.



PLAN 24: Water

## 2.H. BIO – PHYSICAL ANALYSIS

This section of the report will discuss the state of the physical environment within the district jurisdiction. The bio-physical analysis takes cognisance of hydrological features, agriculture, vegetation, biodiversity features, climate change and geology among other factors.

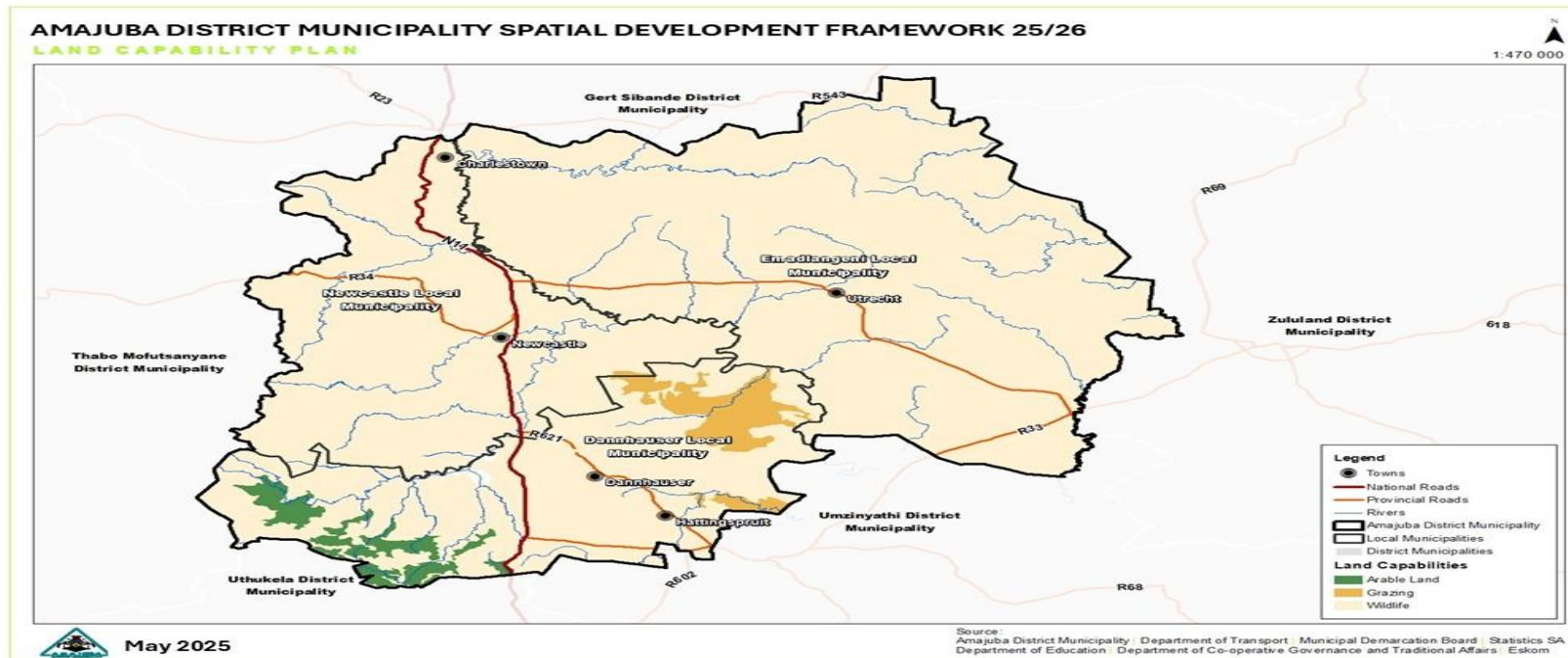
Biophysical:

**“The biotic and abiotic surroundings. The shape, environment character, and configuration of the municipality have an important part to play in influencing the way the people have chosen to reside in the area.”**

## 2.H 1 Land Cover

The broad land use covering the municipal region include:

- Rural Settlements
  - Commercial Agriculture
  - Plantations
  - Forests
  - Grasslands
- Below is the land capability Map indicating the areas of Arable land, land for grazing and for wildlife.



PLAN 1: Land Capability Plan

## 2.H 2 Vegetation and Forestry

The vegetation of the Amajuba District Municipality is influenced by climatic conditions, soil and other biological factors. It therefore forms the basis for land and conservation planning. The vegetation type within the Municipality varies significantly but is dominated mainly by six vegetation types. These include:

- Northern KwaZulu Natal Moist Grassland,
- Northern Zululand Sourveld
- KwaZulu-Natal Highland Thornveld,
- Income Sandy Grassland
- Glencoe Moist Grassland
- Low Escarpment Moist Grassland

The vegetation type within the boundary of the Dannhauser Municipality varies significantly but dominated mainly by five vegetation types. These include the Income Sandy Grassland located at the northeastern corner of the site, covering the towns of Nyanyadu through Kilgethe to Inverness, the Glencoe Moist Grassland, located to the eastern side of the N11 around the towns of Hattingspruit to Gedule, to Durnacol and to the southern portion of Milnerdale. Another significant vegetation type in the area is the Northern KwaZulu-Natal Moist Grassland.

Other vegetation types include the KwaZulu-Natal Highland Thornville, which covers the mid northern section of the area, north-west of Milnerdale, and the Low Escarpment Moist Grassland, which covers the western

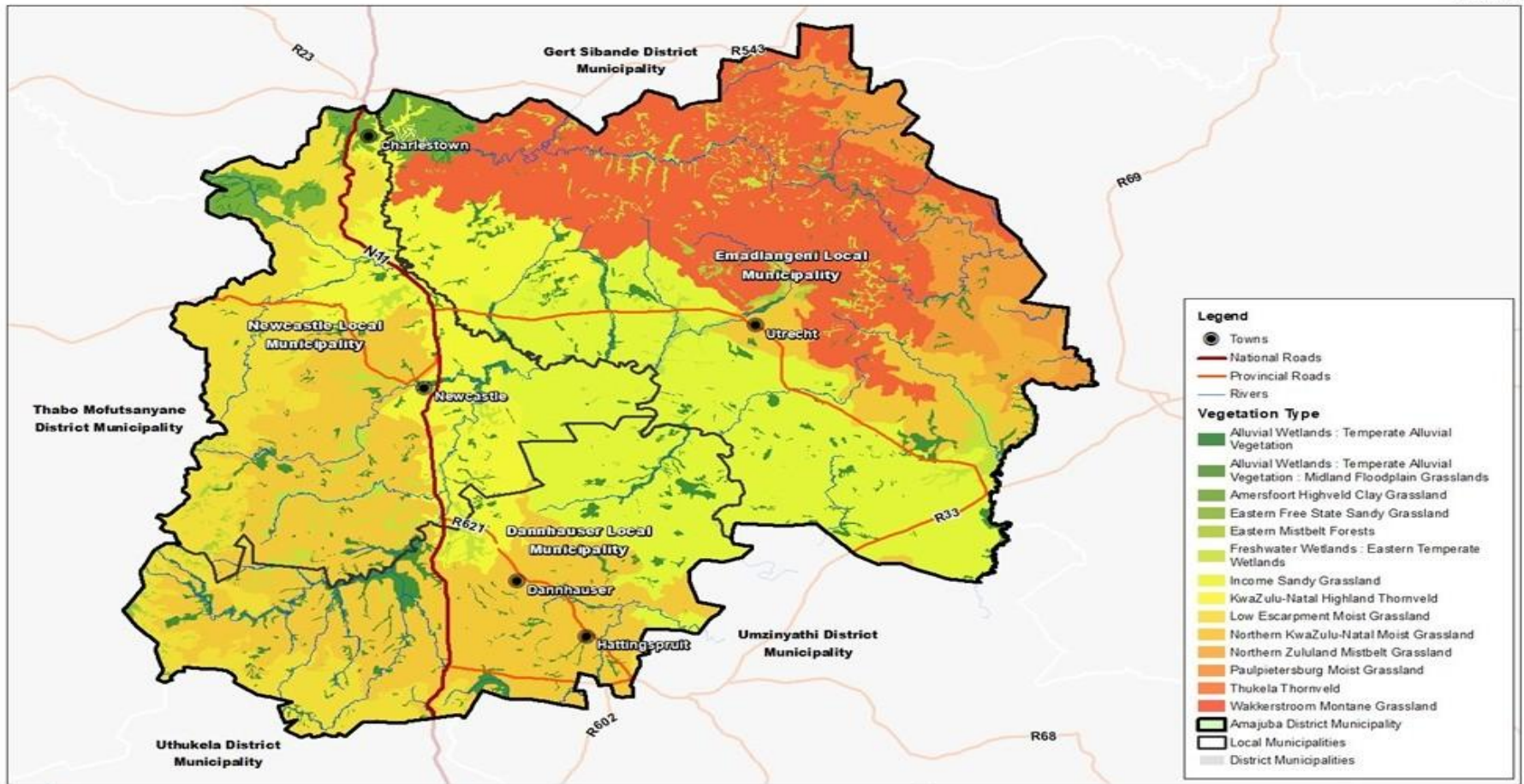
outskirts of the site and a small portion along the southern border close to the N11 (Source: Draft District Rural Development Plan, 2016).

Forests are defined as a closed-canopy assemblage of woody tree species greater than 5 m in height (Midgley, et al., 1997). Forests in the Amajuba District are small and unlikely to be able to maintain a high level of resource removal, be it controlled or uncontrolled, sustainably. Forest resources are generally considered to be in poor condition and lack an active management plan or strategy. More recently traditional ownership and land claims have become important issues that require careful negotiation, and accurate information to prevent resource degradation as a result of misunderstandings between groups.

# AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 25/26

## VEGETATION PLAN

1:470 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 26: Vegetation

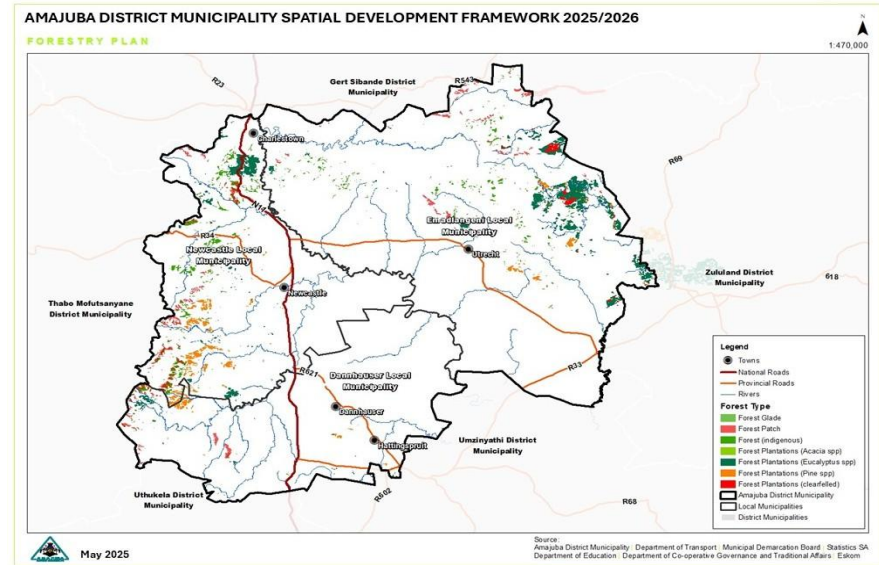
## 2.H. 3 Critical Biodiversity Areas

A Critical Biodiversity Area (CBA) is a natural / pristine or semi-natural feature, habitat or landscape that stretches across the terrestrial, aquatic and marine environments that is considered critical for:

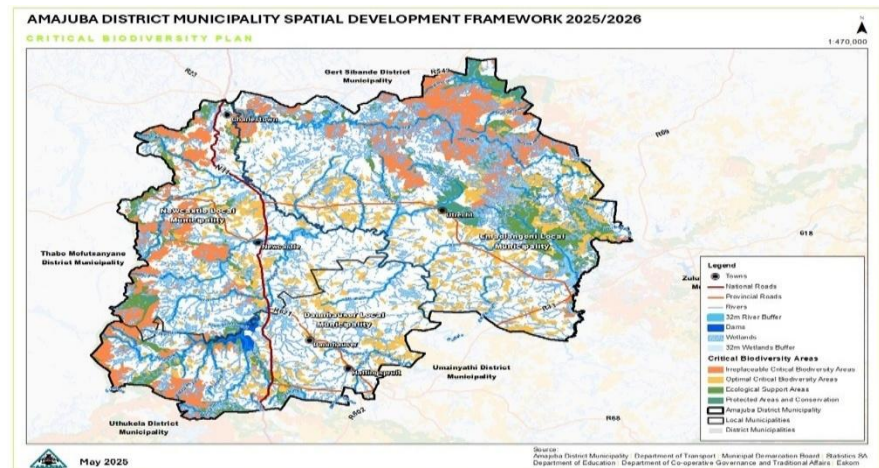
- Meeting national and provincial biodiversity targets and thresholds.
- Assists in safeguarding certain areas in the landscape that are required to ensure the persistence and functioning of species, ecosystems as well as the delivery of ecosystem goods and services
- Preserving habitats that are important for biodiversity or rare species

Large natural areas, which covers the majority of the municipal area, are more likely to remain intact with lower influences of “edge-effects” from adjacent land uses. Intact areas will support ecosystem processes and functionality, which in turn improves biodiversity conservation.

Conversely, land use transformation and impacts from anthropogenic influences increase the probability of “edge effects” on important biodiversity areas.



PLAN 28: Forestry

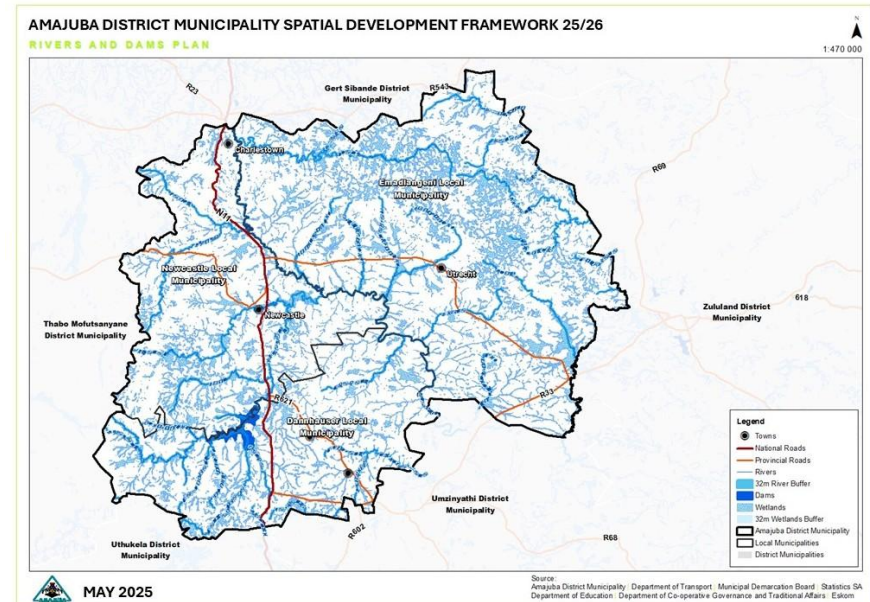


PLAN 27: Critical Bio-diversity Plan

## 2.H. 4 Rivers

The Amajuba District Municipality has five rivers namely Buffalo, Ncandu, Ngagane, Uthukela Uphongolo. The rivers within the municipal's jurisdiction are the main water sources for domestic water supply and agricultural activities. The Buffalo River is the major system in the Amajuba District, draining in to the UThukela River. The Ncandu and Ngagane rivers are the main tributaries in the district. The Ngagane River catchment is said to have fairly good quality water, however pollution problems have been cited such as high salinity and metal salts caused by mining and industries. The district has an extensive system of rivers and tributaries, with those in the Emadlangeni Municipality forming the headwaters of the Uphongolo River.

Freshwater Ecosystem Priority Areas (FEPA) are important water resource and aquatic ecosystems areas that need protection for promoting sustainable water resource use and achieving the freshwater ecosystem goals of the country. The National Water Act (1998) recognises that water is a scarce resource and that there is a need for the integrated management of all aspects of water resources. The National FEPA project aims to achieve such integration with the National Environmental Management Biodiversity Act (2004). The implementation of the measures in this Act must be improved in the area, specifically in respect of the protection, conservation, and sustainable use of the water resource assets in the ADM. The biggest threat in the area is the potential pollution of freshwater sources (surface and groundwater) through decanting of mines (dysfunctional and active).



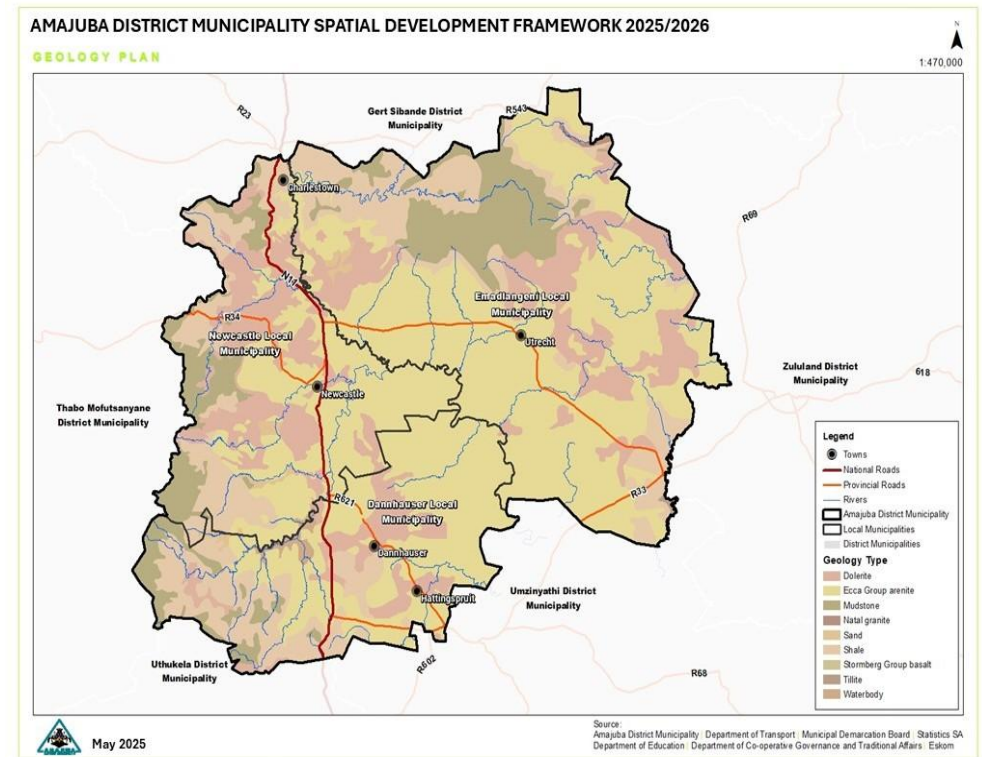
PLAN 29: Rivers and Dams

## 2.H. 5 Topography and Geology

The geology in the ADM consists mainly of shale (with coal in certain instances), mudstones, sandstone and siltstones of the Ecca Group, Karroo Sequence, with intrusive dolerite. In essence this geology has given rise to many of the in-situ characteristics of 56 soils that are found in the district.

Shale is a fine-grained, clastic sedimentary rock composed of mud that is a mix of flakes of clay minerals and tiny fragments (silt-sized particles) of other minerals, especially quartz and calcite. The ratio of clay to other minerals is variable. In geohydrology, the Ecca group is known for its high yielding capacity. Shale is characterized by breaks along thin laminae or parallel layering or bedding less than one centimetre in thickness, called fissility.

Shales are typically composed of variable amounts of clay minerals and quartz grains and the typical colour is grey. Addition of variable amounts of minor constituents alters the colour of the rock. Dolerite is also widely distributed into both groups of sediments. Although the dolerites occur over large areas, there are usually underlain by shale even on what appears to be dolerite ridges. This also implies that these tend to be very narrow, and shale is the most predominant parent material. There are poorly drained soils that occur on older alluvial.



PLAN 30: Geology

## 2.H. 6 Climate Change

Amajuba District Municipality recognises climate change as a threat to the environment, its residents, and to future development. Therefore, measures should be implemented to reduce or eliminate carbon emissions or enhance greenhouse gas sinks (mitigation) (Böckmann, M 2015).

However, due to lag times in the climate and biophysical systems, the positive impacts of past and current mitigation will only be noticeable in the next 25 years (Jiri, O 2016). In the meanwhile, adaptation is regarded as inevitable and a necessary response to the changes that are projected to take place in the district.

The Climate Change Response Strategy, 2018 identifies the steps involved in a Vulnerability Assessment. These are as follows:

- Step 1: Identify indicators of potential impacts.
- Step 2: Assess whether the impact will take place (exposure).
- Step 3: Assess how important the risk is (sensitivity).
- Step 4: Assess if you can respond to the risk (adaptive capacity).

Amajuba District Municipality climatic conditions are noticeably between summer and winter months ranging between very cold temperatures during the winter and high summer temperatures. The average temperature for Amajuba is about 17°C. The minimum temperature for Amajuba is below 0°C during winter months and often higher than 30°C in the summer months.

Climate change predictions include the shifting of biomes across South Africa. In the Amajuba District Municipality, it is projected that, with the changes in climate, the Savanna biome will replace large areas of the Grassland biome. Terrestrial, wetland, and river ecosystems and their associated species will be negatively impacted. Furthermore, development and changes in land use will impact negatively on the environment in the district

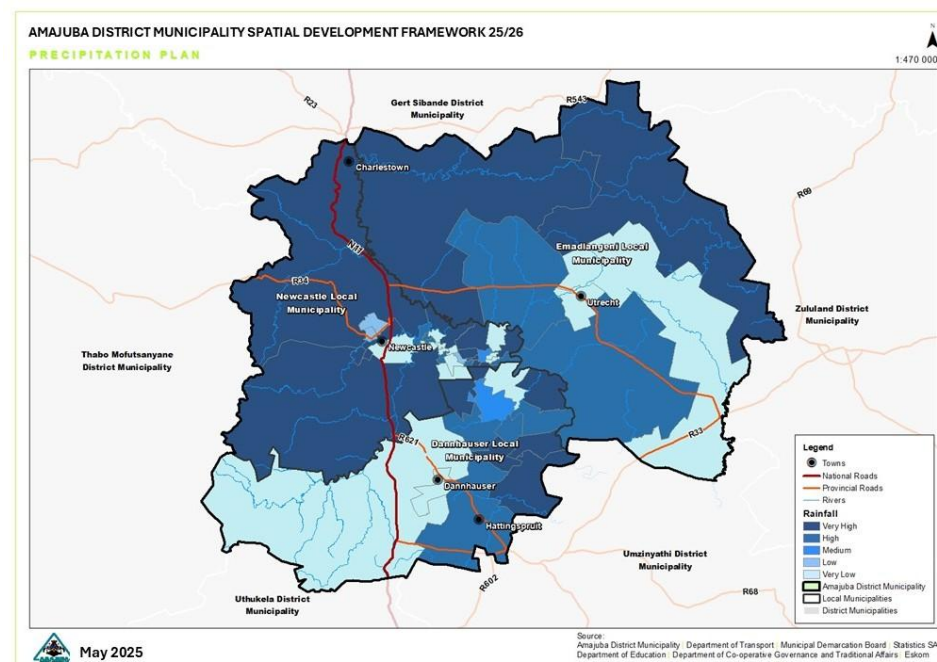
The average annual rainfall for Amajuba is consistent throughout the district with no major difference between the local municipalities. The average rainfall for Amajuba is between 650mm and 1 000mm per year. Annual precipitation ranges from 620 to 1 265mm per annum. Rainfall is highest in the eastern escarpment areas of the Drakensberg and generally decreases towards the east. Annual temperatures are higher in the east and temperature decreases towards the higher lying escarpment areas of the Drakensberg (See Precipitation Plan).

Water resources are the primary medium through which climate change impacts will be felt by South Africans (Schulze et al., 2014). Climate change will affect Amajuba District Municipality's water accessibility, quantity, and quality (Parikh, J 2007). Drought, reduced runoff, increased evaporation, and an increase in flood events will impact on both water quality and quantity.

The Amajuba District Municipality's agricultural sector will be adversely affected by climate change. Increased temperatures, drought, and the increase in frequency and severity of storm events will impact on the crops that can be grown and potentially result in a loss of livestock. Climate

change impacts affect the social and environmental determinants of health and will therefore affect human health in several ways in the Amajuba District Municipality. Projected temperature increases due to climate change will negatively affect the young and elderly population of the district. People working in the informal sector usually work outdoors and are therefore exposed to all weather elements and are particularly vulnerable to temperature increases.

Climate change impacts will affect Disaster Management, Infrastructure and Human Settlements in several ways in Amajuba District Municipality. Increases in the severity of storm events and increase in flooding will damage infrastructure which may result in a loss of industrial productivity and service delivery disruptions. The impacts of storm events will particularly affect communities located in informal settlements, on flood plains and where there is poor drainage infrastructure. In addition, communities in rural areas that depend on subsistence farming may be unable to grow crops that they have grown in the past due to the changing climate. It is predicted that there will therefore be an increase in rates of rural-urban migration. Rural communities may also become more physically isolated due to extreme events impacting on key infrastructure.



PLAN 31: Precipitation Plan

## 2.H. 7 Agriculture

The importance of agriculture cannot be underestimated as an informal rural based activity. When consideration is taken of rural based agriculture, the sector becomes an integral component of the Local Economic Development (LED) landscape, through its ability to provide for community livelihoods, generating employment and fighting endemic poverty in the area.

It is also believed that through the right kinds of investments, the huge potential of the agricultural sector can be better harnessed. These include plans for new dams and associated water supply systems, which can open up opportunities for large-scale commercial irrigation projects. The communal tenure system also results in issues that require creative management approaches, and in this regard, fencing of arable land may bring about improvements. Land claims have affected agriculture production in some areas and a remedy to these challenges will furthermore foster the agriculture-development goals of the Local Municipality.

Limited resources, mainly due to topography limitations and low rainfall, make this area an extensive livestock area with farmers being primarily production of agricultural farming. The above has been further limited by the high input and fuel costs. Irrigated lands or dry lands are utilized for the production of high-quality winter feed for the production of crops mainly for own use.

The entire landscape of the municipality has high potential for agricultural expansion. This can be seen to influence the surrounding local

municipalities to network and attract investments from public and private investments.

### *Agriculture Land Categories*

The purpose of Agriculture land categories classification is to help in the determination of which land parcels should be restricted to agricultural activities and which ones can be subjected to other uses. Agricultural land is classified by The Department of Agriculture into three categories to guide the use of agriculture land. These include the following categories:

- A. Irreplaceable: where land use is limited to only agriculture production only. This may include cropping, keeping of farm infrastructure such as storage facilities and sheds.
- B. Threatened: This category, requires that all effort be made in restricting the land parcels with this classification for mostly agricultural uses. These should be protected from degradation by other uses.
- C. Primary Agriculture land use: Category C land is one that has moderate agricultural potential and may require further efforts in order to a desirable agricultural use. The use of this may include uses in category A and B, such as storage and production infrastructure, with limited agriculture tourism, and research facilities.
- D. Secondary Agricultural land use: these areas mostly those with low agricultural potential and are used primarily for other uses, with agriculture being a secondary land use.

E. Mixed Use: Category E lands are mostly with limited arability potential. These are used for other activities such as grazing of animals, conservation, tourism or development, depending on the demand within h surrounding area.

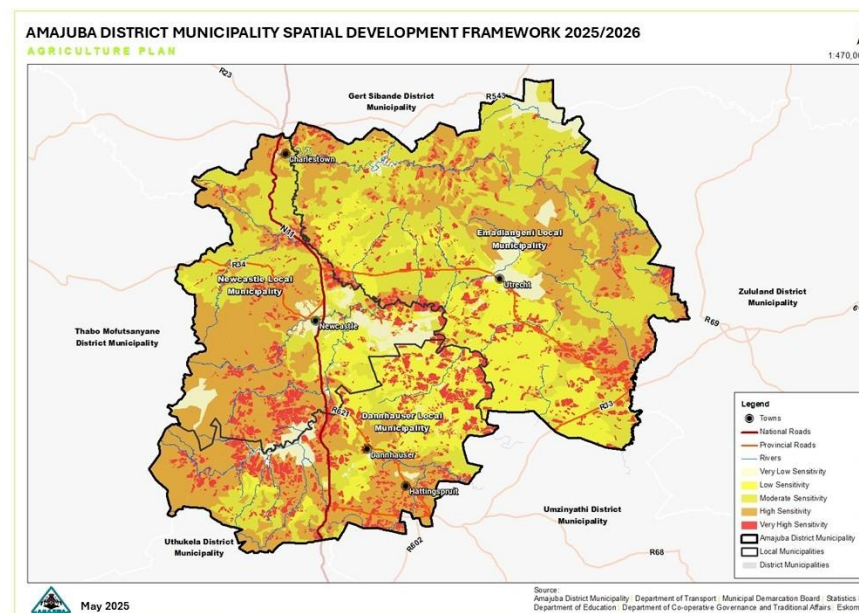
The agriculture category mapping indicates that the municipal land is mostly covered by category B (Threatened), C (Primary Agriculture Land), D (Secondary Agriculture Land) and E Mixed Use Lands). This implies that the small patches are identified as Primary Agricultural Lands (areas of good potential)

### **Agriculture Potential**

**Beef production** in the district is mainly undertaken at commercial scale in Emadlangeni and Newcastle local municipalities. High potential beef production is possible in Groenvlei (Emadlangeni) with a developed red meat cluster.

**Maize production** is undertaken on a large scale in the district. All the local municipalities have a well-developed value chain for maize processing and milling. It also shows why the livestock sector and commercial beef production is practised.

Newcastle local municipality has the highest **vegetable production** due to water availability. Vegetable production is thus suitable with potential for potatoes and dry bean production.



PLAN 32: Agriculture

**Groundnuts** in the district have shown a developed value chain cluster in Newcastle local municipality. Groundnut is a high value commodity with multiple uses, hence serves some key niche markets.

### **2.H. 8 Mining**

Mining activities in Amajuba has experienced a decline in the last decade. The effects of this decline has been felt by communities across the entire district municipality.

Newcastle has the opportunity to exploit mining commodities such as coal mining, brick clay, Iron Oxide, dimension stone, aggregate and sand. There is Iron oxide potential concentrated east of Newcastle within the Madadeni / Osizweni areas

### 2.H. 9 Environmental Conservation Areas

Areas that are protected formally within the municipal area include areas around the Ntshingwayo Dam. Other areas of high conservation significance include all the wetlands and areas up to 30m around these wetlands and 100m from the banks of all rivers within the various catchments.

The formal conservation areas within the district are Ntshingwayo Resort Game Park, Ncandu Nature Reserve / Incandu Forest Reserve and National Monuments. There are areas of natural forest, which have been identified as of 'intermediate' value in a SEA conducted at the province. These include the areas of Amajuba Forest south of Charlestown, Ncandu Forest on the western border of the district, areas to the south of Donkerhoek on the western border of the district and Areas north of Emadlangeni. There are several registered conservancies in the Amajuba district. Some of these have been developed with the tourism sector in mind, while others are purely for conservation purposes.

# OVERALL SPATIAL CHALLENGES AND OPPORTUNITIES

This section aims to summarise the Spatial Challenges and Opportunities that have been identified in the above report.

## 2.I. Spatial Challenges:

### 2.I. 1 Socio Economic

In terms of Social Amenities, there is not enough health facilities provided in the district, the Dannhauser LM does not have a district hospital and is serviced by hospitals in the other LMs.

It is also noted that the unemployment rate has been increasing within the District Municipality and the majority of population is Grant Dependent. There is a need to upskill the population.

There is also a need for a Diversified economy

### 2.I. 2 Built Environment

With regards to Infrastructure, there are incomplete sanitation programmes and there are limited to Water resources within the district municipality. Some of the roads in the DM are also in need of maintenance.

It is further noted that unregulated development putting a strain on infrastructure and service provision.

Urban sprawl is also taking place with pockets of development around the district.

### 2.I. 3 Biophysical

Impacts of climate changes affects the land capabilities. Land pollution limits the agricultural potential.

## 2.J. Spatial Opportunities:

### 2.J. 1 Socio Economic

Tourism should be promoted and facilitated within various landmarks in the district, and the beautiful natural regions. In these areas, construction of hotels and any other forms of accommodation such as camping sites as well as any other tourist attractions should be encouraged. This should complement the tourism activities that exist, and the district should look at other tourism opportunities that can be developed.

The district has a great variety of tourism assets and accommodation establishment, which needs to be focused on to grow the tourism market.

There is also a potential for Mining Tourism

Regarding the economic sector, there is an opportunity to market products locally. In addition, there is potential for mining revitalisation.

## 2.J 2 Built Environment

Spatial development should be facilitated and approved within the ADM.

The priorities in the main towns are deemed to be the upgrade and extension of infrastructure networks and the implementation of rigorous land use management. With this in place, the Amajuba District Municipality will function as a more cohesive and efficient jurisdictional area and will thereafter be able to facilitate development within the remaining areas of the district.

Growth and expansion is seen within the Primary nodes of Newcastle and Dannhauser. Opportunities exist to densify urban areas to maximise on infrastructure provision as well as to compact city models.

Further opportunities are to offer mixed land use within the urban core regions of the DM. This will be in the form of allowing mixed use buildings of retail and / or office and residential, etc. This concept allows increasing the accessibility and limiting the need for travel within a live, work, play environment.

The Land reform Programme aims to improve access to production assets by the poor.

## 2.J. 3 Biophysical

The agriculture sector can be developed into the leading sector of the municipality. In doing so, the Municipality's economy generated will increase and will be able to support and develop other growing sectors. There is potential growth in the Agricultural sector and agro processing creating Value Chain should also be looked at for the DM to grow the economy. This includes the processing of red meats, canning and pickling raw materials, etc. There is a need to further capitalise on and grow the agricultural sector.

An opportunity is also to open a new variety of commodities for agriculture.

# SWOT ANALYSIS AND KEY ISSUES

Spatial planning directives from the National and Provincial level as well as the district sector plans, and local Municipal plans aims to unpack the state of the area or the sector within its location. Through a detailed analysis of these plans, we are able to create a picture of the positive and negative aspects of each sector within the areas that either fall within the district or surrounding the district which has an equal impact on how the district functions.

The following section will highlight the SWOT Analysis and Key Issues pertaining to the Amajuba District Municipality. These have been developed through a Workshopping session with the Local Municipalities, Internal and External Municipal Departments

The SWOT analysis is used in decision-making situations when a desired objective is defined.

- A **strength** is the ability to consistently provide near perfect performance in a specific activity, while a **weakness** characterizes areas, which are a disadvantage.
- An **opportunity** is classified as elements that can be exploited to a full advantage, while a **threat** are those elements that cause distress to an area or industry.
- Adequately addressing threats and weaknesses are essential to positive growth;
- All aspects of the SWOT analysis can be addressed together as each impact on the other and each have the ability to strengthen

another or potentially hinder when not appropriately addressed or managed.

Each component of the SWOT analysis was done separately where participants were required to address what they interpret as Strengths, Weaknesses, Opportunities, and Threats pertaining to the municipality and the area within which it operates (KZN and South Africa as a whole). They were required to do this anonymously and were assured that they will not be discriminated against, by their feedback.

After the SWOT Analysis was conducted, the inputs from the participants were presented for each component of the SWOT and the true reflection of what is experienced in the municipality was confirmed.

This further lead to the Vision exercise where participants were asked to imagine a functioning District Municipality by the year 2040 and how this would look like.

## 2.K. SWOT Analysis

### 2. K. 1 Strengths

The following Strengths were identified.



## STRENGTHS

- The ADM is a semi-industrial Municipality which will enhance more job opportunities within the local communities.
- The ADM has FET colleges which will draw more students and uplift skills to the youth and the community at large.
- Corridor and Gateway into Mpumalanga and Gauteng.
- Agricultural production
- The eMadlangeni Local Municipality is the right place for agricultural purposes.
- Strong manufacturing sector in Newcastle especially clothing and textiles
- Mining opportunities
- Newcastle is able to provide service to the entire Northern Region of KwaZulu-Natal.
- National route (N11) that transverses the District.
- Tourism diversity and accessibility to facilities due to interconnected transport system.
- Great entertainment industry.

## 2. K. 2 Weaknesses

The following Weaknesses were identified.



# WEAKNESSES

- Lack of funding to support environmental programmes eg., for Climate Change
- Poor infrastructure maintenance
- Traditional and conventional Tourism opportunities not exploited in the Amajuba Municipality
- Uncontrolled urban sprawl
- High Rates and Taxes for businesses
- Land Tenure
- Lack of job creation
- Lack of funding for new business owners.
- Poor service delivery in terms of health and Security
- Lack of sufficient supply of water and electricity
- Shedding of jobs as a result of industries shutting down
- Political instability
- Inability of the current industries to attract new skilled workers.
- Decline in economic activities
- Mining not properly regulated
- Rural Development is stagnant
- Location of District Municipality
- Lack of agricultural business skills
- Silo mentality within the Local Municipalities, each municipality does their own planning without necessarily considering the others within the District.
- The political functionalism has slowed down service delivery.
- Lack of investment attraction
- Lack of housing opportunities
- Lack of Youth programmes to keep them occupied
- Poor road infrastructure in Rural areas
- eMadlangeni Local Municipality has a shortage of schools in rural areas.
- Lack of sufficient Agro-processing facilities.
- Lack of Financial resources to implement programmes from policies.
- Poor management of waste disposal sites
- Bulk services backlogs in the rural areas
- Poor environmental protection for the critical environmental areas
- Poor linkages in terms of Land usage for harmony within the rural uses.
- Infrastructure not utilised to full potential eg., Railway lines
- eMadlangeni Local Municipality has a dire need for a shopping centre
- Poor public transport

## 2. K. 3 Opportunities

The following Opportunities were identified



# OPPORTUNITIES

- It would be a great opportunity Newcastle to have a University
- The promotion of Tourism Landmarks e.g., The Balele Game Park at Utrecht where we can attract more people within our area.
- It would be a great opportunity for eMadlangeni Local Municipality to develop if they can have a college.
- With Development, there are more business opportunities that will create better and bigger airports to make tourists gain more access to the towns.
- The alternative use of the Railway Line.
- Attracting the creative industries and the intellectual industries.
- The possibilities of becoming a Techno-Park.
- There is a potential for Silicon Valley of KwaZulu-Natal.
- The use of Green Energy and Economy on areas like eMadlangeni and Dannhauser.
- The promotion of Ari-Villages on agriculturally rich areas.
- The re-opening of Mines.
- Expansion of the economy to be diversified within the districts to promote growth on the smaller Local Municipalities.
- The full use of the P248 Mixed Use corridor for maximum industrial growth (light industry) to promote economic growth.
- Use the Ntshingwayo dam as a water source.
- Maximise the use of agricultural land.
- There District has tourism potential
- Newcastle currently accommodates five (5) campuses of the TVET College.
- There is a potential for new ideas to emanate and be executed with the new political leaders.
- The District has good connectivity with other urban centres in terms of Roads, Rail and Air connections.
- The Normandien farms can be potentially exploited.
- Agriculture business development (Soft skills)
- Capturing of money flowing through the District Municipality
- eMadlangeni has a potential to have a town within a Game Park. The Game Park can be remodelled with the aim of boosting the economy.
- Sustainable/ Functional settlements to promote healthy cities.
- Population with proper training have the potential to develop themselves and eventually develop the District.
- Expansion of industry in the Dannhauser Municipality eg.,Dannhauser Malt, a distillery can be produced.
- Maximise the existing corridors
- There is access to corridor opportunities linking the province with other economical hubs such as NRB.
- Battlefield Route exposure. Utilise the Railway Line and create a unique tourism experience.
- Make use of the coal assets in eMadlangeni to uplift the economic status.
- Gas exploration aligned to Operation Phakisa. Phased corridors have been gazetted.
- Improvement on Railway transportation in support of trade for business.
- N11 being the main transport corridor linking KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga is an advantage.

## 2. K. 4 Threats

The following Threats were identified



# THREATS

- Charges that are always made within management.
- Instability within the municipal functionality.
- Crime as a result of unemployment
- Lack of awareness and knowledge resulting from lack of educational access
- Lack of capital access
- Lack of service delivery
- Pollution, industry and mining within the ADM.
- The interference of policies in technical aspects.
- Lack of commitment to Spatial plans. They are not sustainable
- Lack of access to service delivery
- Poor infrastructure
- The smaller towns are sidelined due to the distance from the N11.
- Loss of high potential agricultural land, due to invasion
- Insufficient resources
- Rapid population increase in urban areas close to towns
- Cost of production
- Water shortages and power cuts
- Water resource areas not protected
- Unplanned Settlements
- Backlogs not being addressed eg., housing infrastructure
- Climate change impacts to vulnerable communities
- Poor air quality, Newcastle being the hot spot requires ambient monitoring
- Settlement creation on agricultural farms
- The mix use of land for developments that shouldn't be there
- Deteriorating infrastructure resulting from lack of maintenance
- High levels of corruption
- Tenderpreneurship

## 2.L. Key Issues

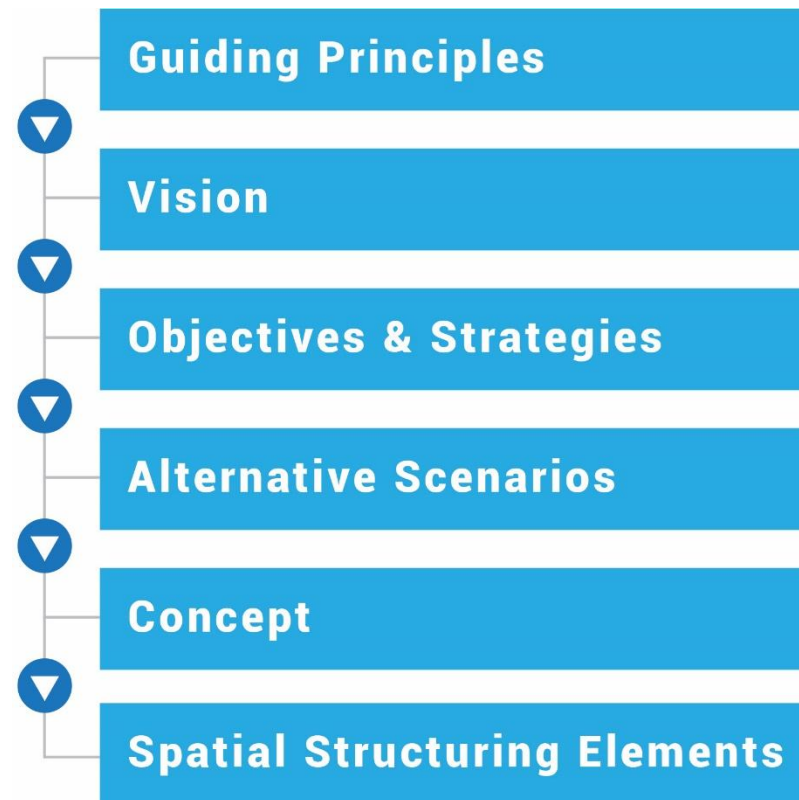


# **STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK**

# STRATEGIC FRAMEWORK

The “Strategic Framework” in relation to a Spatial Development Framework refers to the strategic background and guidelines which will underpin the development of the Spatial proposals. It aims to identify the strategic spatial focus of and the municipality. The development strategy includes meaningful target measures and objectives that help focus on the key efforts that implement the strategy.

The following diagram outlines the structure of the chapter:



## 3.A. Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 2013 Principles

Legally, the development principles of SPLUMA must guide a strategic response to spatial development challenges and opportunities in ADM. Accordingly, the table below sets out the proposed strategic application of the SPLUMA Development Principles in the Development of the ADM SDF:

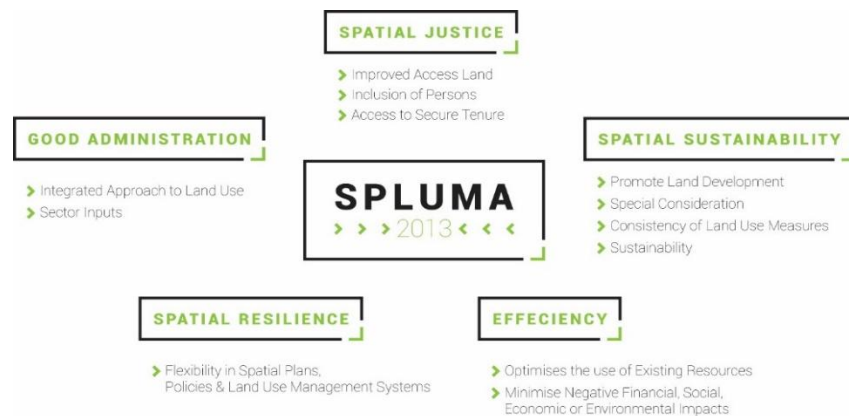


Figure 16 SPLUMA Principles

Table 13: SPLUMA Principles

SPLUMA Development Principle	Elements of the SPLUMA Principle	Strategic Application in the ADM SDF
<p><b>Spatial Justice</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• past spatial and other development imbalances should be redressed through improved access to, and utilisation of, land.</li> <li>• spatial development frameworks and policy at all spheres of government should address <b>the inclusion of persons and areas</b> that were previously excluded, with an emphasis on <b>informal settlements</b> and areas characterised by widespread poverty and deprivation;</li> <li>• spatial planning mechanisms, including <b>zoning schemes</b>, should incorporate provisions that enable redress in access to land by <b>disadvantaged communities and persons</b>;</li> <li>• land use management systems should include <b>all areas of a municipality</b> and specifically include provisions that are flexible and appropriate for the management of disadvantaged areas and informal settlements;</li> <li>• land development procedures must include provisions that accommodate <b>access to, and facilitation of, security of tenure</b> and the <b>incremental upgrading of informal areas</b>;</li> <li>• a <b>competent authority</b> contemplated in this Act or other relevant authority considering an application before it, may not be impeded or restricted in the</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Directs the DM SDF process to seek <b>spatial planning</b> and <b>land use management</b> solutions that effectively promote redress of circumstances that were caused by <b>past politically based policies</b>, which resulted in inequitable and fragmented spatial arrangements in urban and rural settlement layout designs as well as unequal levels of access to land and associated resources.</li> <li>• Highlights the need to identify opportunities where the <b>spatial configuration of settlements</b> and/or land holdings may be transformed by the development of strategically located land to promote the <b>integration of settlements</b> and better located opportunities for the socio-economic <b>upliftment of disadvantaged communities</b>.</li> </ul> <p>Strategic Imperative:</p>

	<p>exercise of its discretion solely on the ground that the <b>value of land or property</b> will be affected by the outcome of the application; and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the <b>right of owners</b> to develop land in accordance with current use rights should be recognised.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Identify spatial integration opportunities and implement <b>sustained programmatic interventions</b> to achieve spatial transformation and the development of key, centrally located sites within the district</li> </ul>
<p><b>Spatial Sustainability</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• promote land development that is <b>spatially compact</b>, resource-frugal and within the fiscal, institutional and administrative means of the relevant competent authority in terms of this Act or other relevant authority;</li> <li>• ensure that special consideration is given to the <b>protection of prime, unique and high potential agricultural land</b>;</li> <li>• uphold consistency of land use measures in accordance with environmental management instruments;</li> <li>• promote and stimulate the <b>effective and equitable functioning of land markets</b>;</li> <li>• consider all current and future costs to all parties for the provision of <b>infrastructure</b> and <b>social services</b> in land developments;</li> <li>• promote land development in locations that are <b>sustainable</b> and limit urban sprawl;</li> <li>• result in communities that are <b>viable</b>; and</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Places emphasise on <b>balancing land development</b> and <b>market-driven</b> initiatives against the imperative to conserve the natural resource base (ecological infrastructure) and to manage <b>resource usage</b> in a <b>sustainable manner</b>;</li> <li>• Highlights the need to ensure that the <b>provision of infrastructure and social facilities</b> – including the post-development maintenance thereof – is adequately planned for;</li> <li>• Again, emphasises the <b>importance of consolidating settlement footprints</b> and promoting <b>spatial integration</b>;</li> <li>• Directs that spatial planning strategies should prioritise long-term <b>sustainable solutions</b> rather than short-term political and/or market-</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• strive to ensure that the basic needs of all citizens are met in an <b>affordable</b> way;</li> <li>• the sustained protection of the environment should be ensured by having regard to the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ natural habitat, ecological corridors and areas with high biodiversity importance;</li> </ul> </li> <li>• the provincial <b>heritage</b> and <b>tourism</b> resources;</li> <li>• the <b>economic potential</b> of the relevant area or region;</li> <li>• the provision and conservation of, and the management of the demand for, <b>energy</b> should be considered in land use planning;</li> <li>• the <b>safe utilisation</b> of land should be ensured by taking into consideration factors such as sea-level rise, storm surges, flooding, fire hazards and geological formations;</li> <li>• development should be <b>principle-driven</b> and should <b>prioritise long-term</b> social, economic, and environmental benefits over short-term benefits.</li> </ul>	<p>driven initiatives;</p> <p>Strategic Imperative:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Embed Evidence-Based Wise Land Use Management and ensure that all land development decisions lead to <b>sustainable outcomes</b> where residents are well-connected to social and economic opportunities and have access to <b>adequate infrastructure</b> and social services that are within the financial means of ADM to develop and maintain over time.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Efficiency</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• land development should optimise the use of existing resources, infrastructure, agriculture, land, minerals, and facilities;</li> <li>• integrated cities and towns should be developed, whereby—</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promotes <b>compaction of settlements</b> and the avoidance wherever possible of extending settlement footprints or the development of so-called satellite townships that was a feature of</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the social, economic, institutional, and physical aspects of land development is <b>integrated</b>;</li> <li>• land development in rural and urban areas in <b>support</b> of each other is promoted;</li> <li>• the availability of residential and employment opportunities in <b>close proximity to, or integrated with</b>, each other is promoted;</li> <li>• a <b>diverse combination of land uses</b> is promoted;</li> <li>• the phenomenon of urban sprawl in urban areas is discouraged and the development of more compact towns and cities with denser habitation is promoted;</li> <li>• historically distorted spatial patterns of settlement are <b>corrected</b>; and</li> <li>• the quality and functionality of the <b>public spatial environment</b> is promoted; and</li> <li>• policy, administrative practice, and legislation should promote <b>speedy land development</b>.</li> </ul>	<p>Apartheid settlement strategies, which require the <b>extension or development</b> of new associated services infrastructure networks</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Also addresses the need to strengthen the positive and reciprocal relationships between <b>urban settlements</b> and <b>rural hinterland areas</b> by identifying what urban settlements do for the rural areas and how the assets and livelihoods offered in the rural areas hold benefits for the urban parts of ADM</li> <li>• Places focus on <b>urban design interventions</b> to promote mixed land uses in appropriate localities as well as improve the quality of public spaces</li> </ul> <p>Strategic Imperative:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Promote and implement more <b>compact spatial development</b> in both urban and rural settlements, with a wider mix of land uses to <b>promote the efficient use of scarce resources</b> and build on existing infrastructure networks</li> </ul>
<p><b>Spatial Resilience</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• whereby <b>flexibility in spatial plans</b>, policy and land use management systems is accommodated to ensure <b>sustainable livelihoods</b> in communities most likely to suffer the impact of economic and</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Emphasizes the need to be more aware of the challenges of climate breakdown as well as unforeseen and potentially <b>extreme events</b>, and</li> </ul>

	<p>environmental shocks.</p>	<p>to <b>plan accordingly</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Highlights the need to allow for <b>flexibility in urban design and urban management</b></li> </ul> <p>Strategic Imperative:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure adaptability in ADM’s planning and development <b>programmes</b> to accommodate spatial planning and land use management changes necessitated by <b>Climate Breakdown</b> and <b>socio-economic trends</b></li> <li>• Resilience against the effects of a pandemic</li> </ul>
<p><b>Good Administration</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• all spheres of government should ensure an <b>integrated approach</b> to land use planning;</li> <li>• all government departments must provide their sector inputs and comply with any other <b>statutory requirements</b> during the preparation or amendment of spatial development frameworks;</li> <li>• the requirements of any law relating to land development and land use must be met timeously;</li> <li>• the preparation and amendment of spatial plans, policy, zoning schemes and procedures for land development and land use applications, should include transparent processes of public participation that afford all parties</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Directs that spatial planning and land use management are core municipal planning activities to be underpinned by <b>cooperative governance arrangements</b>;</li> <li>• Again, emphasises the importance of <b>speedy administrative processes</b> in dealing with land development;</li> <li>• Places strong emphasis on the need for an <b>effective administration</b> to engage in <b>meaningful partnerships</b> with key public and</li> </ul>

the opportunity to provide inputs on matters affecting them;

- **legislation**, procedures, and administrative practice relating to land development should be clear, promote predictability, trust and acceptance in order to inform and empower members of the public;
- a spatial development framework, zoning scheme or policy should be developed in phases and each phase in the development thereof should include consultation with the public and **relevant organs of state** and should be endorsed by the relevant competent authority;
- decision-making in all spheres of government should be guided by and give effect to **statutory land use planning systems**.

private sector stakeholders

Strategic Imperative:

- Integration of effort in ensuring a **multi-lateral (multi-stakeholder) governance** approach to spatial planning and land use management

## 3.B. Amajuba District Municipality

### Guiding Principles

The following Guiding Principles have been developed in accordance with the SPLUMA guiding principles. These have further been specifically identified for the ADM based on the SWOT and key issues identified and building on the strengths of the municipality and the areas which require further emphasis on. The following Spatial Guiding Principles are outlined for the ADM SDF.

#### 3.B. 1. Development of Sustainable Human Settlements

This guiding principle seeks to address the critical interventions required that would counter current **shortcomings** in the way settlements perform. Key areas of concern include dealing with the existing **sparsely dispersed settlements** and the **lack of certain social amenities** within some settlements and the wide variety of housing needs applicable to various areas of the district related to **tenure challenges**, especially those that are poorly catered for by current housing markets. Other areas of concern relate to the need to ensure that housing opportunities are developed in areas that offer **better access** to social and economic opportunities to the most people (especially the less well-off who are most reliant on public transport); and to



the need to ensure that levels of access to critical social facilities and services are **progressively improved**. This aims to ensure that the people are in areas where they would be able to access the **job market** and **social amenities**.

The ADM will aim to promote **affordable housing provision** near employment opportunities and near established urban activity nodes with social amenities.

This principle relates to the department of Human Settlements. The district SDF will further aim to ensure that a full range of **social facilities** and services are available to **support human settlements**. This will be achieved through identifying the areas where social amenities are lacking to be able to identify those **gap spots** within the district where certain social amenities will be proposed.

It has been noted through the assessment of the Key Issues pertaining to the location of residential settlements, there are **many sparsely located settlements** which have limited access to social amenities. The goal would be here to ensure that residents have access to these facilities through the **development of Sustainable Human Settlements**. The district would also need to ensure that this applies to the development of new settlements addressing the **housing backlog**.

The **implications** of the development of sustainable human settlements with regards to ADM will allow more residents will have access to social amenities as well as economic opportunities and more human settlements will be located closely to each other to promote equal access to social amenities as well as better access.

Also, to make provision of housing more affordable and accessible for ALL the residents of ADM closer to workplaces and social amenities so that they don't have to travel long distances just to get access to services.

### 3.B. 2. Ensuring a Sustainable and Functioning Environment

The two major areas constraining the **environment** within the context of the ADM are the growing effects of **climate change** and the crucial role played by the natural environment in providing the essential ecosystem goods and services upon which the environmental sphere thrives upon.



The second **environmental** concern within the district is the effects of **mining** and the impacts on the environment of this thriving economic assess to the district. The question lies in how we find the **balance** in ensuring a sustainable natural environment while continuing with **mining activities** which forms part of the sources of income within the ADM.

Key concerns are that spatial development and human land uses should be **planned** and **managed** so as not to disrupt or destroy **critical biodiversity areas**. The aim of the guiding principle also highlights the need for planning to strengthen the **resilience of communities** and to allow for contingencies when responding to **natural disaster events**.

#### Implications:

The intention of the ADM under this guiding principle would be to support the conservation and rehabilitation of critical biodiversity areas (CBAs) , ecological support areas (ESAs) , to protect life and property from the impacts of climate breakdown and natural hazards as well as to promote active and healthy lifestyles for the residents of ADM.

This will help the residents care for their environment whilst still being able to continue with mining related activities which in turn will boost the economy of the District and secondly the more residents are made aware of the impacts of climate change and educated about ways to help reduce the impacts, then this will make residents more knowledgeable and aware therefore our environment will be well taken of and preserved for future generations to come.

### 3.B. 3. Managing and Maintaining Safe and Accessible Infrastructure Provision

This guiding principle focuses on the importance of ensuring that **existing infrastructure** networks are **adequately maintained** and that scarce critical **(life-enabling) resources** such as water are protected and managed to ensure wise and sustainable use.



This guiding principle also emphasises the need to plan for **the changing services provision context**, especially the impact of changes in how activist citizens have begun to **design solutions** in order to reduce their absolute dependency on municipal services provision. The challenge to previously reliable revenue streams is likely to continue unabated and the need, therefore, to **embrace planning** and the progressive implementation of **SMART infrastructure** networks is emphasised.

Under this principle, the ADM will protect scarce water resources, invest in existing and new infrastructure networks in order to provide communities with access to sustainable infrastructure services, including **transportation infrastructure** which allows for the ease of access to various neighbouring communities to access social amenities and the job market. The ADM under the goal for the development of a Smart district will aim **to promote energy conservation** and alternative **energy production**.

This guiding principle will also aim to address **Infrastructure upgrading** and provision within the district. It has been noted through the assessment of Key Issues, all LMs within the district mention the insufficient maintenance and **upgrading of infrastructure** with regards to roads, access to transportation, wastewater treatment, sanitation, etc.

#### Implications:

The implications of managing and maintaining safe and accessible infrastructure provision within ADM is that residents will have access to well-maintained infrastructures such as buildings, roads, transportation, sanitation service, electricity and so forth. A city cannot run without these, therefore since ADM is making it a priority resident as well as the administration of the city/town will run smoothly and sufficiently. This basically means better quality of services will be available to all residents.

### 3.B. 4. Access to and Affordable Public Transportation and Accessible Linkages Between Settlements.

This guiding principle focuses on the interplay of **viable public transportation** with the appropriate pattern of **land use and settlement development** within the district. It is clearly recognised that public transport functions best and most sustainably when it services a user population that resides at **sufficient**



**density and distances** from various land uses within the areas of which the transport services is offered. Thus, it is emphasised that this principle encompasses the need to plan for public transportation services in tandem with **planning** for the transformation of **inefficient spatial patterns** of development over time.

This principle is specifically aimed at addressing the **settlement imbalances** within the ADM with the sparsely located settlements and social amenities required to serve the needs of community members.

In line with the concept of **Transit Oriented Development**, the ADM under this principle should address the prioritisation of public transportation in line with the development of **human settlements** and the allocation of social amenities within the district through promoting integrated planning with regards to land use and transportation planning.

The district should also aim to **adequately address** the safe movement of people using non-motorised means of transportation. This seen as a key means of movement and to be able to support this, LMs and the district should **prioritise safety and security** for these residents through street lighting and other **urban design features** to ensure safe movement.

#### Implications:

### 3.B. 5. Thriving economy which is well positioned within the province and within the country

This guiding principle is included as it recognises the need for **sustainable economic** development and its fundamental enabler of spatial development and **spatial transformation**. Thus, it is emphasised that **spatial strategies** and plans as well as the land use management regime administered by the ADM and must be designed so as to **facilitate** and enhance the opportunities for **sustainable economic development** in the area. This is likely to require different areas of focus in different urban and rural components of the municipality.



This principle also recognises the areas for **economic advancements** such as in the secondary sector to support the **mining** within the district by adding value change to the **natural resources sourced**. Also essential to this theme is to address the issue of old mining areas by looking at alternative uses for these sites.

Addressing **tourism opportunities** within the LMs through enhancing and promoting the natural assets will ensure **overall growth** in this sector for ADM. Coupled with this, it is also essential to protect and manage the **historic and cultural resources** which can also act as a form of tourism generation for the district.

Skills transfer and supporting **SMME's** is another economic area where locals require support. The SDF will address how to grow this sector to effectively support residents to be able to support themselves and be less reliant on **government support grants**.

#### Implications:

This guiding principle ensures that the district would be able to be a strong economic contributor, not only within the province, but also amongst neighbouring districts and further, within the country. There will be less unemployment rates, less poverty-stricken households and also less people will be dependent on social grants because the province will be generating more money/cash flow through mining activities which are in Dannhauser and also tourism historic and cultural). This will create more jobs and also SMME's will receive more support.

All these factors are going to grow the economy and it will be thriving also will be able to compete with the other provinces.

### 3.B. 6. Sustainable Rural Development

There are many rural settlements located **throughout** the district. This guiding principle seeks to take into account the realities of the interplay between **ADM's urban areas and its rural settlements**, and especially the **linkage** between these areas.



While it is understood that urban settlements are the **future centres of economic activity** and will likely increase in importance in this aspect, an appropriate focus on both **socio-economic** and **transformative spatial development** and **land use management** is crucial in rural areas. This is so for a few reasons. Firstly, rural areas largely remain the terrain where **key ecosystem services** (water, carbon capturing vegetation, fertile soils etc.) originate and need to be **conserved** and **managed** appropriately. Secondly, rural areas fulfil important roles for the citizens of the area in respect of food production, as places of residence and important socio-cultural heritage.

The ADM SDF will aim to **facilitate the integration** between rural and urban areas by **improving access and connectivity**. The SDF will also aim to

facilitate the **development of the rural economy** and promote and support **sustainable agricultural initiatives** in rural settlements. This will allow to support communities by facilitating food **security programme opportunities** within these areas to be able to improve their livelihoods.

#### Implications:

The implication of this guiding principle is that there will be improved integration and connectivity between rural and urban areas within ADM. Also, the urban areas will be improved and there will be more initiatives or programmes that develop the rural economy for the people and rural area as whole.

There will be an improved connection between the rural and urban in such a way that they operate in sync, whatever the other lack the other is able to assist with. There will also be improved access, all of these will promote and supports sustainable initiatives whilst also being able to facilitate food security programmes within the rural areas.

### 3.B. 7. “Smart City” and Information Technology

Cities and areas in third world countries have been seeing the need for advancing this sector. This guiding principle understands that our societies are **increasingly experiencing** the effects of what is termed the **Fourth Industrial Revolution**, which is characterised by a **rapid changeover between older and**



**new technologies**, this principle acknowledges the importance of ensuring that the settlements within the ADM, whether **rural or urban are not left behind**. The district has already been facing issues of lack of **access to the internet** which hinders the growth and development of the specific skills required for the **current job market**.

Therefore, **planning, land use management and investment** in the built environment must be geared so as to facilitate the rollout of **new information and communication technologies** to serve **communities within the district**. In addition, the opportunities to invest in smart technologies to enhance and improve the quality of infrastructure networks and their management and maintenance must not be missed.

Addressing this theme with that of **improvements in infrastructure** is seen as critical through managing municipal infrastructure using **smart technology** to be able to keep up with the trends while proving for communities. The district SDF will aim to support and encourage **technological and social connectivity** issues for residents.

It has further been noted that the **National SDF** outlines the Newcastle area within the **Newcastle LM** as being a **National Urban Node**. Through this theme, the district SDF will aim to outline what this means for the district and provide proposals where the district can assist with the creation of this goal.

#### Implications:

The implications of this guiding principle for ADM is that smart cities are socially engaged, financially stable, business-oriented, data-driven, environmentally friendly, and energy-efficient cities. We can also conclude that smart city initiatives can alleviate cities' challenges, thus, enhancing economic development.

What this will mean for ADM is that the district will be more effective, safer, there will be increased digital equity and new economic development opportunities and so forth. Also, information and communication will be better circulated within and around the district in faster and more effective manner.

### 3.B. 8. Effective Governance

This principle highlights the importance of ensuring **efficiency, transparency, and inclusiveness** in the ADM's approach to fulfilling its Municipal Planning mandate, specifically about **spatial planning** and **land use management**. This means that emphasis is to be placed on communication with **interested and affected parties** to any planning

initiative and ensuring transparency between municipal functions and **public knowledge** to ensure that the public is part of the planning process and that they essentially are satisfied with the projects proposed within the spaces in which they live and utilise.

Priority is to be given to ensuring that a **sound and technically proficient administration** is developed and nurtured, so as to win the **trust** and support of **all stakeholders** and community members who share a common interest in seeing sustainable development become a reality for the ADM.



#### Implications:

The implications of this guiding principle that it will improve the administration of ADM, in terms of good relationship between authorities and the residents in this case can be considered as the



### 3.C. VISION

Developing a vision for a district needs to be based on or ensured alignment to the visions from a national and provincial level. The vision should take cognisance of the tiers of spatial representation where the vision of the minor context should be taken direction from the vision of the larger context. The vision would aim to direct growth of its spatial area based on the strengths of the area as well as aspiring to positively impact on the issues pertaining to the area.

The vision for the Amajuba District SDF has been developed in line with the National Spatial Development Framework (NSDF), the KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Spatial Development Framework and well as the Amajuba District Integrated Development Plan (IDP). The vision statements for these above-mentioned plans as well as the vision for the SDF are highlighted below.

The vision was also developed through consultation / workshopping session with the Local Municipalities where an engaging session took place discussing the key issues pertaining to the Local Municipalities and thereafter defining a vision based on the outline of, the key issues

*“All Our People Living in Shared and Transformed Places in an Integrated, Inclusive, Sustainable and Competitive National Space Economy”.*

#### Provincial Spatial Development Framework Vision

*“Equitable utilisation of physical and environmental resources toward greater spatial integration and sustainability in development”*

#### Amajuba District Municipality Integrated Development Plan Vision (2021)

*“By 2035 Amajuba will be a leading and pioneering District characterized by sustainable development and quality services”*

#### Amajuba District Municipality Proposed Vision

*“Amajuba district is to become a major player in the regional economy of eastern KwaZulu Natal by 2025 by collaborating with the surrounding districts. Through this collaboration, Amajuba will be able to utilise the economies of scale to uplift all the towns within the region and ensure its residents better access to opportunities and in turn create better livelihoods”*

#### Amajuba District Municipality long-term Vision

*“Amajuba district is to become a leading agricultural producer in the province of KwaZulu-Natal by 2040. As a result of this opportunity, an inclusive spatial form can be achieved with key sustainable initiatives growing the local economy”*

#### National Spatial Development Framework Vision

### 3.D. OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIES

In terms of the White Paper on Spatial Planning and Land Use Management, 2001, “The overall aim of the principles and norms is to achieve planning outcomes” that (1) Restructure spatially inefficient settlements, (2) Promote the sustainable use of the land resources in the country, (3) Channel resources to areas of greatest need and development potential, thereby redressing the inequitable historical treatment of marginalised areas.

Table 14: Objectives and Strategies

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY: DEVELOPMENT OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIES				
GOAL 1: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY AND INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT				
STRATEGIC FOCUS AREAS	STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES	MUNICIPAL GOALS	PDP's GOALS	NDP's GOALS
Libraries, Information and Education	To promote the usage of libraries in the district	To promote the usage of libraries in the district	An educated, empowered, and innovative citizens	Improving education, training and innovation
Early childhood development	To provide support to the most vulnerable groups within the district on an annual basis	To promote integrated sustainable community livelihoods		
Community needs analysis and mobilization			Vibrant and equitably enabled communities	Ensure social protection
Community safety			Capable, conscientious and accountable institutions	Build safer communities
Municipal Health Service	To expedite the investigation of notifiable medical conditions within		A healthy population	Health care for all

	24 hours of reporting in order to prevent communicable diseases			
<b>GOAL 2: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>				
<b>STRATEGIC FOCUS AREAS</b>	<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>MUNICIPAL GOALS</b>	<b>PDP's GOALS</b>	<b>NDP's GOALS</b>
Rural Development (spatial planning of the region)	To assist all municipalities in the district to be SPLUMA compliant.	To promote rapid and sustainable economic growth within the limits of available	Capable, conscientious, and accountable institutions	A responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
Tourism Development and Marketing	To promote tourism in the district	To promote rapid and sustainable economic growth within the limits of available natural resources	An inclusive, equitable and growing economy for the province	Promote improvement in the economy and increase employment
Agricultural development and Agro-processing	To boost agriculture contribution and improve food security in the district.			Develop an inclusive rural economy
Blue Economy	To provide support to entrepreneurs and create employment opportunities			Improve environmental sustainability and resilience
<b>GOAL 3: FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT AND VIABILITY</b>				
<b>STRATEGIC FOCUS AREAS</b>	<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>MUNICIPAL GOALS</b>	<b>PDP's GOALS</b>	<b>NDP's GOALS</b>

Asset and Liability Management	To have an accurate, complete and GRAP compliant assets register	To manage the financial viability of the Amajuba District Municipality through sound management and good governance	Capable, conscientious and accountable institutions	Building a capable and developmental state
Mscosa Implementation	To achieve Mscosa compliance by the district municipality in line with the National Treasury Regulations and by Guidelines	To manage the financial viability of the Amajuba District Municipality	Capable, conscientious and accountable institutions	Building a capable and developmental state
Supply Chain Management	To ensure that effective implementation of the demand management, acquisition management, contract management, supplier performance management and SCM risk management	To manage the financial viability of the Amajuba District Municipality through sound management and good governance		
Budget Management	To ensure that the annual budget planning and preparation is sustainable, credible, funded and Mscosa complaint		Capable, conscientious and accountable institutions	Capable, conscientious and accountable institutions
Social Relief Housing	To build new housing units as means to counter the housing backlog	Providing conducive, adequate and accessible infrastructure	Vibrant, equitably enabled communities	Fighting corruption
<b>GOAL 4: MUNICIPAL TRANSFORMATION AND INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT</b>				
<b>STRATEGIC FOCUS AREAS</b>	<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>MUNICIPAL GOALS</b>	<b>PDP's GOALS</b>	<b>NDP's GOALS</b>
Recruitment and Selection	To effectively and efficiently recruit and retain competent Human Capital by 2025		Capable, conscientious and accountable institutions	Promote improvement in the economy and increase employment; Nation

				building and social cohesion
Human Resource Development	To train municipal officials		An educated, innovative and empowered citizenry	Improving education, training and innovation
Employment Equity	To increase the number of people from employment equity target group in three highest levels of management	To develop, transform and capacitate the Amajuba District Municipality and its local municipalities to ensure effective and efficient resource utilization making it capable of delivering in its mandate	Capable, conscientious and accountable institutions	Promote improvement in the economy and increase employment
Employee Relations (Institutional)	To provide effective and efficient human resources and corporate administration support			Building a capable and developmental state
Records Management (Institutional)				
Employee Wellness (District Wide)				
<b>GOAL 5: GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>				
<b>STRATEGIC FOCUS AREAS</b>	<b>STRATEGIC OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>MUNICIPAL GOALS</b>	<b>PDP's GOALS</b>	<b>NDP's GOALS</b>
Municipal Oversight Policy and research	To instill good governance in all municipal operation and strength relations with stakeholders	Building of a coherent district that is responsive, accountable and promotes clean governance	Capable, conscientious and accountable institutions	Building a capable and developmental state
Compliance with legislation				
Public Participation			Vibrant, equitably enabled communities	

Political stability	IGR Policy		Capable, conscientious and	
Accelerate planning and delivery of municipal infrastructure programmes	To implement all Transport Plans by 2024	Providing conducive, adequate and accessible infrastructure	accountable institutions	Develop sound economic infrastructure

Table 15: Strategic Framework: Key Issues, Objectives and Strategies

KEY ISSUES, OBJECTIVES AND STRATEGIES		
KEY ISSUE	OBJECTIVE	STRATEGY
Aging Infrastructure and Rural Sprawl	<p>Ensure availability of minimum acceptable level of infrastructure and services throughout the DM.</p> <p>To create an efficient and integrated settlement pattern in the district</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Identify and priorities areas of greatest need.</i></li> <li>• <i>Focus on involvement of all relevant stakeholders.</i></li> <li>• <i>Promote the integration of sprawling settlements.</i></li> <li>• <i>Prioritize maintenance and upgrade of strategic link routes.</i></li> </ul>
Poor Accessibility and Connectivity	<p>Well structured network system allowing for ease of movement.</p> <p>Efficient and effective links between identified nodes and relevant products and services.</p> <p>Ensure better access to opportunities to create better livelihoods</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Identify nodes and products (i.e. Agri produce) that require linkage.</i></li> <li>• <i>Prioritize maintenance and upgrade of strategic link routes.</i></li> </ul>

Impacts of Climate Change	<p>Adhere to sound environmental practices in line with legislation.</p> <p>Protect environmentally sensitive areas and place emphasis on measure to combat climate change impacts</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Implement the principles of Integrated Environment Management.</i></li> <li>• <i>Approach planning with disaster risk management strategy for the district.</i></li> </ul>
Good Governance and IGR	Ensuring stronger alignment and communication between government departments	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Synergizing priorities with sister departments</i></li> </ul>
Lack of engagement by municipalities with people	<p>Stress the need to have more engagements with Traditional authorities and</p> <p>Conduct more inclusive public participation.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Incorporating Culture and diversity into planning and needs of people</i></li> </ul>

## 3.E. SPATIAL SCENARIOS

**Development scenarios are an important phase of the SDF formulation process. Development scenarios are not predictions or roadmaps, they are constructed in order to give a particular point of view in the future as well as some informed speculation about the crosscutting paths that might get us to that particular point. The power of scenarios lies in provoking a sense of “what might be a possibility as well as in combining probabilities” in ways that might not have previously thought of.**

As mentioned in the previous Amajuba District SDF, the growth projection is seen to be at 1.25% from the year 2011 to 2016. A scenario is proposed which aims towards a 3% or higher growth rate in order to meet the socio-economic needs of the residents. The previous SDF places focus on Newcastle as becoming an urban driver of rapid, inclusive and sustainable economic growth, as well as societal and spatial transformation:

### **Scenario 1: Status Quo/Stagnation**

Uncontrolled development is also aligned to **“haphazard outcomes/ leap frog development”**. This scenario shows that the towns within the district stay in its present structure, with no co-ordinated advancement, no tertiary facilities, poor infrastructure and no legitimate Land Use Management implementation or control. This proposal is at first seen as positive, as it addresses immediate needs. But what it lacks to address is that of sustainable development or much thought of a longer-term impact. This scenario further results in residents in the areas suffering and levels of

dependency would increase as a result of inadequate, aging or no basic services, no or minimal access to social facilities and no employment opportunities.

#### **The positive features of this scenario are as follows:**

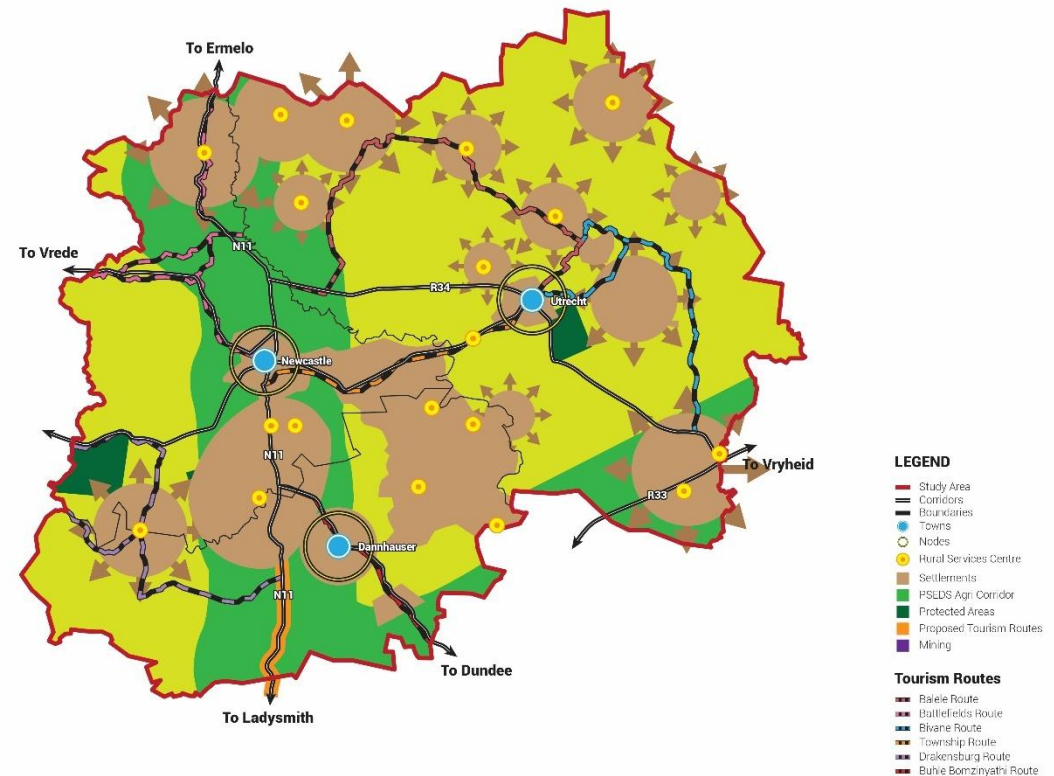
- Strong private sector investment in high growth areas with a large onus for infrastructure upgrade;
- Broad based government expenditure aimed at addressing social need in poverty-stricken areas;
- There will be large scale demand for urban and peripheral urban sites with a consequent demand for urban level services;

The negative impacts expected as an outcome of this scenario is as

follows:

- Challenges affecting areas that are supposed to be conserved for future generations – biodiversity hot spots could be destroyed;
- Agricultural soils will be washed away, there will be no grazing land for rural households, poverty levels will increase, and rural land will continue to lose its value;
- Vacant and local commonage land resources will become fully developed with time
- Economic and employment growth will continue along its current trajectory, maintaining the joblessness cycle within the province.

## CONCEPT PLAN - Scenario 1



PLAN 33: Concept Plan (Scenario 1)

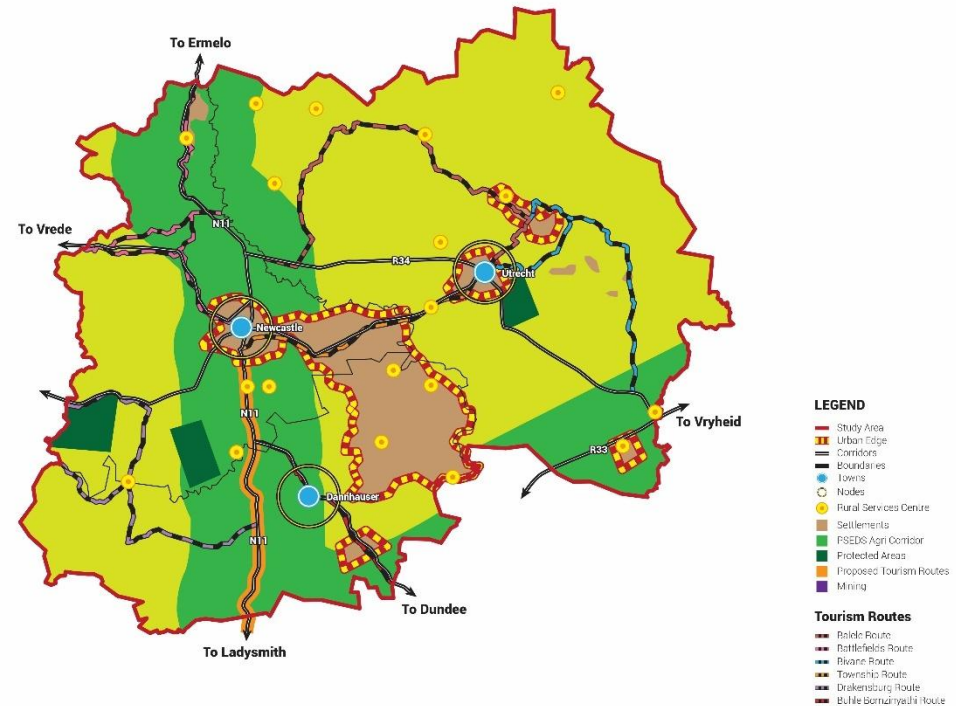
## Scenario 2: Managed and Guided Development

This scenario includes having proper development controls and guidelines for development put in place for effective and well-thought-out development controls that considers all individuals and aspects.

The main features of this scenario are as follows:

- Broad based government expenditure aimed at addressing social need in poverty-stricken areas;
- Increasing population growth is anticipated to continue within the core urban areas – Newcastle and supporting centres– as urbanisation continues
- There will be large scale demand for urban and peripheral urban sites with a consequent demand for urban level services
- Rural areas will experience an increased level of migration to larger urban centres, increasing the pressure to provide services in urban regions
- Infrastructure as well as some key roads has already outgrown their planned capacities and will need upgrading and continuous maintenance

## CONCEPT PLAN - Scenario 2



PLAN 34: Concept Plan (Scenario 2)

### Scenario 3: Managed and Optimistic Outlook

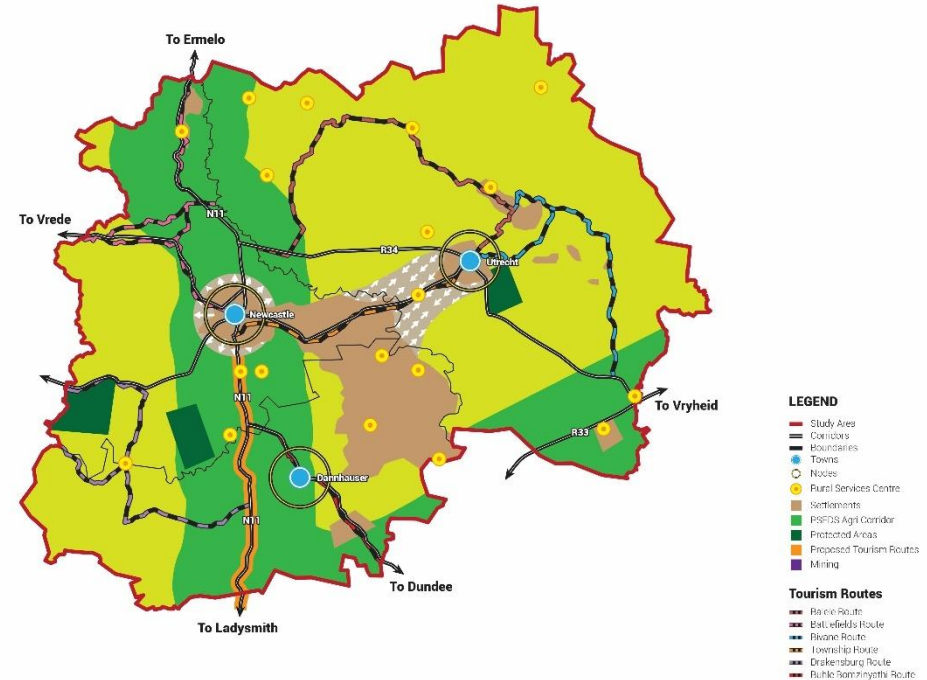
This scenario aims to achieve regenerated towns, catering for the existing and future growth needs of its residents, with enough basic social and bulk infrastructure to invite investors into the towns with confidence. This scenario looks at an average growth rate of 1.25%. It will require decisive and well thought through and accurately aimed public sector interventions. Future development should be bound by economic rationale – meaning that money should be invested in locations where it will have maximum impact. This will result in an improved spatial development pattern.

The following outlines the key aspects of this scenario:

- Strong private sector investment in high growth areas, supported by focused government infrastructure investment to optimise the growth effect and subsequent income-generating;
- The emphasis will gradually shift from government investment in social services and nonrevenue generating subsidy housing to new income generating commercial developments, job creation and concomitant tax base expansion
- Vibrant urban and rural towns with controlled development and land use management;

- Upgrading of the local existing public transport facilities;

### CONCEPT PLAN - Scenario 3



PLAN 35: Concept Plan (Scenario 3)

- Upgrading of all basic social and bulk infrastructure such as schools, housing, health care, safety and security facilities, roads, stormwater, electricity, sewerage and water. Increase in municipal revenue.

## Preferred Scenario

The preferred scenario is based on a consolidation of various aspects of two (2) scenarios. It aims to look at managed and guided developments to ensure that consideration is taken to sustainable development, as well as high-priority growth sectors which require urgent attention.

The aspects of the preferred growth scenario are as follows:

- Long term infrastructure projects aligning to the growth projections of the district
- Vibrant urban and rural towns with controlled development and land use management;
- Focus on the natural environment for economic growth
- Broad based government expenditure aimed at addressing social need in poverty-stricken areas;
- It makes provision for future growth and new housing developments
- More tax revenue is generated – creating more scope for social investment in low growth areas
- Addressing tourism potentials

### 3.F. Growth Projections

Population forecasting was a key factor in our determining our regions for intervention and investment. It has been found that information regarding population growth and demands are compiled regularly within local municipalities

Projected population and need of sustainable human settlements within the Amajuba District Municipality is based on an average growth scenario (1.25 % growth rate per annum, measured between 2011 - 2016),

Table 16 Total Population for Amajuba DM and LMs including Population Growth Rates (Source: Statistics SA)

Municipality	Census 2001 Total Population	Census 2011 Total Population	Growth Rate /10 Years (2001-2011)	Community Survey 2016 Total Population	Growth Rate /5 Years (2011-2016)
Newcastle	332 981	363 236	0.90%	389 117	1.42%
Dannhauser	102 779	102 161	-0.06%	105 341	0.62%
Emadlangeni	32 277	34 442	0.67%	36 869	1.40%
Amajuba	468 036	499 839	0.67%	531 327	1.25%

Through the Status Quo development, it has been outlined that the total Population for the Amajuba District Municipality is **531 327 people**. The following population is thus projected for the year 2041, using an average growth rate of 1.25% p/a for the Amajuba District Municipality.

Table 17: Amajuba DM Population Projection for 20 years per 5-year and 10-year intervals.

Year	2016	2021	2026	2031	2036	2041
<b>Growth Rate: 10 years (0.67%)</b>	516 809	534 355	552 497	571 255	590 650	610 703
<b>Growth Rate: 5 years (1.25%)</b>	531 327	565 375	601 605	640 157	681 179	724 830

### 3.G. Conceptual Framework

The conceptual Framework is a “blob diagram” framework plan for the study area which is based on the spatial vision and spatial objectives as indicated in the previous sections of this SDF. It indicates how the issues identified will be addressed spatially, based on potential objectives.

The conceptual framework should be a single drawing to allow for diagrammatic illustrations of “ideas/guidelines: to inform the SDF according to the guidelines unique opportunities should be indicated such as:

- General land use patterns;
- Key nodes and links;
- No-go areas for urban development;
- Agricultural and environmental protection; and
- Key areas for development.

A framework indicates basic planning principles to apply to achieve an ecological balance and to create a more rational cost effective and manageable spatial structure.

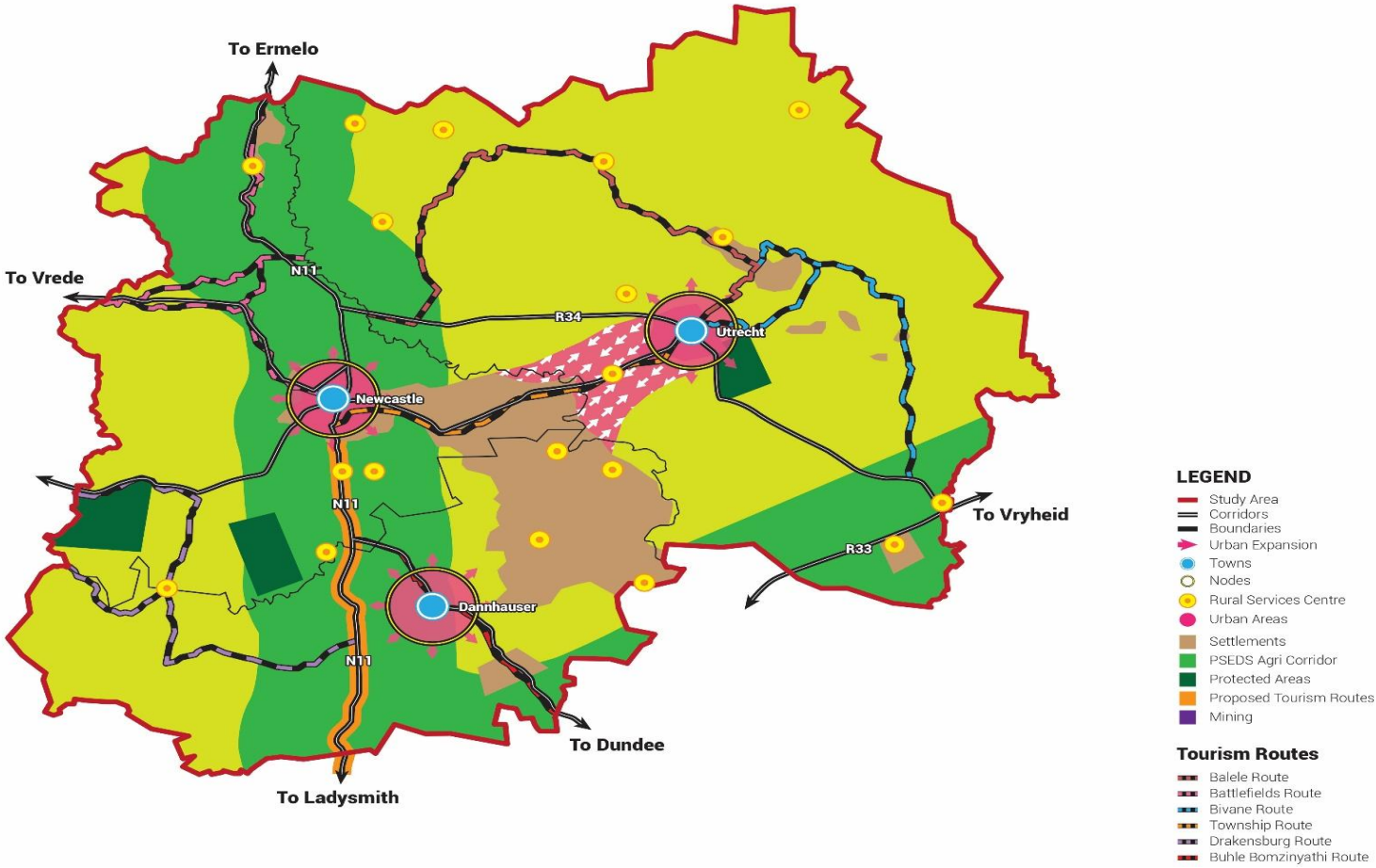
#### **The concept illustrates the following:**

- Towns, which are key areas to which urban development should be directed and where a higher intensity of land uses, and activities are supported.
- Environmental sensitive areas, which are typical “no go” areas for urban development.

- Mobility routes – mobility should be improved between urban and rural areas.
- Potential key economic sectors such as tourism, mining or agriculture
- The concept illustrates an agricultural corridor along the N11
- It shows the direction of growth within the district whilst showing the towns and the rural service centre

It is crucial that this urban-rural relationship be reinforced by strengthening existing urban centres on the one hand, and to diversify and protect agriculture and environmental resources on the other. A good road network is the essential link between urban and rural areas.

# CONCEPT PLAN



PLAN 36: Concept Plan

Through the Status Quo development, it has been outlined that the total Population for the Amajuba District Municipality is **531 327 people**. The following population is thus projected for the year 2041, using an average growth rate of 1.25% p/a for the Amajuba District Municipality.

**Table 2: Population by Gender for the Amajuba DM including LMs**

Municipality	Male	Female	%Male	%Female
Amajuba DM	330461	356947	48.1	51.9
Newcastle LM	243434	264276	47.9	52.1
Dannahuser LM	68839	73911	48.2	51.8
Emadlangeni LM	18189	18759	49.2	50.8

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

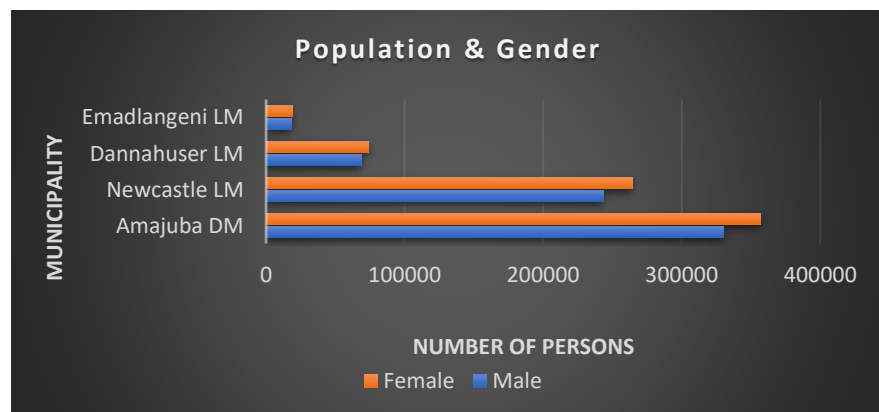


Figure 1: Population by Gender for the Amajuba DM including LMs by Number of People

**Table 3. Population by Age Group for the Amajuba DM including LMs**

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

Population Group	Amajuba DM		Newcastle LM		Dannahuser LM		Emadlangeni LM	
	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage
BLACK AFRICAN	634502	92.3	461500	90.9	139283	97.6	33718	91.3
COLOURED	5627	0.8	4468	0.9	487	0.3	671	1.8
INDIAN/ASIAN	20326	3	18423	3.6	1822	1.3	81	0.2
WHITE	25179	3.7	21776	4.3	955	0.7	2447	6.6
OTHER	1667	0.2	1437	0.3	200	0.1	29	0.1

Age Group	Amajuba DM Males	Amajuba DM Females	Newcastle LM Males	Newcastle LM Females	Dannhauser LM Males	Dannhauser LM Females	Emadlangeni LM Males	Emadlangeni LM Females
85+	658	1833	501	1274	109	419	49	140
80-84	1031	2575	774	1886	186	560	72	128
75-79	2048	4187	1506	3131	408	827	134	230
70-74	3890	6828	2813	5130	795	1375	282	323
65-69	6999	10386	5123	7736	1417	2099	459	551
60-64	8452	12782	6196	9610	1650	2432	606	740
55-59	9959	14142	7367	10557	1986	2822	606	763

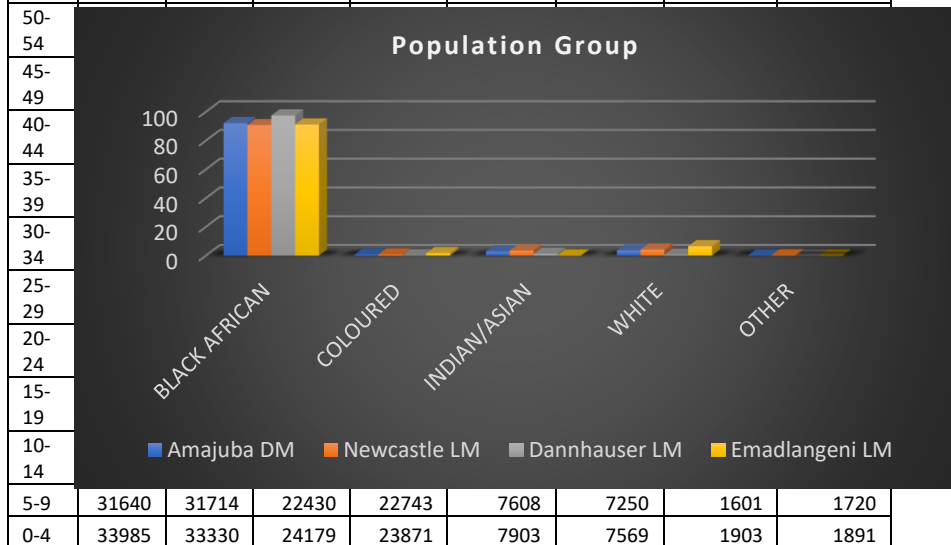


Figure 2: Population & Age Group for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Number of People

Table 5: Attendance at an educational institution (5-24 years) for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs

Attendance Status	Amajuba DM		Newcastle LM		Dannhauser		Emadlangeni LM	
	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage
Yes	191695	76.3	138539	76.4	43383	77	9772	73
No	59440	23.7	42910	23.6	12925	23	3605	26.9

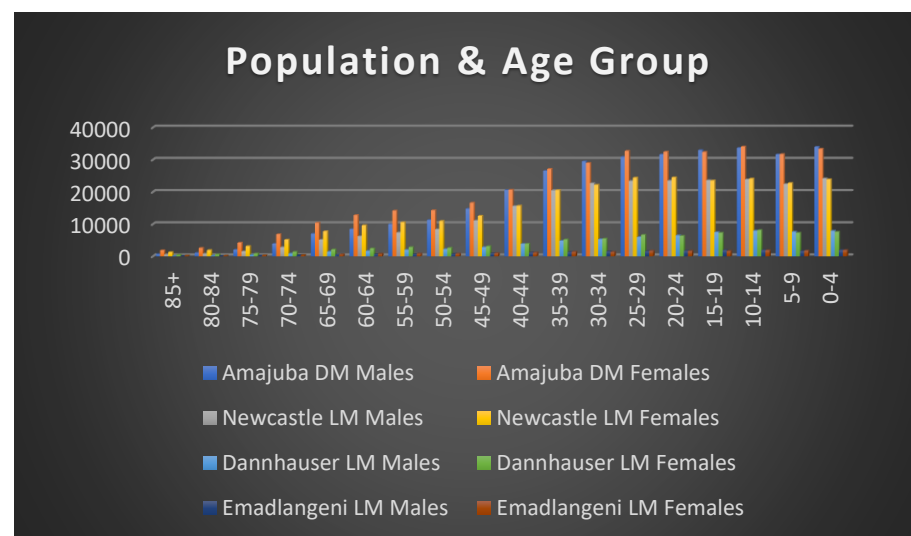


Table 4: Population Group for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

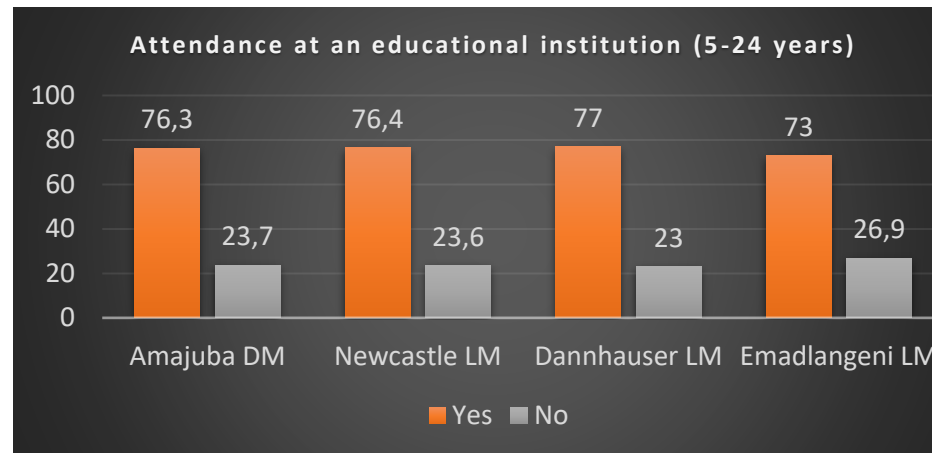
Figure 3: Population Group for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Percentage of People

**Table 6: Highest level of education (20+ years) for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs**

Education Level	Amajuba DM		Newcastle LM		Dannhauser LM		Emadlangeni LM	
	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage
No Schooling	20795	5.3	13616	4.6	4822	6.4	2357	11.2
Some Primary	32016	8.1	20437	6.9	8599	11.4	2980	14.1
Completed Primary	12241	3.1	8186	2.8	3123	4.1	932	4.4
Some Secondary	115384	29.2	82097	27.6	26537	35.0	6751	32
Grade 12/Std10	166640	42.2	132161	44.4	28090	37.1	6388	30.3
Higher Education	44625	11.3	38866	13.1	4164	5.5	1595	7.6
Other	2794	0.7	2297	0.8	404	0.5	93	0.4

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

Piped Water Access	Amajuba DM		Newcastle LM		Dannhauser LM		Emadlangeni LM	
	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage
Piped (tap) water inside the dwelling	77956	51.9	67994	58.2	64672	25.4	3496	43.7
Piped (tap) water inside the yard	56866	37.9	43945	37.6	11122	43.7	1798	22.5
Piped (tap) water on community stand	7758	5.2	2766	2.4	4231	16.6	761	9.5
No access to piped water	7659	5.1	2058	1.8	3659	14.4	1943	24.3



**Figure 4: Attendance at an educational institution (5-24 years) for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Percentage of People**

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

Dwelling Type	Amajuba DM		Newcastle LM		Dannhauser LM		Emadlangeni LM	
	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage
Formal dwelling	140442	93.5	112122	96	21783	85.5	6536	81.7
Traditional dwelling	6972	4.6	2503	1	3391	13.3	1079	13.5
Informal dwelling	2606	1.7	1958	7	276	1.1	372	4.7
Other	218	0.1	180	0.2	29	0.1	10	0.1

Figure 5: Highest level of education (20+ years) for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Percentage of People

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

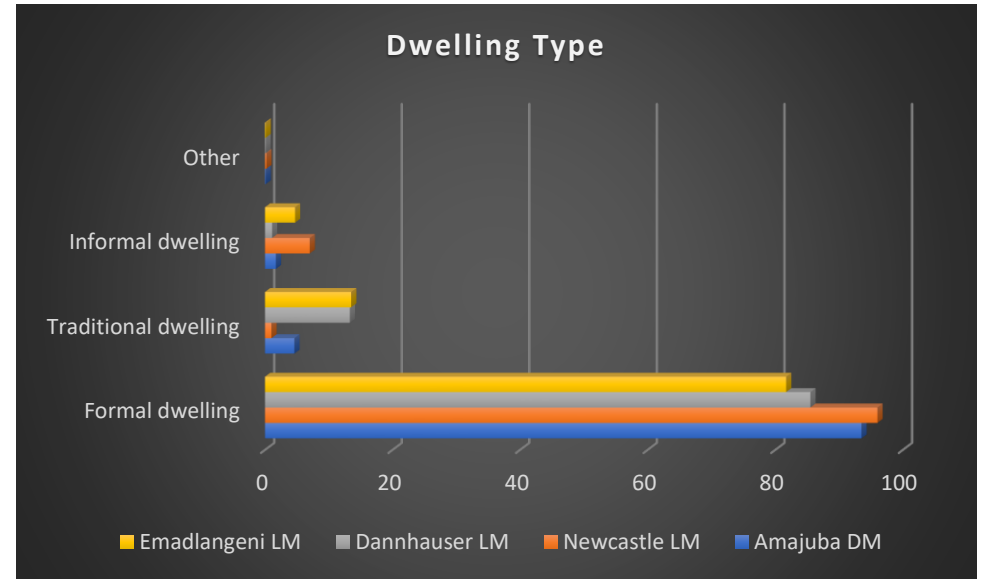
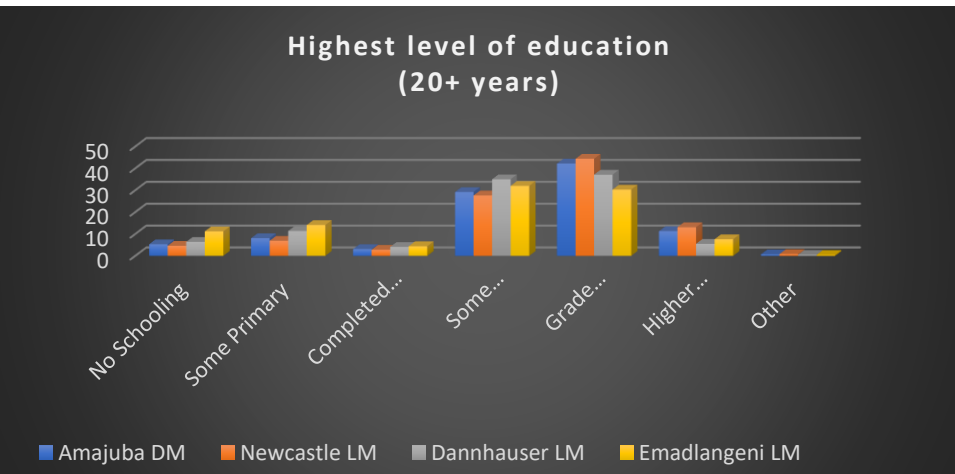


Figure 6: Dwelling Type for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Percentage of People

**Table 9: Main Toilet Facility for the Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs**

Toilet Type	Amajuba DM		Newcastle LM		Dannhauser LM		Emadlangeni LM	
	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage
Flush toilet	97796	65.1	88285	75.6	6069	23.8	3442	43
Chemical toilet	4264	2.8	2525	2.2	1267	5	472	5.9
Pit toilet	43312	28.8	22269	19.1	17344	68.1	3699	46.3
Bucket toilet	1332	0.9	1096	0.9	217	0.9	19	0.2
Other	1233	0.8	807	0.7	224	0.9	202	2.5
None	2302	1.5	1780	1.5	358	1.4	164	2

**Table 8: Access to Piped Water for the Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs**

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

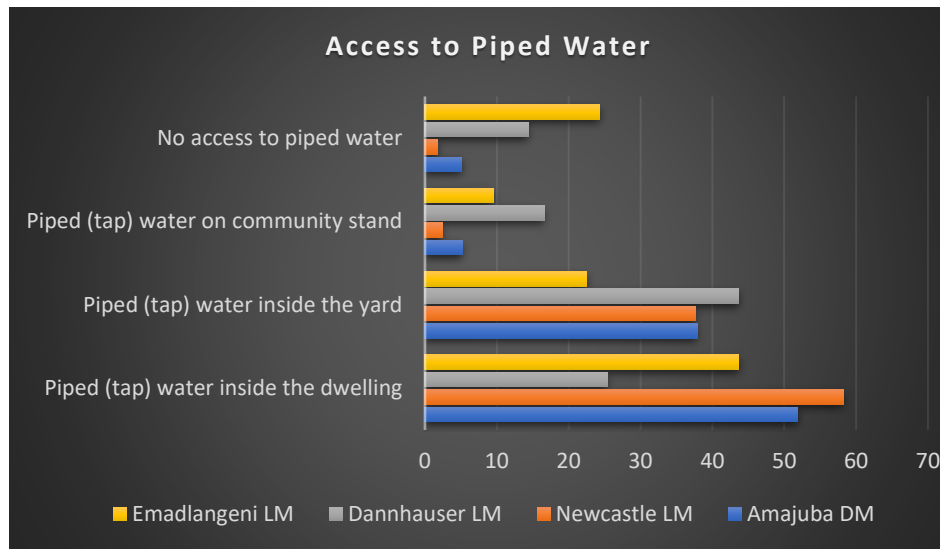
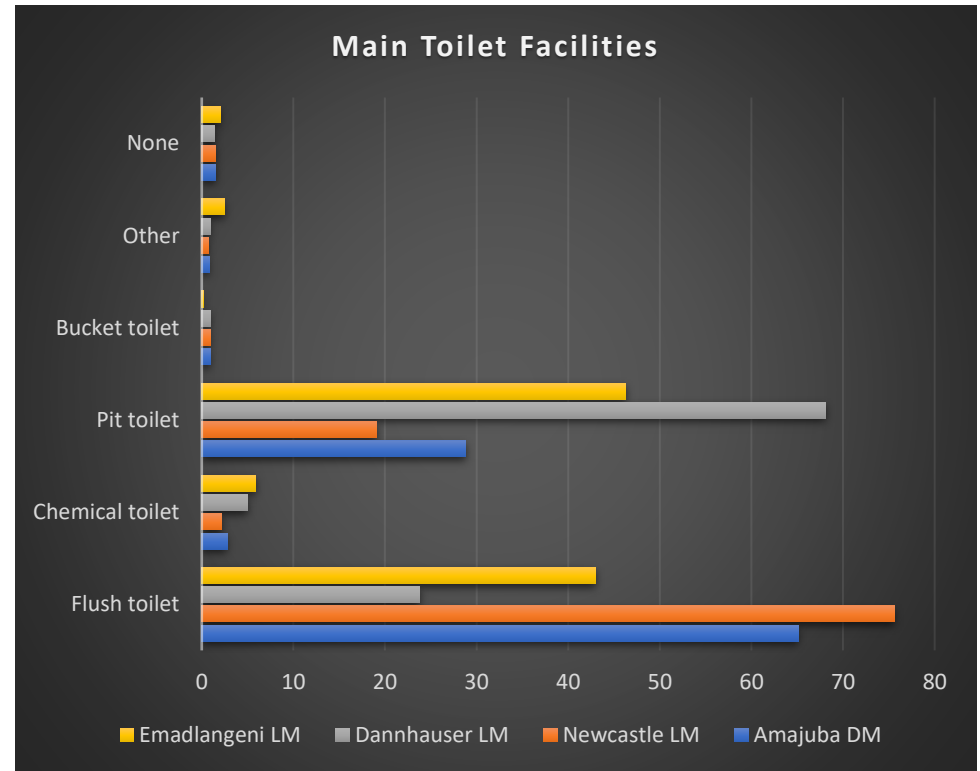


Figure 7: Access to Piped Water for the Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Percentage of People



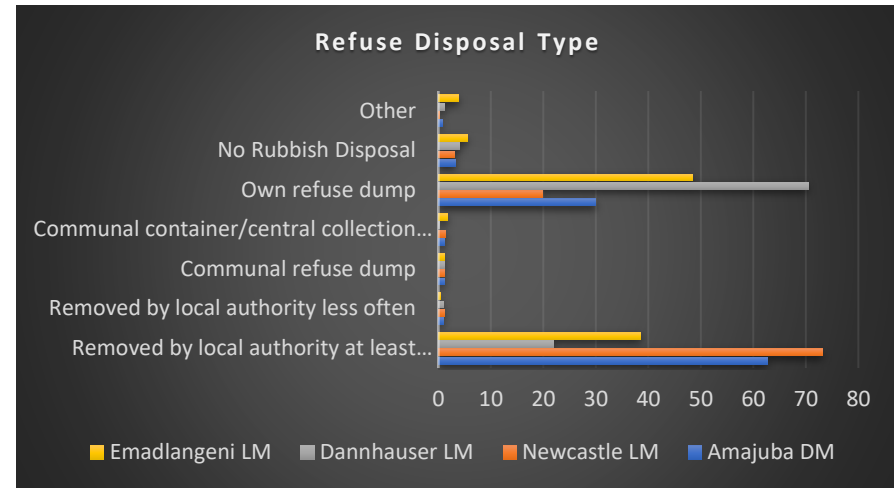
Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

Figure 8: Main Toilet Facility for the Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Percentage of People

**Table 10: Refuse Disposal Type for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs**

Refuse Removal Type	Amajuba DM		Newcastle LM		Dannhauser LM		Emadlangeni LM	
	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage
Removed by local authority at least once a week	94186	62.7	85515	73.2	5581	21.9	3090	38.6
Removed by local authority less often	1575	1	1295	1.1	240	0.9	40	0.5
Communal refuse dump	1717	1.1	1325	1.1	299	1.2	93	1.2
Communal container/central collection point	1785	1.2	1600	1.4	39	0.2	146	1.8
Own refuse dump	45015	30	23176	19.8	17966	70.5	3873	48.4
No Rubbish Disposal	4958	3.3	3460	3	1054	4.1	444	5.5
Other	1003	0.7	392	0.3	300	1.2	312	3.9

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>



**Figure 9: Refuse Disposal Type for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Percentage of People**

Table 11: Energy Source for Cooking for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs

Energy Source	Amajuba DM		Newcastle LM		Dannhauser LM		Emadlangeni LM	
	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage
Electricity from mains	114300	76.1	92899	79.6	18436	72.4	2965	37.1
Gas	25736	17.1	19781	16.9	3768	14.8	2188	27.4
Paraffin	2302	1.5	1632	1.4	558	2.2	112	1.4
Wood	5135	3.4	1867	1.6	687	2.7	2581	32.3
Coal	2103	1.4	253	0.2	1750	6.9	100	1.2
Animal dung	181	0.1	14	0	140	0.6	28	0.3
Solar	76	0.1	56	0	9	0	11	0.1
Other	153	0.1	65	0.1	85	0.3	4	0
None	252	0.2	197	0.2	45	0.2	10	0.1

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

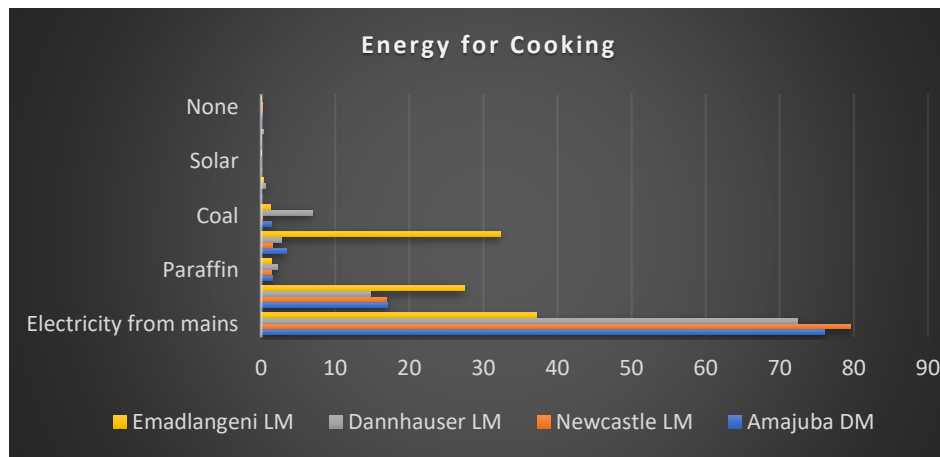


Figure 10: Energy Source for Cooking for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Percentage of People

Table 12: Energy Source for Lighting for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs

Lighting Source	Amajuba DM		Newcastle LM		Dannhauser LM		Emadlangeni LM	
	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage	Number	Percentage
Electricity from mains	142480	94.8	112793	96.6	23923	93.9	5764	72.1
Gas	176	0.1	116	0.1	37	0.1	23	0.3
Paraffin	403	0.3	289	0.2	77	0.3	37	0.5
Candles	5951	4	2906	2.5	1140	4.5	1905	23.8
Solar	912	0.6	429	0.4	228	0.9	255	3.2
Other	142	0.1	91	0.1	47	0.2	5	0.1
None	175	0.1	139	0.1	27	0.1	8	0.1

Source: Census 2022, Stats SA website: <https://census.statssa.gov.za/#/province/5/2>

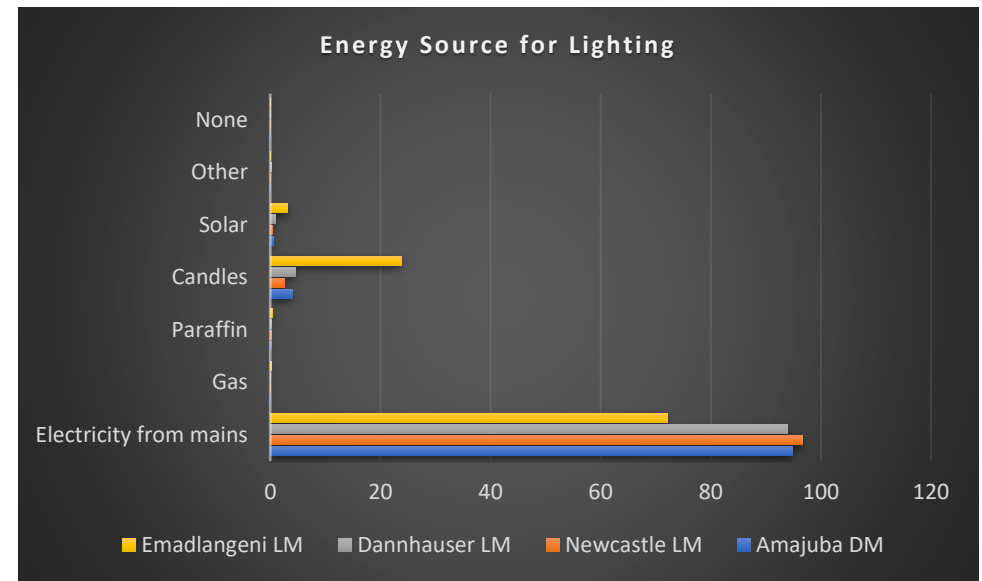


Figure 11: Energy Source for Lighting for Amajuba DM inclusive of LMs by Percentage of People

# SPATIAL STRUCTURING ELEMENTS

**Spatial Structuring Elements are defined key prominent features of the study area which the development of spatial proposals will be based on. They are embedded by the opportunities of study area and help structure the focus of the spatial proposals.**

In order to plan efficiently, there needs to be a focus on investing resources in areas of opportunity in order to create maximum impact, there needs to be certain structuring elements to give guidance to development and spatial planning.

Recognising the need to plan for the maximization of available human and natural resources within a context of achieving sustainability, there is a need to focus limited public resources in areas of opportunity in order to achieve maximum impact (return on investment – which may be either a real [economic] return or a positive social return). From a spatial planning perspective, this means using certain structuring elements to guide future planning.

For the Amajuba District Spatial Development Framework there are Seven (7) Spatial Structuring Elements that can guide spatial development and decision-making in the district and these elements include: -

- Nodes,
- Corridors
- Urban/ Settlement Edge
- Waterbodies
- Gateways
- Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs)
- Urban Revitalisation Areas Marginalized Townships

### 3.G.Nodes / Settlement Classification

**‘Nodes’ are generally described as “areas of mixed-use development, usually having a higher intensity of activities involving retail, transportation, office, industry and residential land uses.”**

These are the places where most interaction takes place between people and organisations, enabling most efficient transactions and exchange of goods and services. Nodes are usually located at interchanges to provide maximum access and usually act as catalysts for new growth and development.

Nodes are those places where people and transportation routes congregate. The goal of the district municipality is to have a **“compact, transit-orientated, pedestrian-friendly area where high concentrations of residential, employment, retail and other uses”** are located. Nodes are generally located where two or more transit routes intersect.

Major nodes are places where there is a perceived area of continuous activity surrounded by a building density that supports it, whereas minor nodes are areas where activity and density are anticipated to increase over time.

The areas of Groenvlei, Kingsley, Normandien, KwaMdakane, Hattingspruit serve as Rural Service centres as they contain most of the vital social facilities for the surrounding rural communities within the areas of Utrecht

and Dannhauser they serve as the focal point for Settlement/Community growth of these rural communities that they service.

The Kwazulu-Natal Spatial Development Framework outlines the following Settlement Classification to nodes within the province. The same distinction has been used for the ADM SDF to ensure alignment from the National, and Provincial plan through to the district plan.

**Regional Development Anchor:** The regional development anchors are also commonly referred to as the secondary cities within the province and identifies those strategic larger / significant towns and cities which should be prioritised and strengthened as key anchors or “engines” of the regional economy. These are also areas where significant future population growth is anticipated based on historical trends as well as the impacts of future targeted interventions in those areas.

**Small Towns:** Small Towns are centres that provide services to the local economy (as opposed to the regional and sub-regional economy) and addresses community needs.

**Small / Rural Service Centres:** Rural development must be supported through a hierarchical network of prioritised service centres where people in rural areas and settlements can optimally be provided with core municipal services, social and government services, and where rural logistics and support can be provided to optimally support rural development.

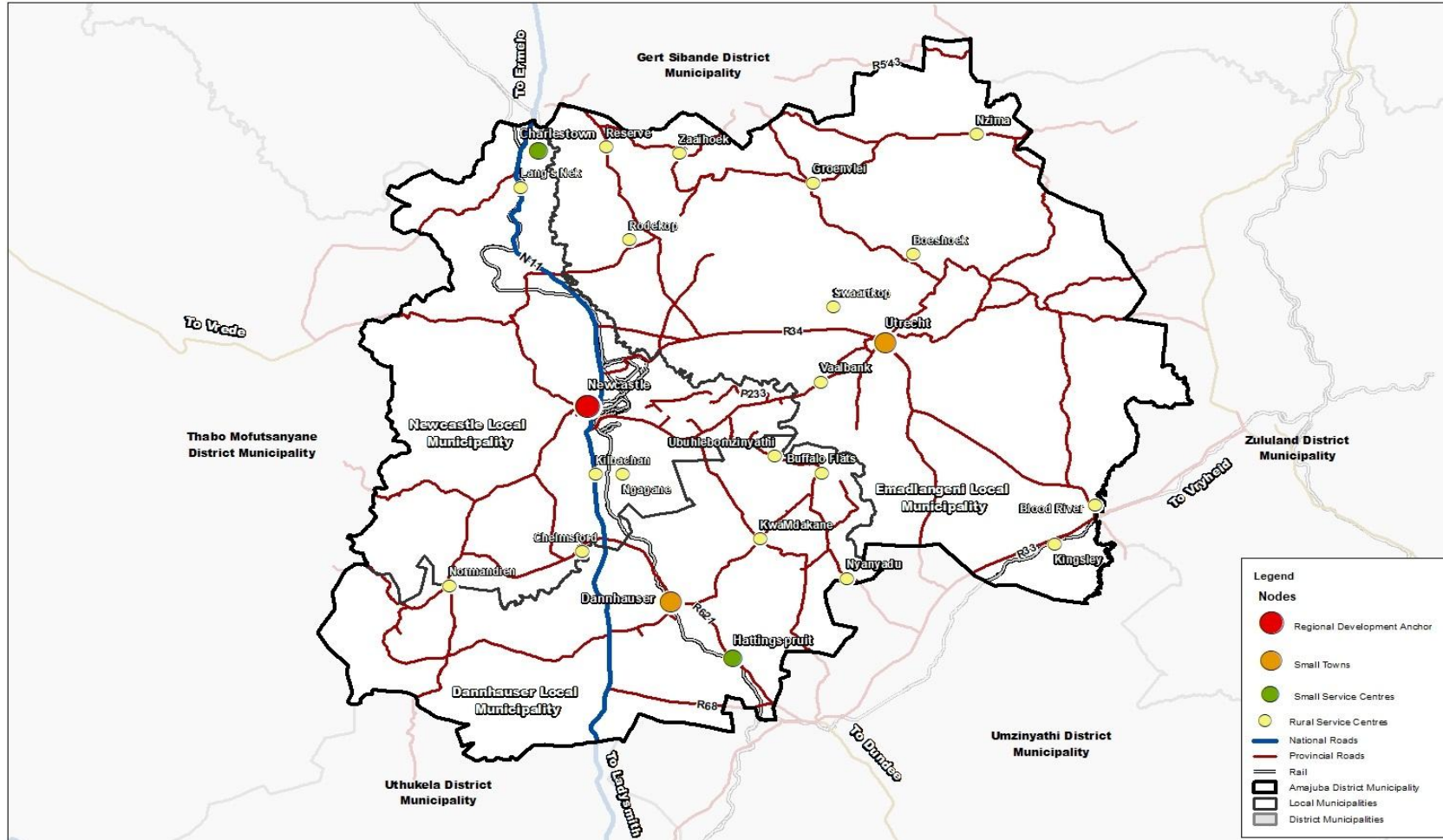
Table 18: Nodal Classification

Nodal Classification				
Settlement	NSDF	PSDF	2024/25 SDF	2024/27 SDF
<b>Newcastle / Madadeni / Osizweni</b>	National Urban Node	Regional Development Anchor	Regional Economic Centre	Regional Development Anchor
<b>Dannhauser</b>	Rural Service Centre	Small Town	Mining Hub	Small Town
<b>Utrecht</b>	-	Small Town	Agriculture Hub	Small Town
<b>Charlestown</b>	-	Small Service Centre	Rura Service Centre	Service Centre
<b>Hattingspruit</b>	-	-	Rural Service Centre	Service Centre
<b>Kingsley</b>	-	-	Rural Service Centre	Rural Service Centre
<b>Groenvlei</b>	-	-	-	Rural Service Centre
<b>Normandien</b>	-	-	-	Rural Service Centre
<b>KwaMdakane</b>	-	-	-	Rural Service Centre

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

NODES PLAN

1:500 000



**Legend**

**Nodes**

- Regional Development Anchor
- Small Towns
- Small Service Centres
- Rural Service Centres
- National Roads
- Provincial Roads
- Rail
- Amajuba District Municipality
- Local Municipalities
- District Municipalities



**MAY 2025**

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

## 3.H. Corridors

**A “Development Corridor” is normally used to symbolise the area where important economic activities are to be encouraged along a particular transport route.**

There is often difficulty in stakeholder perceptions regarding the term ‘corridor’ and the purpose of such planning tool. It is proposed that the use of the term ‘transport route’ be adopted in future because it places emphasis on the transportation activity, which is critical for economic clusters to grow in both urban and rural environments;

Development corridors are described in planning terms as **roads or railway routes that are usually associated with the movement of people between places**. This function of facilitating movement of people along a route also means that these “movement corridors” have the potential to accommodate development of different levels of intensity and a mix of land uses at certain points along the route.

What is important to understand, is that the corridor may not take the form of a continuous integrated band of activity. At points of highest access along the central spine, development will be more intense and of a higher order while at locations of lower access, lower intensity development or even part of a natural open space network may be found.

Corridors are aimed at improving:

- Efficiency in terms of mobility;
- Spatial transformation through connectivity;
- Economic, social, and environmental sustainability.

In terms of corridors and nodes, the PSEDS identifies the following:

- The PSEDS focuses fixed infrastructure investments in areas of economic development potential (whether realised or dormant) and prioritises areas of greatest need based on poverty densities.
- The PSEDS focuses its attention on activity/development corridors. These development corridors are not intended to be the basis for a transport logistics network. It is however essential that the development corridors are adequately served by appropriate transport and logistics infrastructure.
- From the classification of economic potential and the classification of poverty a matrix of development corridors and nodes has been identified which will serve to serve two functions. These functions include:
  - Facilitating the increased growth of existing centres and corridors of economic development in the province; and
  - To ensure that the potential for economic development within areas of high poverty

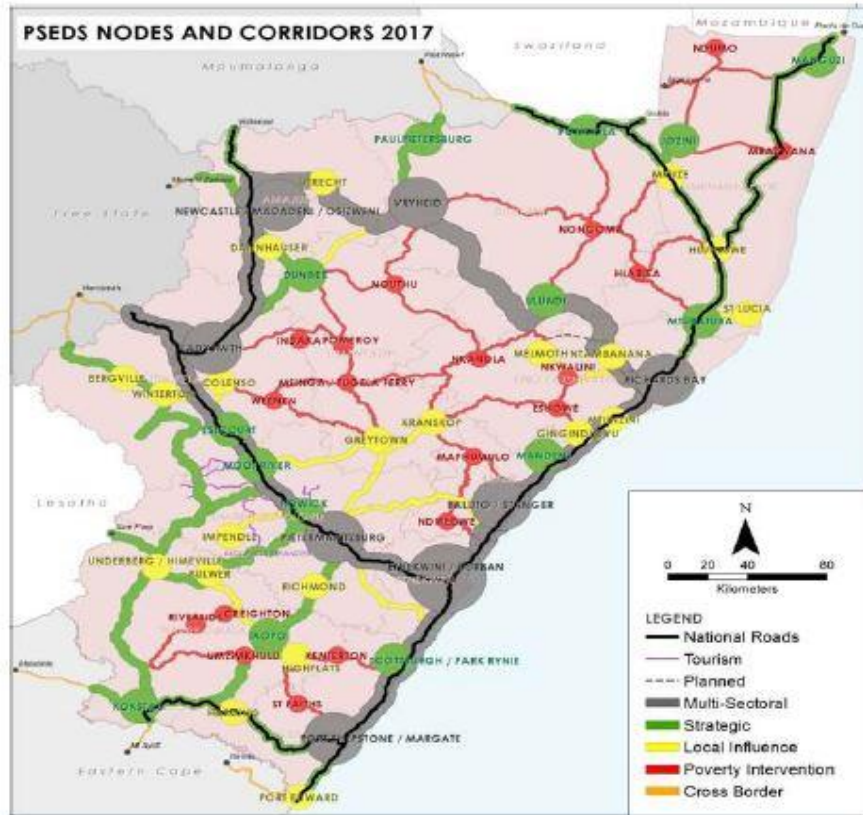


Figure 17: PSEDS Nodes and Corridors (Source: KZN PSEDS, 2017)

According to the KZN PSEDS, the N11 forms part of the Multi-Sectoral Corridor, which also is a Strategic corridor linking to Dundee

The KZN Provincial SDF, further identifies the R33 through Dundee as a Priority 3 movement route

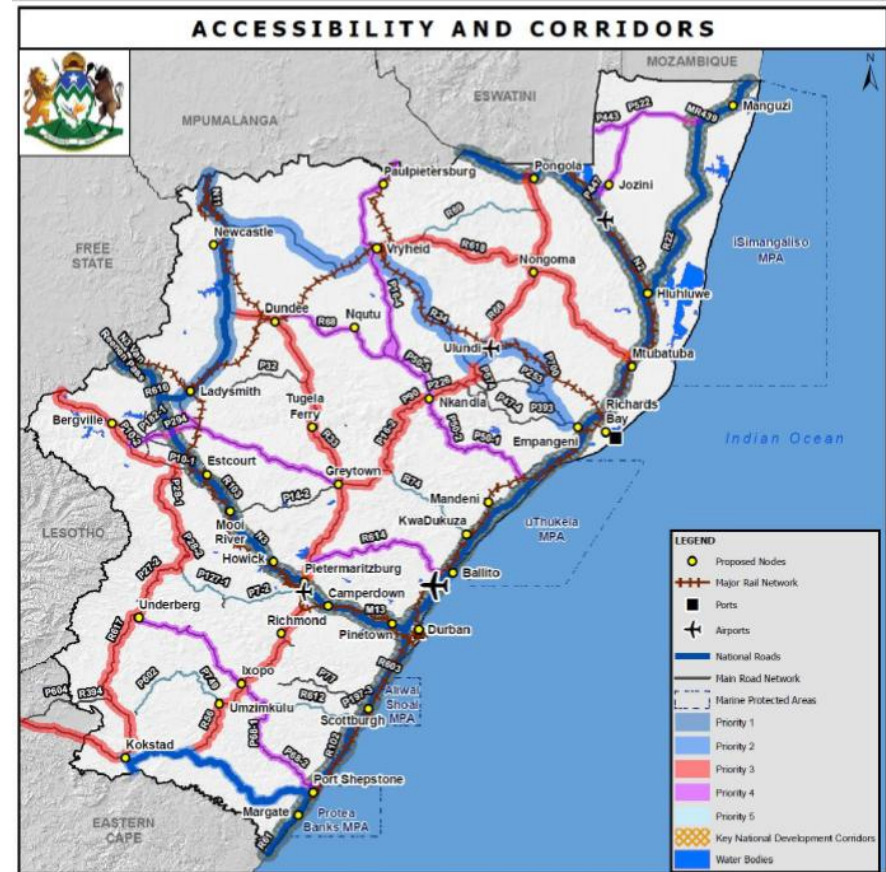


Figure 18: Accessibility and Corridors (Source: PSDF, 2021)

Primary corridors are aimed at functioning as key mobility routes that promote trade, commerce, and key linkages between other municipalities. The district municipality has the following primary corridors N11: Ermelo – Newcastle – Ladysmith. It is also known as the Priority 1 Corridor (PSDF, 2021).

Secondary corridors support the functions of the primary corridors while extending connectivity to local areas. The secondary corridors identified within the district municipality are the R34 from Newcastle that goes to join R33 going to Vryheid P233 from Vrede going to Utrecht. These corridors are also called Priority 2A and 2B respectively.

Tertiary corridors are aimed at promoting mobility and access within local settlements. These include the R621 from the N11 going to Hatingspruit. The corridor is also called the Priority 3 Corridor.

The R33 which traverses the District through Kingsley is termed the Priority 4 Corridor within the Context of Amajuba DM. It is, however, a strategic linkage route within a regional context, linking Dundee through to Vryheid.

The Clothing and textile industry is one of the major growing industries within the district and has been **earmarked for future expansion** by the provincial government through the N11 development corridor as one of the industries to boost the corridor and improve alignment and linkages between Ladysmith (uThukela district Municipality) and Newcastle (Amajuba District Municipality).

**Strategic VENE (Vryheid, Emadlangeni, Newcastle & Ermelo) Corridor**

the N11 to R34 linkage to the Zululand district is also of vital importance and have been earmarked for development by the provincial Cogta through the VENE Corridor development Plan as it connects the Town of Utrecht to Mpumalanga and Gauteng in the East and the Richards Bay ports hub through the Western.

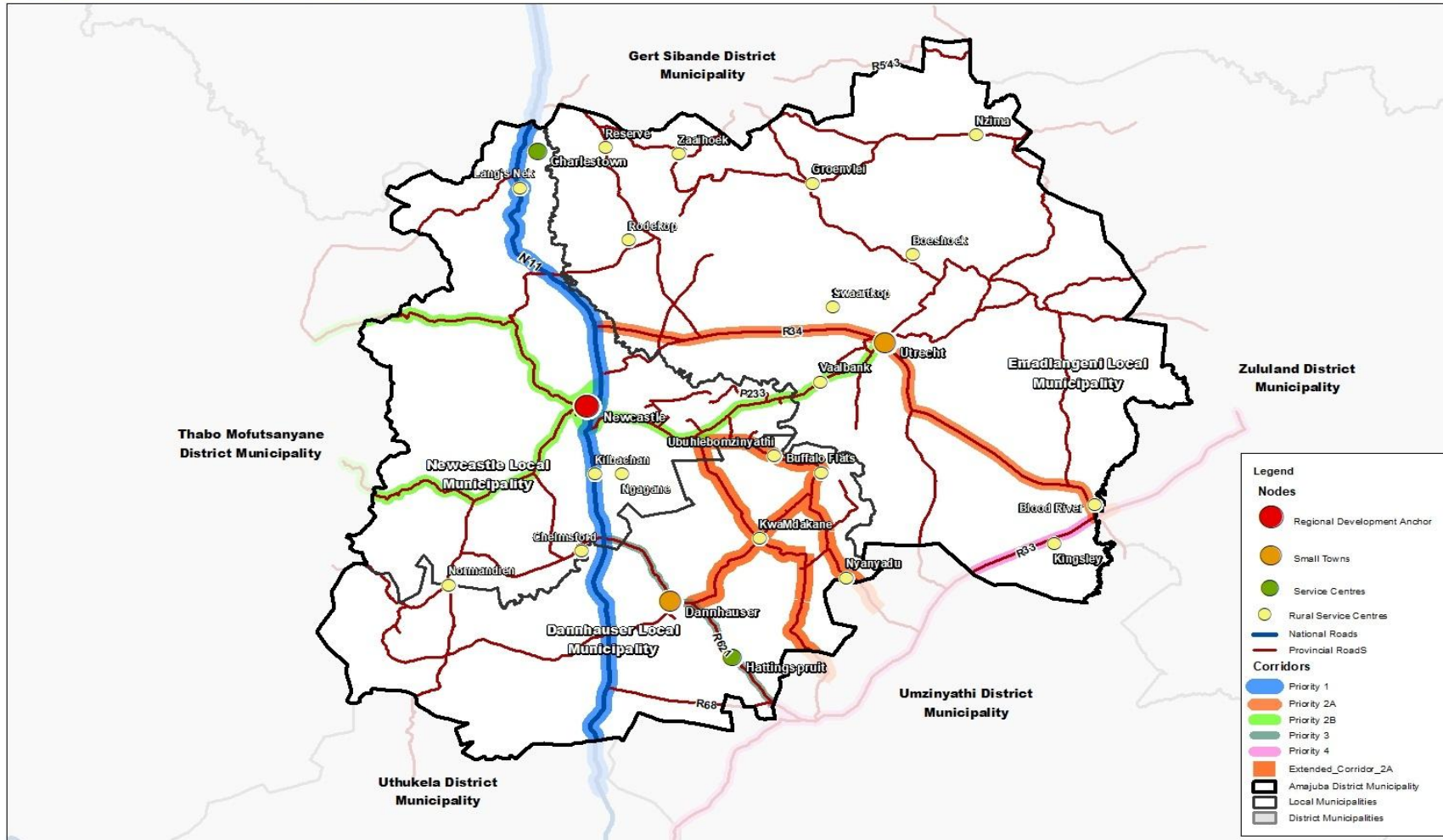
Table 19: Corridor Classification

Corridor Classification				
Settlement	NSDF	PSDF	2025/26 SDF	SDF 2024/27
<b>N11</b>	Key Regional Road	Priority 1	Primary Corridor	Priority 1
<b>R34</b>	-	Priority 2	Tertiary Corridor / Mixed Activity	Priority 2 A
<b>R33</b>	-	Priority 3	High Growth Region	Priority 4
<b>P233</b>	-	-	Secondary Corridor	Priority 2 B
<b>R621</b>	-	-	Tertiary Corridor / Mixed Activity	Priority 3

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

NODES AND CORRIDORS PLAN

1:500 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

### 3.I. Urban / Settlement Edge

A 'settlement edge' is the dividing line or boundary between areas of urban development (a settlement) and non-urban or rural development.

The Guideline set by Department of Rural Development Land Reform for the development of Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks specifies that an SDF should define urban edges around settlements. The delineation of an Urban Edge is vital for the achievement of Spatial Transformation, that is, the containment of urban sprawl, the intensification of development at designated localities, and the improved integration of urban areas. Beyond the Urban Services Edge, rural land uses, and densities are intended to be less intense. As a result, the Urban Edge focusses more on managing densities.

The DRDLR Guidelines for the development of Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks notes that peri-urban sprawl is a challenge because the increasing housing densities, often on communally owned land, are creating conditions which are too dense for successful rural livelihoods but not dense enough to sustain efficient convenient urban settlements. Peri-urban sprawl is thus considered unsustainable for both residents of peri-urban settlements and for the city. This also highlights the need for sufficient serviced land within urban areas.

Urban / settlement edge defines the logical boundary between areas with different features and purposes, such as the boundary between areas considered environmentally sensitive and those suitable for development.

Settlement edges are used to manage investment and characteristics of infrastructure levels according to the needs of communities and economic activities located within settlement edges or outside settlement edges; and are used to encourage more efficient use of underutilized land existing in a settlement or town, through development of vacant land or the re-use of "brownfield" degraded land areas.

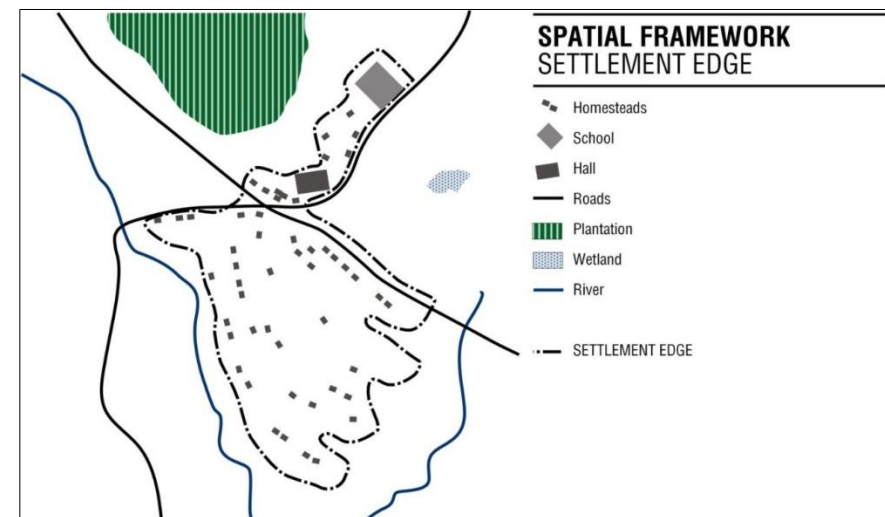


Figure 19: Settlement Edge Framework Example

Settlement edges are used to *manage investment* and *characteristics of infrastructure levels* according to the needs of communities and economic activities located within settlement edges or outside settlement edges; and

are used to encourage more efficient use of underutilized land existing in a settlement or town, through development of vacant land or the re-use of “brownfield” degraded land areas.

According to the Development Edges: A Settlement Typology Updated Approach and Data Report, 2015, prepared by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform, over the last decade, throughout the world, and in South Africa, there has been a new focus on approaches to managing urban growth. The acceptance and use of a number of planning concepts has received widespread support. Many of these concepts and practices are not necessarily new, but they have become part of an integrated toolbox of concepts addressing common approaches.

These approaches are responses to a number of concerns and the need to address a growing awareness of the interrelatedness of issues. The undesirable features that were identified were:

- Urban sprawl, which has several dimensions, unlimited outward and "leapfrog" expansion, as well as being extremely low density.
- Large scale conversion of open space and environmentally sensitive land to urban uses
- Promote Spatial Transformation and restructure growth patterns
- Density built environments;
- Lead and guide growth expectations;
- Worsening traffic congestion
- Costly requirements to expand roads and other infrastructure
- Conversion of valuable agricultural land to urban uses.

- Protect the finances of the city as required in terms of SPLUMA Principle 7(b)(i) by rationalising service delivery areas to ensure a sustainable level of service provision

**The following goals will be achieved through the identification of development/ settlement edges: -**

- Achieving Balance (There are two dimensions to this concept of balance.)
- Achieving a Dynamic Balance between the Landscapes of Society
- Achieving Greater Urban Efficiencies
- Protecting Important Elements within Urban Settlements
- Promoting Small-Scale Agriculture
- Managing Urban Wastes
- Issues of Sustainability and Recycling
- Co-ordination of Line and Point Bulk Services to Achieve Efficiencies
- Avoiding Hazards
- Limiting the outward extension of new developments
- Raising densities in both new and existing areas
- Emphasizing public transport
- Creating what is called “sustainable” development (development that limits consumption of resources and is maintainable into the future)

**The approaches to achieve these directives included concepts such as: -**

- The need to create compact cities that facilitate the provision of efficient infrastructure and transportation;
- The need to be ecologically sensitive;
- The need to manage, direct, or limit urban growth, and the tool used to do this is to create an “Urban Edge”, which is also called an Urban Growth Boundary.

**Growth Pressures: -**

- This is the most important factor in sizing the Urban Growth Boundary.
- Anticipated growth must have sufficient capacity within an urban growth boundary - if growth is high, then the urban growth boundary must be “roomy”; otherwise, there is a need to change it quite soon. If growth is low, then urban growth boundary can be tight.
- The Urban Growth Boundary must be related to anticipate growth pressures in terms of both amount and direction.

**Potential for Growth Deflection: -**

- Constrained Urban Edges will tend to push growth elsewhere.
- This could be planned to direct growth towards a particular area, and if it is possible to where an adjacent authority will respond to the opportunities, otherwise development could be scattered and /or leapfrogged.

- If an adjacent area is planned then this will not occur, but this depends on the potential for “deflection”.

**Protection of Agricultural Land: -**

- High quality agricultural land will determine a tight and firm edge
- Low quality agricultural land will permit inclusion within urban growth boundary

**Infrastructure Capacity: -**

- Limits to the provision of infrastructure will constrain an urban edge and is often a key factor,
- Infrastructure provision is large scale and done over a long period and urban edges need a long-term horizon.
- An urban edge will remain in place for lengthy periods and then large areas are included as capacity is extended or alternatives are available.
- Urban Growth Boundaries can be flexible or be adjusted at regular periods.

**Fiscal Capacities and Fiscal Strength: -**

- Strong income base will support expansion

In terms of the transformation of human settlements, key objectives are to ensure that people live closer to their places of work and have access to better quality transport. Proposed actions in this regard include:

- Develop a strategy for densification of cities and resource allocation to promote better-located housing and settlements.
- Substantial investment to ensure safe, reliable, and affordable public transport.
- Introduce spatial development framework and norms, including improving the balance between location of jobs and people.

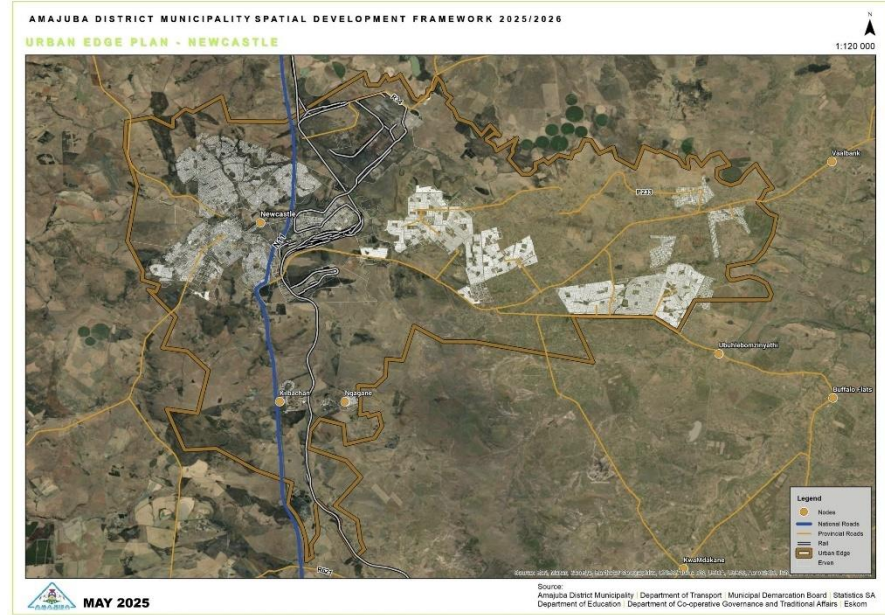
Conduct a comprehensive review of the grant and subsidy regime for housing with a view to ensure diversity in product and finance options that would allow for more household choice and greater spatial mix and flexibility.



PLAN 39: Dannhauser Urban Edge



PLAN 40: Hattingspruit Urban Edge



PLAN 41: Newcastle Urban Edge

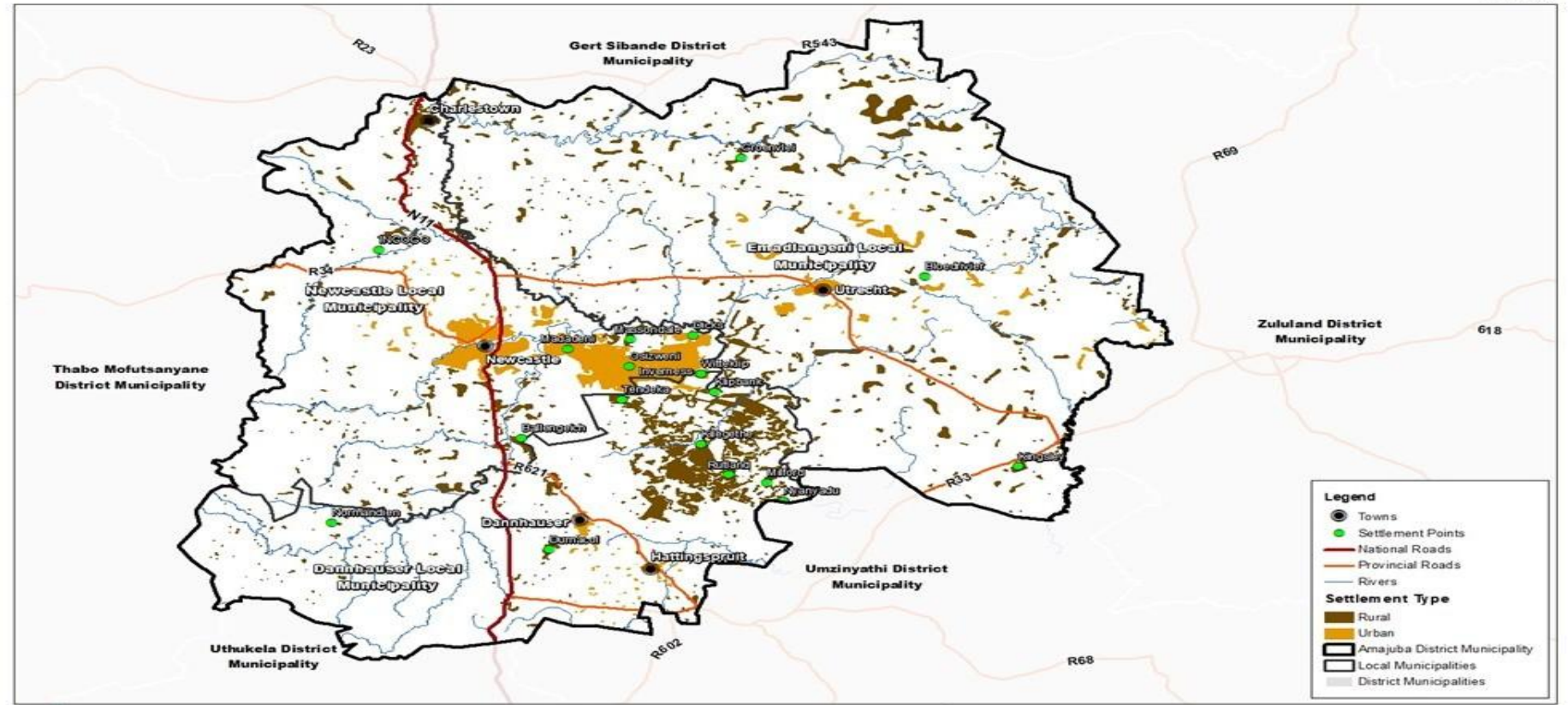


PLAN 42: Utrecht Urban Edge

# AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 25/26

## SETTLEMENT PATTERNS PLAN

1:470 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA  
 Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 43: Settlement Patterns Plan

## 3.J. Natural Features

The Amajuba District Municipality has five rivers namely Buffalo, Ncandu, Ngagane, Uthukela Uphongolo. The rivers within the municipal's jurisdiction are the main water sources for domestic water supply and agricultural activities. The Buffalo River is the major system in the Amajuba District, draining in to the UThukela River. The Ncandu and Ngagane rivers are the main tributaries in the district. The Ngagane River catchment is said to have fairly good quality water, however pollution problems have been cited such as high salinity and metal salts caused by mining and industries. The district has an extensive system of rivers and tributaries, with those in the Emadlangeni Municipality forming the headwaters of the Uphongolo River.

This resource is important to the tourism industry, mining, irrigation and settlement areas. Water resources need to be carefully managed.

A Critical Biodiversity Area (CBA) is a natural / pristine or semi-natural feature, habitat or landscape that stretches across the terrestrial, aquatic and marine environments that is considered critical for:

- Meeting national and provincial biodiversity targets and thresholds.
- Assists in safeguarding certain areas in the landscape that are required to ensure the persistence and functioning of species, ecosystems as well as the delivery of ecosystem goods and services
- Preserving habitats that are important for biodiversity or rare species

Large natural areas, which covers the majority of the municipal area, are more likely to remain intact with lower influences of “edge-effects” from adjacent land uses. Intact areas will support ecosystem processes and functionality, which in turn improves biodiversity conservation.

Conversely, land use transformation and impacts from anthropogenic influences increase the probability of “edge effects” on important biodiversity areas.

## 3.K. Gateways

As a planning tool gateway are intended celebrate an entrance and to increase the legibility of the city and serve to welcome visitors to the city. Gateways are normally developed with appropriate land uses and finished with an effective Urban Design treatment. The following Gateway areas are proposed:

- Entrance into the province on the N11
- All key nodes – key intersections of activity
- Entrance to all towns

## 3.L. Urban Revitalisation Areas

### Marginalized Townships

Rural development has been placed high on government's agenda for most of the State of Nation Addresses. The formulation of comprehensive rural development policy, with coordinated implementation by all spheres of government has been significantly lacking, therefore, the Regeneration Strategy is current and aligned to goals set out by international and regional development goals.

A concept which is been introduced to the study is that of "livelihoods planning". This aims to ensure that planning is centered around people and people are centered around planning. Such an approach is also focused on developing land use systems so that it fulfils a relevant purpose particularly in our poorer regions of both urban and rural space. Employing such an

approach is intended to ensure that cultural and communal zones form an integral component of a land use scheme.

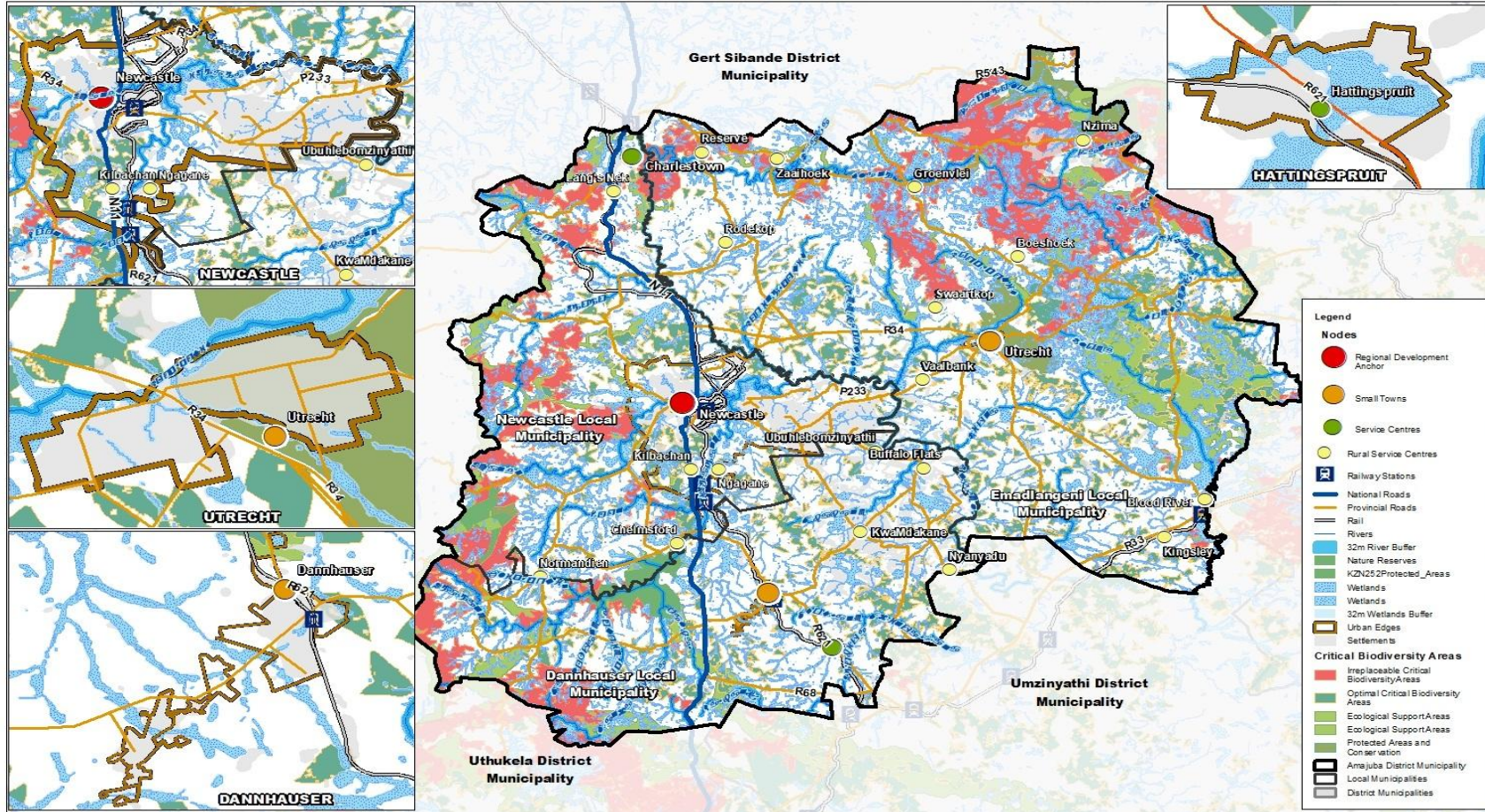
The aim of the Small-Town Regeneration Strategy is as follows;

- To address poverty in small towns
- To address economic marginalization
- To address imbalances caused by spatial deficiencies
- To build a more inclusive society and economy
- To increase the number of people who are in sustainable economic activities

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

SPATIAL STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS

1:500 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 44: Spatial Structuring Elements

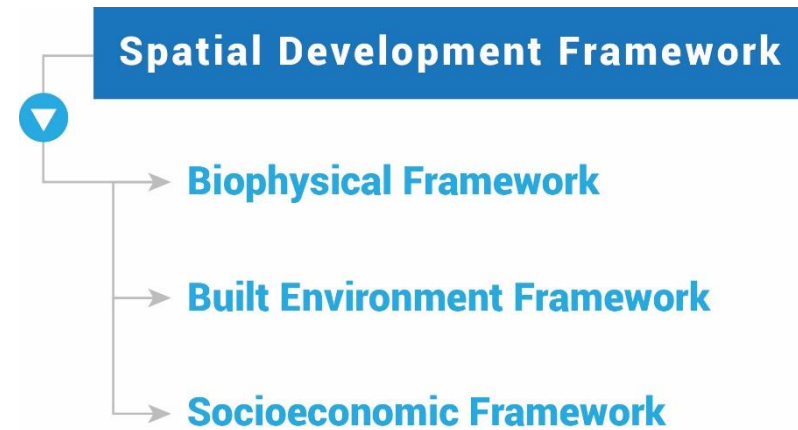
# SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

**A Spatial Development Framework is a framework that seeks to guide overall spatial distribution of current and desirable land uses within a district municipality in order to give effect to the vision, goals and objectives of the district IDP**

A Spatial Development Framework is a framework that seeks to guide overall spatial distribution of current and desirable land uses within a municipality, in order to give effect to the vision, goals and objectives of the district IDP

The development of the Spatial Development Framework is derived from the outcome of the Spatial Analysis and the feedback from the workshoping sessions regarding the key issues faced by various departments who operate within the space.

**The structure of this chapter will be detailed as follows**



# BIOPHYSICAL FRAMEWORK

There are four (4) different types of conservation areas that can be found within the Amajuba District Municipality area:

- River Systems
- Dams
- Critical Biodiversity Areas
- Threatened Eco-systems

*River systems* can be defined as the whole natural water system in a drainage basin. Rivers are an important feature of most landscapes, acting as the principal mechanism for the transport of weathered debris away from upland areas and carrying it to lakes and seas, where much of the classic sediment is deposited. River systems can also be deposition, accumulating sediment within channels and on floodplains.

*A dam* is a barrier that stops or restricts the flow of water or underground streams. Reservoirs created by dams not only suppress floods but also provide water for activities such as irrigation, human consumption, industrial use, aquaculture, and navigability.

*Critical Biodiversity Areas* are areas required to meet biodiversity targets for ecosystems, species, and ecological processes, as identified in a systematic biodiversity plan. Ecological Support Areas are not essential for

meeting biodiversity targets but play an important role in supporting the ecological functioning of Critical Biodiversity Areas and/or in delivering ecosystem services. Critical Biodiversity Areas and Ecological Support Areas may be terrestrial or aquatic.

*Threatened Eco-systems* are considered threatened if they are small or shrinking, if life-support systems like soil are being lost, or if crucial processes such as predator-prey relationships are being disrupted. Combining these measures gives an estimate of how likely the ecosystem is to collapse within the next 50 years.

## 4.A. Environmental Guidelines

Owing to the increasing population, urban expansion and development is inevitable. However, urban expansion encroaches upon habitats with potentially high diversity as well as on land with high agricultural potential. Strategic land use planning in Amajuba District Municipality need to be based on information as contained in the Environmental Studies, discouraging development in environmentally sensitive areas while earmarking other, more suitable areas for development.

The urban concentrations of Amajuba District Municipality are characterized by several river systems near the respective towns. These systems need to be protected from pollution and encroachment by formal developments.

### Formal Residential:

Homeowners will be encouraged to create indigenous gardens within existing residential areas.

Proposed new residential areas will be evaluated, based on their potential impact, whether positive or negative, on the environment. "Environment" in this sense of the word includes the natural, economic, and social environment as well as the general sense of place. Residential development in environmentally sensitive areas with high agricultural potential will be discouraged.

Areas not suitable for residential development due to geological, hydrological, and other constraints such as a lack of infrastructure need to

be identified. "No-Go" areas will be "red flagged" and development role players will be made aware of this upfront

Sufficient open space areas need to be retained within new residential developments and where possible kept natural. Landowners should be encouraged to maintain their properties and keep them as natural and indigenous as possible, creating linkages with neighbouring properties and therefore establishing a natural habitat potential in the area. Where possible, natural habitats should not be disturbed.

### Informal Residential:

The growth of existing informal settlements and the establishment of new settlements need to be avoided at all costs. These settlements have a negative impact due to the lack of infrastructure and basic services. Pollution in these areas is generally high. It is therefore important that these areas be formalized and that, where possible, basic services be provided.

Education, especially about the impact of pollution on the natural and social environment, should be encouraged and facilitated, informing these communities of the possible impacts and how to address these in a responsible manner. Education will contribute to the general upliftment of these communities.

### Industrial / Commercial:

A desired environment should include an area free of or within minimum pollution (air, water, noise, ground). Industries need to be restricted to these

areas earmarked for such purposes. Non-agricultural related industrial activities on farms and agricultural holdings should be discouraged.

Strict pollution mechanisms should be implemented and adhered to, especially in sensitive areas such as along water courses. Environmental Management Plans need to be formulated for all industries and will be monitored on a regular basis by an appointed and dedicated environmental management officer (EMO).

#### Bulk Infrastructure:

Engineering services within the district should be of an adequate standard before any new developments or densification may be permitted. Services such as water reticulation and waste management (sewage disposal, solid waste) are particularly important.

The desired environment will be one where all urban and rural areas in the district are serviced sufficiently with water, sanitation, electricity, waste, and stormwater management. Impacts of new service infrastructure on the environment need to be investigated before such infrastructure is installed. It will need to ensure that Sewerage Treatment Works (Water Care Works) and landfills have sufficient capacity to accommodate new developments to avoid pollution in all forms.

#### Indigenous Vegetation

Harvesting of indigenous vegetation such as medicinal plants and firewood for domestic purposes is permissible in all ecological systems. The

harvesting of medicinal plants should be restricted to removal of parts of a given plant only such as bark, leaves, or roots.

Removal of whole plants is not recommended in protected areas. Harvesting of firewood may occur in all ecological systems. However, firewood harvesting should be restricted to dry, dead, and fallen branches or trees only. There should be no removal of living branches or trees in protected areas. Areas Identified as Limited Development Areas.

Limited development areas are those areas which (although are sensitive) may be open to specific types of developments which would not jeopardize the ecological or conservation integrity of no-go areas. In other words, environmental impacts resulting from the development of such areas, if any, should be limited and readily manageable. Thus, any development in such areas must be subjected to rigorous environmental impact study.

#### Environment

Climate change is a significant global concern. Traditional livestock farming e.g., cattle farming has a major impact on climate change. The practice of cattle farming is also vulnerable during drought events. Game such as buck are more resilient to drought. The district is currently facing major water shortages due to drought and lack of sufficient water storages.

Areas that are protected formally within the municipal area include areas around the **Ntshingwayo Dam**. Other areas of high conservation significance include all the wetlands and areas up to 30m around these wetlands and 100m from the banks of all rivers within the various catchments.

The formal conservation areas within the district are **Ntshingwayo Resort Game Park**, **Ncandu Nature Reserve / Incandu Forest Reserve** and National Monuments. There are areas of natural forest, which have been identified as of 'intermediate' value in a SEA conducted at the province. These include the areas of **Amajuba Forest** south of Charlestown, **Ncandu Forest** on the western border of the district, areas to the south of Donkerhoek on the western border of the district and Area's north of Emadlangeni. There are several registered conservancies in the Amajuba district. Some of these have been developed with the tourism sector in mind, while others are purely for conservation purposes.

#### Environmental Impact Assessments/ Authorisation:

NEMA requires that certain activities need an application for environmental authorisation before commencing such activities. Some of the activities which could trigger the need for environmental authorisations include:

- Most development activities within protected areas as well as within a 5-10km radius of protected areas.
- Development within a watercourse or within 32 metres from the watercourse
- Removal of natural vegetation
- The construction of bulk service pipelines
- Constructing within areas zoned for open space
- The construction or planning of roads
- Railway lines

- Facilities for agri-industrial purposes outside of appropriately zoned areas
- Mining
- Facilities for the concentration of animals and livestock that exceed certain thresholds
- Aquaculture
- The transformation of undeveloped, vacant, or derelict land if the development exceeds certain thresholds

#### Wetlands:

It is recommended that a 100m ecological buffer zone (no development) around wetlands be used as a guide when informing developments located within the study area. This buffer zone will assist in the continuation of the wetland's ecological functioning and protection of natural resources. The width of the buffer zone will depend on the nature and scale of the development.

Developments within 500m of wetlands will be required to apply for a Water Use License under the National Water Act. It is also recommended that no development be allowed within the 1:100-year flood line of rivers and streams or at least 100m where no flood line exists. The National Water Act also requires an application for a water use license to be submitted to the Department of Water and Sanitation for the following activities:

- Road Crossings over a river
- Sewer Crossings over a river
- Potable water pipe crossings over a river

- Attenuation in a river channel
- Attenuation in a wetland
- Housing within a 500m radius of a wetland
- Sewers within a 500m radius of a wetland
- Potable water pipes within a 500m radius of a wetland
- Roads within a 500m radius of a wetland
- Sewage pump station

#### Open Space:

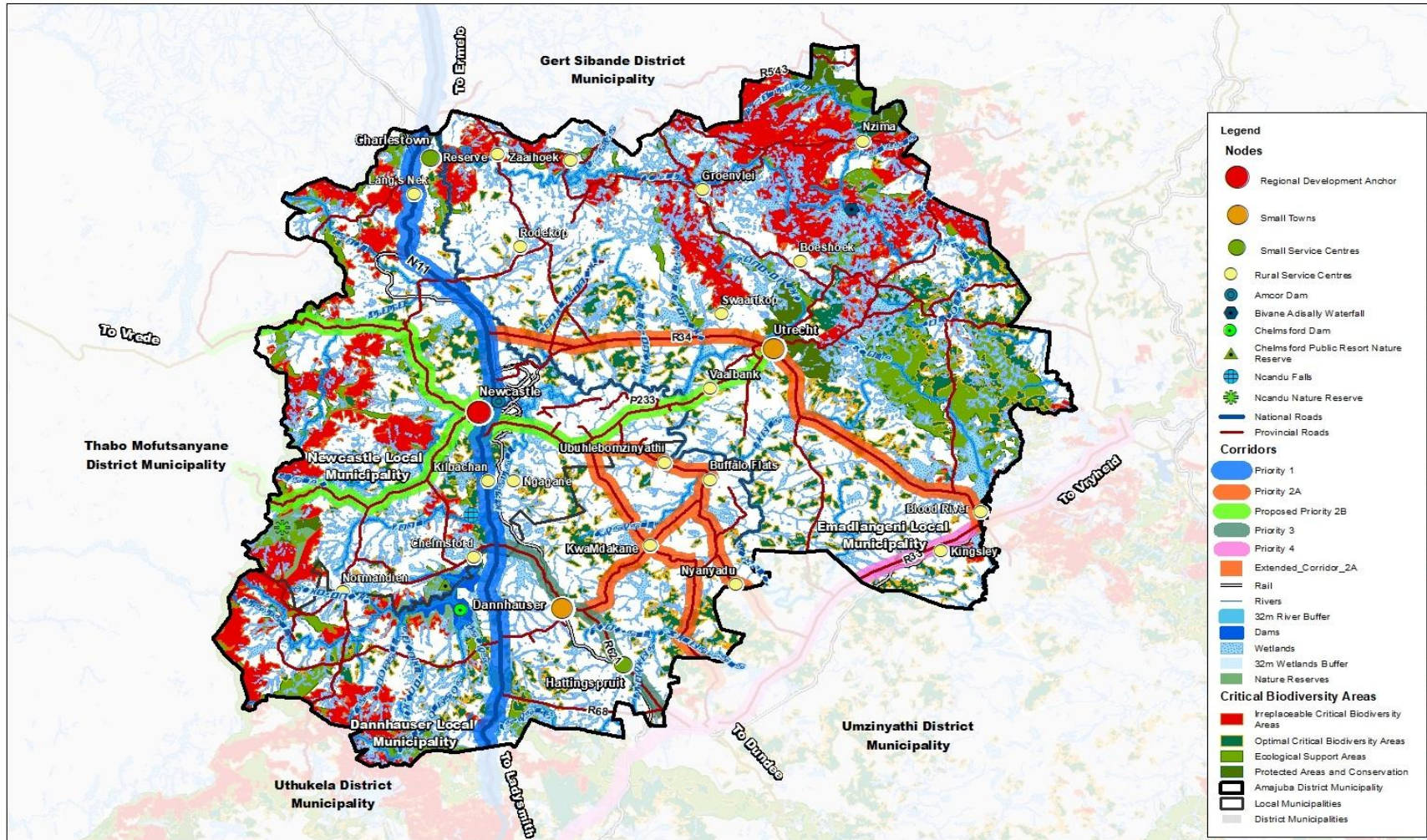
Natural open spaces protect and maintain the ecological integrity of natural ecosystems. Open spaces play an important role in the social, mental, and physical wellbeing of residents and wildlife. Open spaces also protect the natural visual quality of the area and maximizes the area's attractiveness, liveability, investment, and tourism potential of the area. It is recommended that valuable environmental components and their buffers be zoned as open space. These areas include:

- Wetlands, dams, rivers, streams, watercourses (and their buffers)
- Endangered ecosystems
- Forests (minimum 50m buffer)
- Mountains and ridges

# AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

## BIO - PHYSICAL FRAMEWORK PLAN

N  
1:500 000



**Legend**

**Nodes**

- Regional Development Anchor
- Small Towns
- Small Service Centres
- Rural Service Centres
- Amcor Dam
- Bivane Adisally Waterfall
- Chelmsford Dam
- Chelmsford Public Resort Nature Reserve
- Ncandu Falls
- Ncandu Nature Reserve

**Corridors**

- Priority 1
- Priority 2A
- Proposed Priority 2B
- Priority 3
- Priority 4
- Extended\_Corridor\_2A
- Rail
- Rivers
- 32m River Buffer
- Dams
- Wetlands
- 32m Wetlands Buffer
- Nature Reserves

**Critical Biodiversity Areas**

- Irreplaceable Critical Biodiversity Areas
- Optimal Critical Biodiversity Areas
- Ecological Support Areas
- Protected Areas and Conservation
- Amajuba District Municipality
- Local Municipalities
- District Municipalities



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

## 4.B. Agriculture

The importance of agriculture cannot be underestimated as an informal rural based activity. When consideration is taken of rural based agriculture, the sector becomes an integral component of the Local Economic Development (LED) landscape, through its ability to provide for community livelihoods, generating employment and fighting endemic poverty in the area.

It is also believed that through the right kinds of investments, the huge potential of the agricultural sector can be better harnessed. These include plans for new dams and associated water supply systems, which can open up opportunities for large-scale commercial irrigation projects. The communal tenure system also results in issues that require creative management approaches, and in this regard, fencing of arable land may bring about improvements. Land claims have affected agriculture production in some areas and a remedy to these challenges will furthermore foster the agriculture-development goals of the Local Municipality.

Limited resources, mainly due to topography limitations and low rainfall, make this area an extensive livestock area with farmers being primarily production of agricultural farming. The above has been further limited by the high input and fuel costs. Irrigated lands or dry lands are utilized for the production of high-quality winter feed for the production of crops mainly for own use.

The entire landscape of the municipality has high potential for agricultural expansion. This can be seen to influence the surrounding local

municipalities to network and attract investments from public and private investments.

## 4.C. Promoting Agriculture as an economic sector within Amajuba District Municipality

It has been seen through the SDF that Amajuba has the opportunity to promote the advancement of the Agriculture sector and further promote jobs in this sector on order to ensure that the district does not only play the role in supplying the agricultural demand within the country but also promoting job creation for the locals, thus ensuring that they are able to benefit by this sector and essentially become in a situation where they are less grant dependent and are able to live more sustainable lives.

In order to achieve this, emphasis needs to be placed on skills training and skills development in agriculture to equip the locals to be able to gain jobs in this sector and for the district to essentially thrive through this sector.

Other sectors which would thrive through this would be the industrial / agro-processing sector as well as the logistics sector to allow for the movement of the produce.

The district has the following agricultural potential:

**Beef production** in the district is mainly undertaken at commercial scale in Emadlangeni and Newcastle local municipalities. High potential beef production is possible in Groenvlei (Emadlangeni) with a developed red meat cluster.

**Maize production** is undertaken on a large scale in the district. All the local municipalities have a well-developed value chain for maize processing and milling. It also shows why the livestock sector and commercial beef production is practised.

Newcastle local municipality has the highest **vegetable production** due to water availability. Vegetable production is thus suitable with potential for potatoes and dry bean production.

**Groundnuts** in the district have shown a developed value chain cluster in Newcastle local municipality. Groundnut is a high value commodity with multiple uses, hence serves some key niche markets.

The type of agricultural activity driving the incomes of the majority of the agricultural households is noted as follows:

- Dannhauser LM- Poultry production (42%), livestock production (29%), vegetable production (21%), production of other crops (6%), and fodder grazing (1%);
- Emadlangeni LM- Livestock production (41%), poultry production (32%), vegetable production (18%), production of other crops (5%), and fodder grazing (3%); and

- Newcastle LM- Vegetable production (49%), poultry production (26%), livestock production (11%), production of other crops (9%), and fodder grazing (2%).

It is prevalent that most (89%) of the agricultural activity is in poultry production, livestock production and vegetable production in the district.

## 4.D. Rural Development Focus

### Regions

The district through coordinated support can however attempt to address rural development needs through the identification of critical focus areas. These Focus areas have been identified on the basis of existing funding and institutional support initiatives available from the National Departments such as the Department of rural Development and Land Reform as well as the Department of Agriculture, both two leading role players within the rural context.

#### Focus Area 1: Food Security

The first focus area is targeted towards food security in both the district and surrounding communities/countries. Food security is arguably the most important rural challenge that could cause social instability in South Africa. Food security could stabilise the current economic tension especially for the rural poor while creating job opportunities. The intention of this focus area is to determine the basic rural food basket requirements. The highest cost

items in a typical food basket are to be identified, where these items (where possible) would require improved value chains to decrease item values. This would indirectly provide cost saving measures for the poorest of the poor.

The food basket approach follows a bottom –up model where we seek to understand the needs of the poor, from here we can start to understand the actual demands and needs. Taking the limited economic climate into consideration the approach should be to target towards the poorest of the poor. The identification of tangible and realistic targets to change the rural climate would be critical in addressing sustainable livelihoods. Targeting the food basket could improve the lives of the poor as well as stimulate economic growth while creating employment opportunities. The food basket approach is striving towards delivering the basic foods to the poorest through existing structures and projects facilitated by government.

#### Focus Area 2: Agriculture Development

Enhancing equity in agriculture development through farming production support units supporting specialised commodities at Agri hubs with the required Agri processing value chain needs. It is important to understand the agglomeration advantages of the farming production supporting units as well as the Agri-Hubs. The inter relationship needs to be clarified and rolled out to lay the rural development path ahead.

#### Focus Area 3: Agricultural Value Chains

A value chain is a set of linked activities that add value to a product; it consists of actors and actions that improve a product while linking commodity producers to processors and markets.

Value chains may include a wide range of activities, and an agricultural value chain might include development and dissemination of plant and animal genetic material, input supply, farmer organization, farm production, post-harvest handling, processing, provision of technologies of production and handling, grading criteria and facilities, cooling and packing technologies, post-harvest local processing, industrial processing, storage, transport, finance, and feedback from markets. A value chain approach in agricultural development helps identify weak points in the chain and actions to add more value.

Commodities targeted and the respective value chains and opportunities within value chains are to be identified. Processing opportunities are to be identified for further economic potential. Agri-processing is key to the creation of job opportunities.

#### Focus Area 4: Sustainable livelihoods

Subsistence farming is an initiative for the identification of economic potential areas that could accommodate sustainable livelihoods. An attempt is made to seek opportunities that could improve sustainable livelihoods through the creation of jobs and sustainable commonage management, especially through the Agricultural Sector. Other potential economic sectors are considered as well, with recommendations made towards unlocking rural development.

#### Focus Area 5: Urban-Rural linkages

Rural-urban linkages can be defined as the structural social, economic, cultural, and political relationships maintained between individuals and

groups in the urban environment and those in rural areas. Rural-urban linkages can also refer to spatial and sectoral flows that occur between rural and urban areas. Spatial flows include flows of people, goods, money, technology, knowledge, information, and waste. By contrast, sectoral flows include flows of agricultural products going to urban areas, and goods from urban manufacturing areas going to more rural areas. Typically, rural-urban linkages are often articulated in the nature and forms of migration, production, consumption, financial and some investment linkages that occur within the rural-urban symbiosis. The exchange of money, goods, visits including social activities, and communication with relatives and friends can all be used as indicators of rural-urban linkages.

Farming areas and cities coexist along a continuum with multiple types of flows and interactions occurring between the two spaces. Typically, it is now widely recognised that there exist economic, social and environmental interdependences between urban and rural areas.

Rural communities are responsible for the stewardship of ecosystem services that are essential for human survival and well-being such as clean air and water, flood and drought mitigation, pollution mitigation, biodiversity, and climate stabilization.

Urban and Rural linkages are critical towards the success of both the rural and urban built-up areas, this section deals with push and pull factors that are required to ensure a sustainable balance between both urban and rural divide.

The nature and form of these linkages are not homogenous as they are determined by both push and pull factors as highlighted in Figure below.

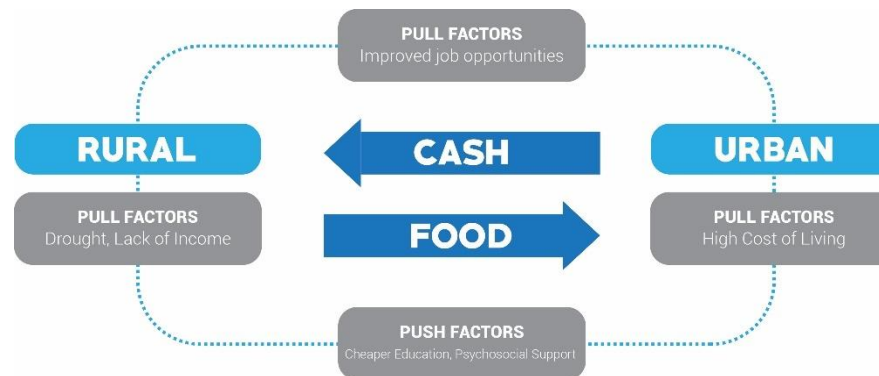


Figure 20: Urban-Rural Linkages

### Focus Area 6: Disaster Management

Disaster management is vital in terms of agricultural management, a brief look at potential risk areas is done to inform policy and decision makers.

Temperature dictates crop production, with optimum growth rates under different upper and lower temperature limits in different seasons. The heat unit and chill unit concept depicts this dependence and refers to the period of accumulated maximum/ minimum temperatures above/ below a threshold. Increased minimum and maximum temperatures imply an increase in potential evaporation, which is likely to have profound effects on dryland and irrigated crop production. Rainfall is critical to agriculture, especially the timing, intensity and distribution of rainfall throughout the growing season. Increased intensity of rainfall will affect both ground and surface water resources. In South Africa, a semi-arid country where the

average evaporation rate exceeds its precipitation, water is a critical limiting factor for agricultural production.

The market potential of the Amajuba **functional region** is defined by its economic complexity i.e., the internal and external concentration of a range of economic activities within a functional space. The decline in traditional economic sectors such as agriculture, and mining, calls for renewed efforts and innovations as a means of unlocking rural development potential. One of the innovations that can stimulate economic growth in Amajuba is the identification and harnessing of niche commodities as well as value-chains. Cultural heritage tourism for instance pose an opportunity that Amajuba is yet to tap into through rigorous smart marketing strategies for instance

A functional region therefore would typically have established nodes as well as areas in need of various forms of intervention from a development perspective.

The Amajuba District Municipality identifies the following as the functional regions in the district;

**Functional Region 1:** Emadadeni and surrounding areas

**Functional Region 2:** Dannhauser and surrounding areas

**Functional Region 3:** Utrecht and surrounding areas

## 4.E. Agri-Parks

According to the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform which is working together with the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and

Fisheries; the Economic Development Department; the Department of Science and Technology; Department of Trade and Industry, the Department of Cooperative Governance, the Department of Small Business Development, the Department of Water Affairs and Sanitation, the Department of Environmental Affairs, their respective agencies and the private sector have embarked on rolling-out Agri-parks to all 44 Districts in South Africa, including the ten district within KwaZulu-Natal which form part of this study.

The identified Agri-Hub in Dannhauser is well-positioned and equipped from an infrastructural perspective to support commercial farmers in Amajuba DM.

The district has identified two Farmers Production Support Units;

1. Bensdorp FPSU in Emadlangeni LM.
2. Zamokwakhe FPSU in Newcastle LM.

The projects will kick-start the Rural Economic Transformation for identified rural regions creating jobs in production, farmer support, and processing.

An Agri-park is basically seen as a networked innovation system of Agro-production, processing, logistics, marketing, training, and extension services, located in a District Municipality. As a network it enables a market-driven combination and integration of various agricultural activities and rural transformation services. The Agri-park comprises three distinct but interrelated basic components (as illustrate below):

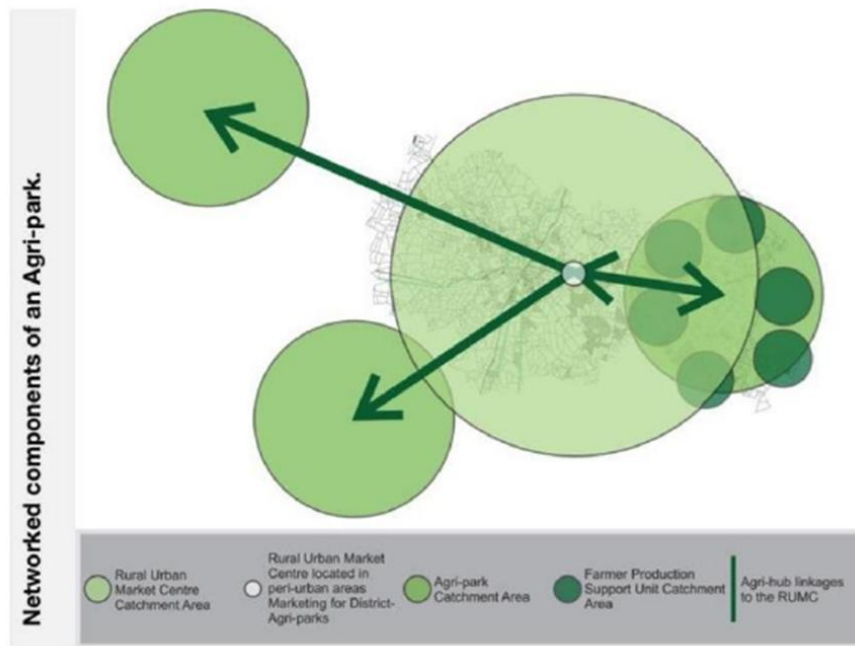


Figure 21: Agri-park Interrelated Basic Components

- The Farmer Production Support Unit (FPSU) - a rural small-holder farmer outreach and capacity building unit that links farmers with markets. The FPSU does primary collection; provides some storage, some processing for the local market, and extension services including mechanization.
- The Agri-hub (AH) - a production, equipment hires, processing, packaging, logistics, innovation, and training unit.
- The Rural Urban Market Centre (RUMC). The RUMC has three main purposes;

- Linking and contracting rural, urban, and international markets through contracts.
- Acting as a holding-facility; releasing produce to urban markets, based on seasonal trends.
- Providing market intelligence and information feedback, to the AH and FPSU, using the latest Information and communication technologies.

Agri – Park: Support the development of the Agri-Park proposals for the Zululand, Amajuba, Umzinyathi and Gert Sibande districts, including the Coronation, Dannhauser, Dundee and eMkhondo Agri – hubs and associated linkages to markets and farming support. Develop Agri-hubs for key sectors, including Coronation Agri-Hub for food and meat processing sectors, Dannhauser Agri-Hub for maize storage and milling, beef abattoir, vegetable packing house and future tannery, Dundee Agri-Hub for meat processing facility, maize milling and storage and vegetable packing facility and eMkhondo Agri-Hub for red meat, agroforestry, vegetables, and maize sectors.

The following Agri-hub sites have been identified within the various district within KwaZulu-Natal:

- Amajuba District Municipality: Dannhauser
- Harry Gwala: Umzimkulu LM (Ebutha Farm)
- Ugu District Municipality: Esinqoleni LM (Horseshoe Farm) & Ugu Fresh Produce Market
- uMgungundlovu District Municipality: Umgeni LM
- uMkhanyakude District Municipality: Mkuze
- uMzinyathi District Municipality: Dundee
- uThukela District Municipality: Bergville
- uThungulu District Municipality: Eshowe
- Zululand District Municipality: Vryheid

As several business plans have already been prepared for the various hubs listed above, the project process would also review such business plans and the commodities and functional areas identified to align with the Agri-Parks initiative.

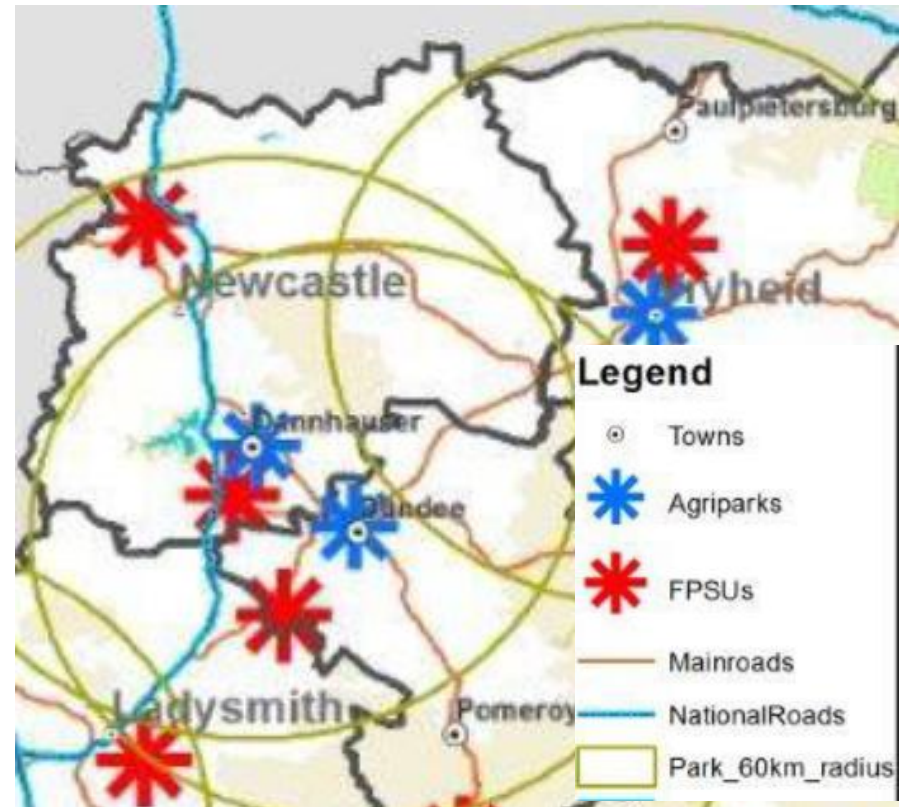
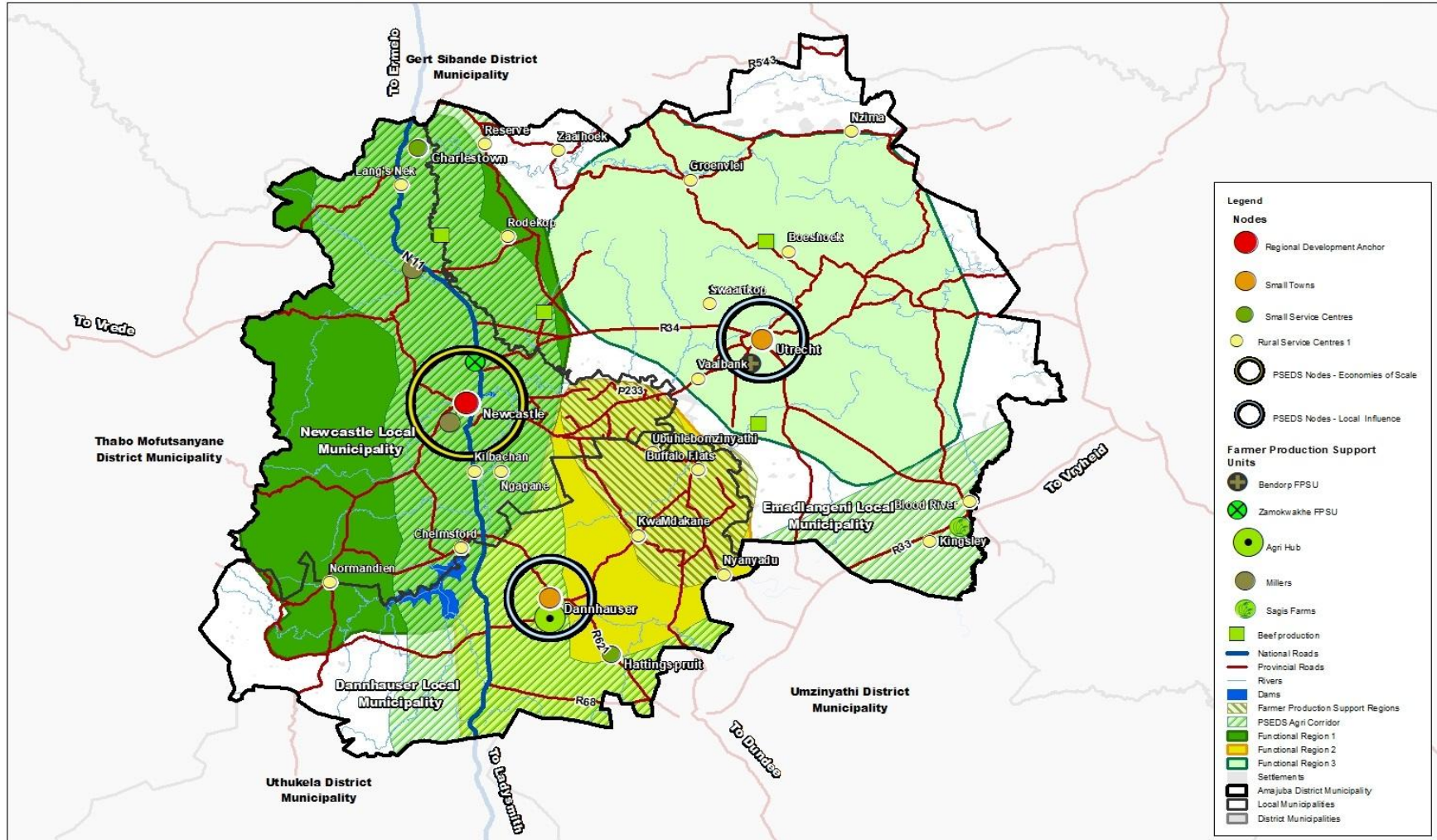


Figure 22: Agri-Parks and FPSUs

# AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

## AGRICULTURAL FRAMEWORK PLAN

1:500 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

## 4.F. Proposed Development Intervention

The proposed interventions are informed by an appreciation of complex relational economic, social and environmental factors that define the Amajuba district.

Table 20: Agricultural Interventions

Objective	Development Action	Description
<b>Improving productivity in the agricultural sector</b>	Optimising the potential of Agri-Parks	<p>Amajuba district municipality is endowed with land highly suitable for agriculture. The fertility of the land allows for the farming of maize, wheat, soybeans, peanuts, barley, dry beans, potatoes, and cabbages. Moreover, there also exist crop farming, dairy production, aquaculture, poultry and livestock farming.</p> <p>Agriparks provide a unique opportunity for fostering commercial agriculture through the exploitation of the Rural/Urban Market Centre Units (RUMC).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Dannhauser Agri-Hub will act as a production, equipment hire, processing, packaging, logistics and training unit be utilised for strengthening agricultural commodity value-chain in the entire Amajuba district municipality;</li> <li>• Access to both international and local markets through improving product quality and innovation as well as marketing and branding strategies;</li> <li>• <input type="checkbox"/> Identification of new commodities and markets based on Amajuba's competitive and comparative advantages;</li> <li>• <input type="checkbox"/> Access to funding for investment into new machinery and equipment, research and development (R&amp;D);</li> <li>• <input type="checkbox"/> Improved institutional support from the government and rural/agricultural development agencies notably ADA and the Agricultural Research Council (ARC) in KZN;</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Provision of integrated and reliable transportation and connectivity infrastructure in the district such as roads, rail, freight;</li> </ul>
Provision of support to small-scale farmers	<p>Small-scale farming is critical for the entire district municipality.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Expansion of the irrigation scheme, as well as expansion of agricultural production and processing facilities with supportive infrastructure, human settlements and social facilities;</li> <li>□ Access to funding for investment into tractors, fertilisers and related agricultural equipment;</li> <li>□ Harnessing collaborative ventures between farmers and corporates such as SAB and Tiger Brands;</li> </ul>
Developing & enhancing subsistence farming	<p>The agricultural households in Emadlangeni, Dannhauser and Newcastle consider expanding their agricultural activities through:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Forming and improving existing agricultural cooperatives focusing on pig, sheep and goat farming that can act as a foothold to more financially viable and long-term agricultural activities.</li> <li>Access to funding for investment in seeds, new machinery and equipment;</li> <li>Access to the Dannhauser Agri-Hub and a RUMC in Utrecht to gain knowledge on agri-business.</li> </ul>
Improved access to agricultural support infrastructure	<p>Agricultural development in Amajuba can be harnessed through:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrading aging physical infrastructure, specifically roads and rail;</li> <li>Upgrading of internal gravel roads particularly in former homelands in around Emadadeni/Osizweni;</li> <li>Building dams in the district to improve water access for agricultural purposes;</li> <li>Maintaining grain silos, feedlots, pack houses, abattoirs across the district. Currently, most of these aforementioned facilities are concentrated in Newcastle;</li> <li>Investment in agriculture-related infrastructure along the existing agricultural corridor that cuts through Newcastle, Dannhauser and Utrecht must be prioritised;</li> <li>Intensifying electricity provision in the entire district municipality</li> </ul>
Promote competitive and inclusive Agri-businesses	<p>Agri-businesses must be concentrated in previously disadvantaged communities through:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provision of finance for aspirant and emerging black entrepreneurs (especially women, youth and disabled persons) in the agro-processing in and around the Agri-Hub, Dannhauser;</li> </ul>

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Creating opportunities for product beneficiation in the agricultural sector;</li> <li>• The central location of Newcastle and its surrounds on along high-order road network also renders it a critical nexus for harnessing agribusiness;</li> <li>• Harnessing the prominence of the manufacturing sector in Amajuba at large for inclusive rural economic development;</li> <li>• Creating institutional mechanisms and instruments for meaningful beneficiation in the agribusiness. This must benefit all communities across the district</li> </ul>
Promoting Villages	Agri-	In Amajuba, there exist opportunities to promote Agri-villages through building linkages between Agri-villages and Agri-Parks, towards an integrated rural development approach.

# BUILT ENVIRONMENT FRAMEWORK

The Built Environment Framework aims to look at the Built aspect with regards to proposals for the ADM. The following are components of the Built Environment Framework:

- Settlements
- Movement and Transportation
- Densification
- Infrastructure
- Smart Growth

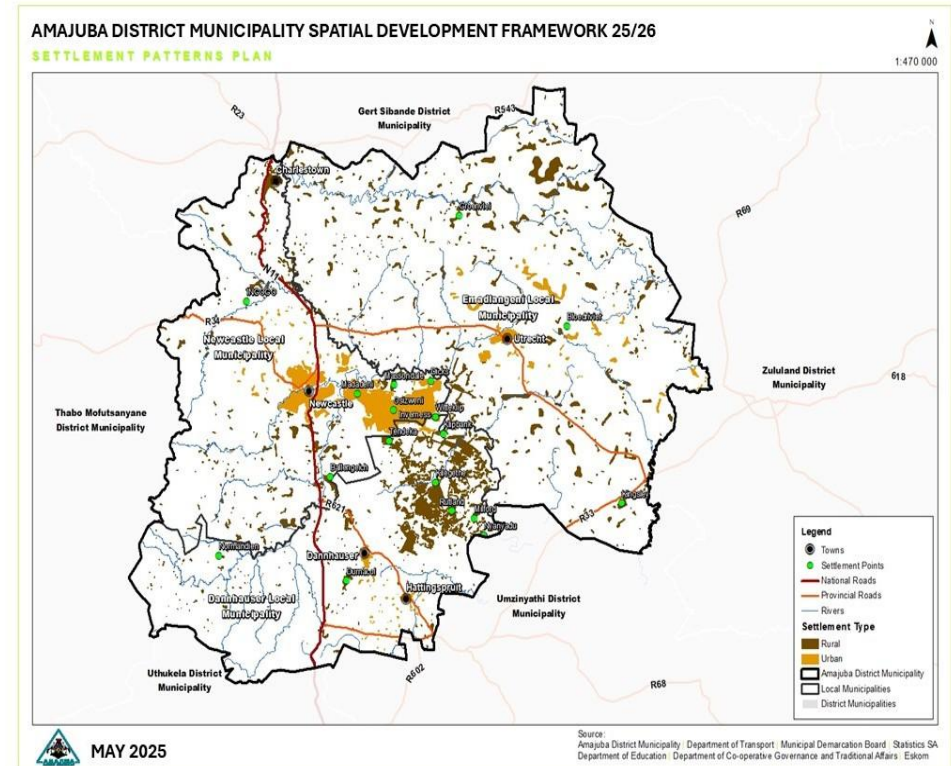
## 4.G. Settlements

The ADM is predominantly rural, and majority of the land is dominated by extensive commercial farmlands.

The urban settlements include the Newcastle urban complex, small towns (within Emadlangeni and Dannhauser) with an agglomeration and variety of social and economic uses. Newcastle is the third-largest urban centre in KwaZulu-Natal and is categorised as a secondary city and is located a few kilometres south of the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng Province borders, in the foothills of the Drakensberg

The Rural Settlements primarily includes rural villages with social facilities, subsistence agriculture but limited economic uses. Dannhauser functions as a small rural service centre (providing commercial and service facilities, and agricultural industries and services). Hattingspruit is also

The direction of growth will take place in between Utrecht and Newcastle, there is a lot of rapid growth currently taking place. The area between these two towns is proposed for an integration zone.



PLAN 47: Settlement Patterns Plan

## 4.H. Movement and Transportation

Roads have the potential to not only bridge the geographical divide but to also provide communities with access to better social and economic opportunities. It is therefore important in this regard that roads are assessed in the context of their spatial network, road classification and road surface condition. The overview below affords an opportunity to the responsible authorities to plan accordingly in response to the desired spatial outcomes of the Amajuba DM. There are three types of road classes that have been focused on for this report as they have implications on the desired spatial outcomes for the Amajuba DM.

- **National Roads** - These roads denoted with the prefix 'N' e.g. N11 and are primarily the responsibility of DOT and are maintained through the South African Roads Agency.
- **Provincial Main Roads** - These are higher order provincial roads all with the prefix 'P' e.g. P233. There is a further breakdown of this class into types of main roads, each type meeting certain requirements pertaining to traffic volumes, freight requirements etc and hence not all main roads are surfaced roads.
- **Provincial District Roads** - All these roads are the responsibility of the KZNDOT and the majority of which are not surfaced.
- **Rail** - The rail line which is the main line from the Durban harbour to Gauteng plays a vital role in the movement of goods and services in the district as it passes through it.

Below is a table with a breakdown of the planned projects regarding transport and movement.

*Table 21: Road Upgrades*

No.	Project	Municipality
1	Upgrade Of District Road D181 (Planning phase)	Dannhauser
2	Upgrade Of Local Road L1364 (Planning phase)	Dannhauser
3	Upgrade of Main Road D1331 (Planning phase)	Newcastle
4	Upgrade of Main Road D1335 (Planning phase)	Newcastle
5	Upgrade of Main Road P233 (Planning phase)	Newcastle

## 4.I. Housing

Achieving sustainable human settlements is one of the main spatial goals within an area such as Amajuba District which is characterised by settlement pattern that has encounter a high level of disintegration and fragmentation. An opportunity still exists to turn the situation around through facilitating and promoting the evolution of these discrete pockets of settlements into sustainable, integrated human settlements clusters. This is bearing in mind the fact that settlements are not static, they respond to change and are

continuously in the process of transformation. Housing takes into cognisance the densified areas and the rate at which they are being densified. This assists in planning for the future looking at the current growth projections.

Alongside is the current municipal housing backlogs as per the ADM SDF 2021/2022 review. There are housing projects in the districts that are associated with the KZN Department of Human Settlements as a way to fight the housing backlog.

The Housing backlogs that have been identified from Amajuba District include those places that have Traditional Dwellings which are houses built in the rural villages using traditional Matter, Informal Dwellings which include shacks in the backyards some used for renting purposes some built due to lack of funds for formal houses and lastly informal dwellings which include those informal settlements built on informal areas

<b>Shack in a Backyard</b>				
<b>Informal Dwelling/ Shack in a Backyard (Informal Areas)</b>	14 039	228	57	14 447
<b>Total Backlogs</b>	22 620	20 314	5 513	48 447

Table 22: Housing Backlog

<b>Housing Backlogs</b>	<b>Newcastle LM</b>	<b>Dannhauser LM</b>	<b>eMadlangeni LM</b>	<b>Amajuba DM</b>
<b>Traditional Dwellings (Made of Traditional Matter)</b>	4337	19996	5 456	29 789
<b>Informal Dwelling/</b>	4 244	90	-	4 334

#### 4.1. 1 Housing Projects

The following Housing Projects mentioned below are for Newcastle, Dannhauser and Emadlangeni Local Municipalities.

Table 23: Housing Projects Under Construction in Newcastle

NO	PROJECT NAME	TYPE OF PROJECT	WARD	NO. OF UNITS
1	Osizweni Section C Phase 3 Housing Project	ISU	3 and 32	507
2	Kathide Housing Project	Rural	6 And 12	2000
3	Siyahlal-la Housing	ISU	25	1205
4	Madadeni H 39 Housing Project	ISU	19	923
5	Charleston Housing Project	IRDP	1	1200
6	Emawozzeni Housing Project (Greenfield)	IRDP	30	100
7	Madadeni Storm Damage Houses (Repair of Roof SO)	Rectification Project (RP)	23	500
8	Madadeni Sinking Houses	Rectification Project (RP)	20	33
9	Madadeni Replacement of Asbestos Roofs	Rectification Project (RP)	13	
<b>TOTAL</b>				5935
NO	PROJECT NAME	TYPE OF PROJECT	WARD	NO. OF UNITS
1	Osizweni Section C Phase 3 Housing Project	ISU	3 and 32	507
2	Kathide Housing Project	Rural	6 And 12	2000
3	Siyahlal-la Housing	ISU	25	1205
4	Madadeni H 39 Housing Project	ISU	19	923
5	Charleston Housing Project	IRDP	1	1200

<b>6</b>	Emawozzeni Housing Project (Greenfield)	IRDP	30	100
<b>7</b>	Madadeni Storm Damage Houses (Repair of Roof SO)	Rectification Project (RP)	23	500
<b>8</b>	Madadeni Sinking Houses	Rectification Project (RP)	20	33
<b>9</b>	Madadeni Replacement of Asbestos Roofs	Rectification Project (RP)	13	
<b>TOTAL</b>				5935

Table 24: Proposed Pipeline Projects for NLM

NO	PROJECT NAME	TYPE OF PROJECT	WARD	NO. OF UNITS
<b>1</b>	Ingogo Housing Project	IRDP	1	1000
<b>2</b>	Normandien	Agri-Village	25	300
<b>3</b>	Bosworth Farm	IRDP	21	1500
<b>4</b>	Wykom	IUP	1	100
<b>5</b>	Amajuba Forest	IUP	1	800
<b>6</b>	Kilbachan Settlement	IRDP	21	200
<b>7</b>	Soul City Madadeni Section 3	Slum Clearance	20	100
<b>8</b>	Khathide Rural Housing project phase 3 (Sigodiphola Settlements)	Rural	7	1000
<b>9</b>	Umshenguville	IUP	9/7	500
<b>10</b>	Bosch Hoek GAP/FLIPS, Service Sites, GNB and Military Veterans	FLIPS & Military Veterans	21	2400
<b>11</b>	Sunnyridge (Erf No. 9449) FLIPS	FLIPS	2	To be Confirmed
<b>12</b>	Pioneer Park (Erf No. 12155) FLIPS	FLIPS	4	To be Confirmed

<b>13</b>	Fernwood (Erf No. 14122) FLIPS	FLIPS	3	To be Confirmed
<b>TOTAL</b>				6900

Table 25: Proposed Rectification Housing Projects for NLM

NO	PROJECT NAME	TYPE OF PROJECT	WARD	NO. OF UNITS	PROJECT STAGE
<b>1</b>	Surryville and Fairleigh Municipal Flats Refurbishment	Rectification	3/ 25	120	Application for funding submitted to KZN Human Settlements
<b>2</b>	Madadeni Storm Damage Houses – Repair of Roofs	Rectification	20/ 22/ 23/ 24/ 26/ 28	1350	Application for funding submitted to KZN Human Settlements, and the first 500 have been approved
<b>3</b>	Madadeni Sinking Houses	Pre 1994 Housing Stock	20	327	Application for funding submitted to KZN Human Settlements
<b>4</b>	Osizweni Replacement of Asbestos Houses	Pre 1994 Housing Stock	11/ 13/ 17/ 30	1600	Application for funding submitted to KZN Human Settlements
<b>5</b>	Madadeni and Osizweni intercon Houses	Post 1994 Housing Stock	Various Wards in Madadeni and Osizweni	4000	Still under Subjudicare
<b>6</b>	Madadeni Section K Rectification Project	Post 1994 Housing Stock	20/ 26	1141	Application for funding submitted to KZN Human Settlements

7	Khathide Phase 1	Post 1994 Housing Stock	7/ 9/ 30/ 33	2000	Application for funding submitted to KZN Human Settlements
<b>TOTAL</b>				11 061	

Table 26: Social and Rental Projects for NLM

NO	PROJECT NAME	TYPE OF PROJECT	OF WARD	NO. OF UNITS	OF PROJECT STAGE	IMPLEMENTING AGENT	AMMOUNT COMMITED
1	Newcastle Hospital Street	Social Housing / CRU	25	1056	Planning Stage	Project Manager - Moteko Contractor to be appointed	Still to be confirmed
2	Newcastle Arbor Park	Social Housing	34	555	Plannning Stage	Project Manager - Moteko Contractor to be appointed	Still to be confirmed
<b>TOTAL</b>				1 611			

Table 27: Current Housing Projects Waiting for Approval by Human Settlements in Dannhauser LM

NO	PROJECT NAME	TYPE OF PROJECT	OF WARD	NO. OF UNITS	STATUS QUO	AMOUNT COMMITED
----	--------------	-----------------	---------	--------------	------------	-----------------

1	Striljbank	Rural	3	247	The service provider was appointed for the rectification of this project and the business plan has been finalised and will be submitted to human settlement for approval	NIL
2	Dannhauser Housing	Urban	2	1000	The service provider is busy compiling the trench 2 application to be submitted to human settlements for approval	R 64 000 000
3	Ubuhlebomzinya the Rural Housing Project	Rural	9 and 10	2500	The trench 2 application had been submitted to human settlements for approval	R 160 000 000
4	Ubuhlebomzinya the Rural Housing Project phase 2	Rural	9 and 10	1800	The service provider is busy compiling the trench 2 application to be submitted to human settlements for approval	R 196 200 000
5	Ubuhlebomzinya the Rural Housing Project phase 3	Rural	9 and 10	1800	The service provider is busy compiling the trench 2 application to be submitted to human settlements for approval	R 196 200 000
6	Stein Drive-inn Housing Project	Rural	2	500	The trench 1 application had been submitted to human settlements for approval	R 54 500 000
<b>TOTAL</b>				7 847		R 670 900 000

Table 28: Future Housing Projects Planned

NO	PROJECT NAME	TYPE OF PROJECT	WARD	NO. OF UNITS	STATUS QUO
1	Gardens Housing Project	Rural	1	550	Department of human settlements is currently doing the feasibility studies

<b>2</b>	Mourne/ Hiltop Rural Housing Project	Rural	3	500	Department of human settlements is currently doing the feasibility studies
<b>3</b>	Rooipoort/ Jan Housing Project	Rural	5	500	Department of human settlements is currently doing the feasibility studies
<b>4</b>	Flint/ Peach Hill Housing Project	Rural	6	500	Department of human settlements is currently doing the feasibility studies
<b>5</b>	Emfundweni Rural Housing Project	Rural	11	250	Department of human settlements is currently doing the feasibility studies
<b>TOTAL</b>				2300	

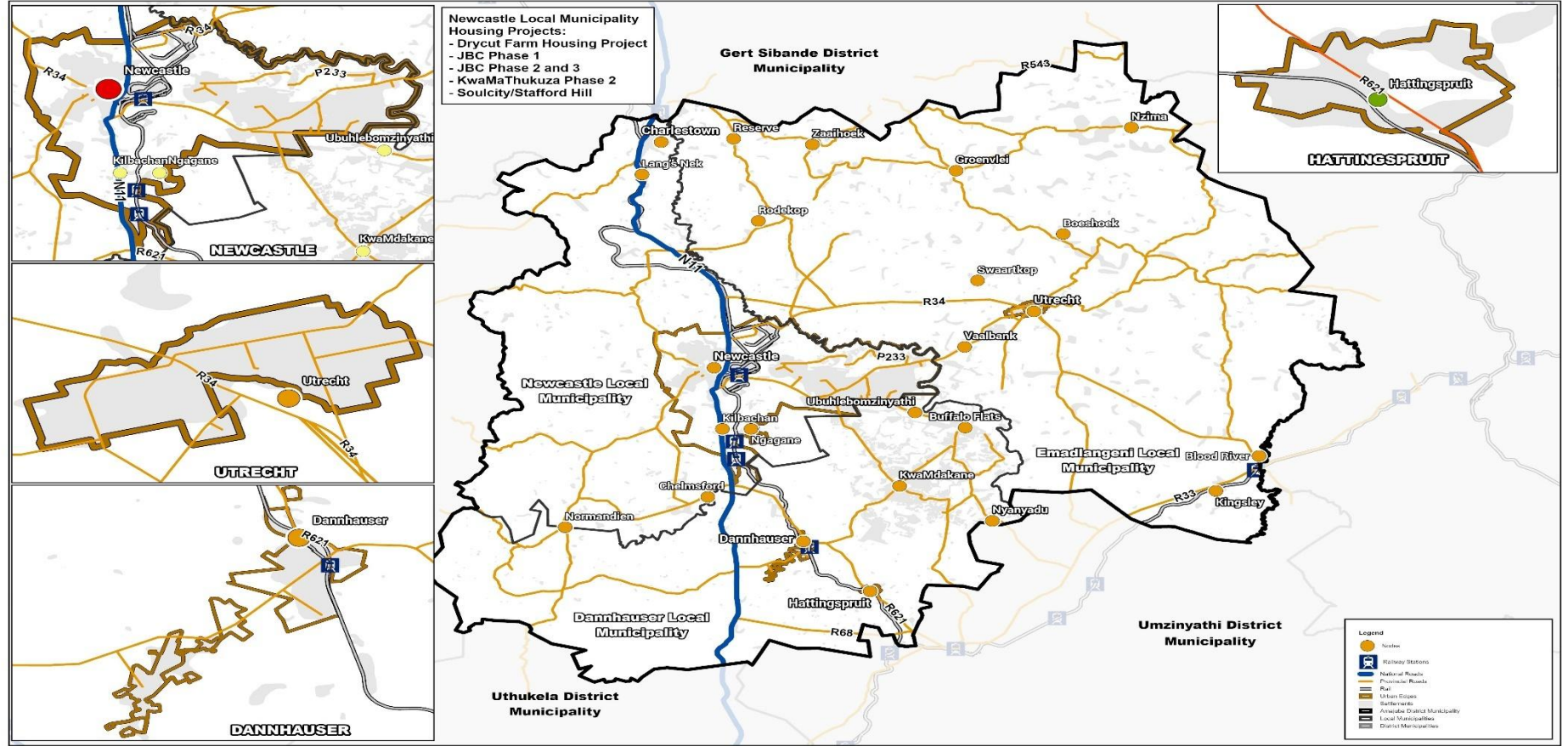
The Emadlangeni Draft Housing Sector plan identifies the following projects as land reform projects within the municipality:

<b>PROJECT NAME</b>	<b>NO. OF UNITS</b>
Nkosi Kumalo	600
Amantungwa Inkululeko	104
Shabalala	300
Nzima	285
Mabaso	290
<b>TOTAL</b>	1579

**AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026**

**BUILT ENVIRONMENT FRAMEWORK PLAN - HOUSING PROJECTS AND URBAN EDGES**

1:500,000



**MAY 2025**

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA  
 Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 48: Housing Projects and Urban Edges

## 4.J. Land Reform

Analysis of the land ownership pattern in the Amajuba District Municipality indicates that 51% of the land is held privately (i.e. this means by individuals). Following private ownership, Trust ownership accounts for 18% and this is followed by commercial ownership (i.e. company) of 16% of the district land. The private, trust and commercially owned land comprise a total of 584 103 hectares or 84% of the total land in the district. State ownership accounts for 2.4%, municipal ownership 1.4%, and Traditional Authority land comprises 4.2% of the land area. 31

In terms of land redistribution, Emadlangeni currently has the largest number of land reform projects taking place within the Amajuba District which is seeing large portions of land being transferred to rural communities. Many of the projects identified correspond with the service satellites and service sub-satellites identified as secondary and tertiary nodes.

Dannhauser Municipality is characterised by complex and intricate land tenure reform challenges, which include, farm dwellers that are established within commercial farms but are no longer providing labour to the farm and labour tenants with approximately 300 labour tenant claims being lodged with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. The process towards the finalisation of these claims has not been concluded.

Amajuba 2013/2014 IDP reports that key priorities include resolving land reform claims, with land restitution claims on 151 937 ha, involving 826 farms be resolved prior to new land reform projects being identified. Also,

labour tenant claims numbering 8 628, which could require between 8 628 hectares (if units are 1 ha each) to 43 140 ha (if units are on average 5 ha) need to be addressed.

The primary aim of the Land Reform Program is to broaden access to land and address the historical imbalances in the land ownership pattern in South Africa. It is a complex program and affects a number of development sectors including agriculture, housing, conservation, commerce, and industry.

As such, it is imperative for the program to be implemented in a cooperative manner with all the spheres of government making firm commitments to support and integrate the program into their planning and service delivery initiatives.

Similarly, these documents do not provide an adequate strategic framework for dealing with the land question. Land issues are complex and intricate with some of them (labour tenants and land restitution) being rights driven. Therefore, land reform is considered as one of the most significant programs that promise to make a major contribution to economic growth, poverty alleviation, and nation building. As such, its implementation should be embedded in the notion of sustainable and integrated development.

### Land Reform Interventions: -

Land Claims slows processes for settling land claims hampers housing delivery, which has a negative effect on development. Commercially viable agricultural properties been claimed by claimants and then being unable harness the potential of the property due to limited skills, funding, etc

## 4.K. Growth Management Strategy

***“The spirit and purpose of planning is to guide the future development and use of land. Planning is about where development should happen, where it should not and how it interacts with its surroundings. This involves promoting and facilitating development while protecting and enhancing the natural and built environment in which we live, work and spend our leisure time.”***

Source: Draft Rural Land Use Management & Regulatory Guidelines 2017: DRDLR

As per the national planning policy discussed in the Section 3 it is clear that the National Government policy such as the City Transformational Outcomes contained in MFMA Circular 88 essentially compels a municipality to limit urban sprawl and directs all cities to adopt the Compact City Model in order to achieve Spatial Transformation.

By Definition the Compact City model requires the City to adopt an effective Growth Management Strategy to lead and direct urban growth according to its spatial strategy and its budget. All the metros have adopted the Compact City model and consequently all have a Growth Management Strategy. This can also be employed in the ADM.

The Growth Management Strategy is guided by several components:

- SPLUMA Principles

- Planning Strategies and Policies
- Planning Tools

## 4.L. Densification

A planning decision to densify existing residential development, usually to achieve thresholds for public transportation, will require constraints on the direction for growth and on limiting the aerial extent of the built-up area and will be matched with changes of zoning within a fixed area.

Promoting Densification in and around strategic locations is an important antidote to urban sprawl as it looks at providing high numbers of housing units in strategic, highly accessible locations with high levels of access to economic and social opportunities. If the housing demand, or part thereof, can be satisfied through centrally located high quality higher density residential development then there will be less demand for low density residential developments on the periphery. The secret to success for stimulating the demand for higher density residential living is the quality of the urban environment in which these developments are located. These areas should therefore be focus areas for public investment in infrastructure, social services, streetscape and urban design, open spaces and general high quality, positive performing urban environments.

**It is essential to contain development within the urban edge or towns to minimise urban sprawl and to manage growth and development within the towns. This also allows easy management of infrastructure and service provision of social amenities.**

Managed expansion refers to the gradual and incremental outward growth of a settlement (i.e. the so-called ripple effect), but within demarcated urban development boundaries (or urban edge), as opposed to leap frog developments that are not physically and functionally integrated with the main urban area.

Simply put the concept of Densification works together with the Urban Edge towards the achievement of a more Compact City by encouraging the intensification of residential land uses in areas within the urban edge and thereby limiting urban sprawl. Densification can be achieved by:

- Allowing the development of smaller residential erven (access to these smaller erven by using 'panhandles' and Right of Way servitudes needs to be carefully considered).
- Encouraging higher densities in 'low cost' housing developments, bearing in mind that this will need to be achieved in many cases as an outcome of an extended "dialogue" between the needs and expectations of a given beneficiary community and the Municipality and its representatives.
- Encouraging development of flats and townhouses (cluster housing) in areas of high accessibility (especially in the Integration Zones)
- Discouraging subdivision of agricultural land (outside of the Urban Edge) by setting a minimum subdivision size of 10ha. This will encourage densification within the Urban Edge and protect valuable agricultural land.

- Encouraging development of 'Social Housing' in the Integration Zones identified within the Urban Edge.
- Supporting the range of generic settlement models proposed in the Amajuuba District Municipality in the Land Reform & Settlement Plan with respect to peri-urban and rural settlement formation
- The settlements between Utrecht and Newcastle are densifying at a high rate. This means that proper densification plans should be supported by the SDF to ensure bulk infrastructure services delivered to the people.

This SDF identifies the necessity of densification within the District Municipality. It is necessary that densification within the urban and rural centres counters the increased urban sprawl on the periphery of the Local Municipalities (but is existent throughout the district). It is seen as a positive aspect to accommodate for the demand for housing within the DM.

The importance of densification is outlined as follows:

The viability of existing and proposed public transportation infrastructure and services increase in areas of higher densities given the increased potential number of uses.

- Higher density development optimizes the use of land and provides accommodation in close proximity to urban opportunities.
- Densification promotes the efficient use of existing infrastructure and can be implemented in a phased manner with obvious cash-flow advantages.

- Appropriate densification can improve residents' quality of life as it brings them closer to urban opportunities and reduces travel time.
- Densification reduces pressure for the development of open spaces and environmentally sensitive areas due to the optimal use of available land. Densification together with appropriate sustainability measures can reduce air, water and land pollution.

## 4.M. Mixed use strategy

Live, work, play communities spur economic growth, social interactions and quality of life.

Connected communities also reduce the need for private vehicles, increasing the viability of public transport, walking, and bicycling as well as more shared community spaces like plazas, parks, and sidewalks all of which foster interaction. Public transit-friendly neighborhoods benefit local economies. Less time commuting and more walking increases support of local businesses.

The demand for live-work-play (LWP) communities drives the need for mixed use developments. The demand for mixed use development will grow as the digital transformation continues. This trend has been boosted because of COVID 19 where work-from-home or working and living in the same building is set to become the new normal. **It is proposed that the SDF support the live-work-play** development trend in appropriate locations (more especially the main towns).

Live-work-play (LWP) communities: Mixed-use commercial and residential developments where people have the opportunity to live, work and play (shop, dine, etc.) all in a relatively close distance to one another.

Mixed-use development: Generally, three or more significant revenue-producing uses (such as retail/entertainment, office, residential, hotel, and/or civic/cultural/recreation) that promotes urban integration and higher densities and creates a walkable community with uninterrupted pedestrian connections.

## 4.N. Infrastructure Framework

### 1. Green Infrastructure

Green Infrastructure can be broadly defined as a strategically planned network of high quality natural and semi-natural areas with other environmental features, which is designed and managed to deliver a wide range of ecosystem services and protect biodiversity in both rural and urban settings. More specifically Green Infrastructure, being a spatial structure providing benefits from nature to people, aims to enhance nature's ability to deliver multiple valuable ecosystem goods and services, such as clean air or water. One of the key attractions of Green Infrastructure is its ability to perform several functions in the same spatial area. In contrast to most 'grey' infrastructures, which usually have only one single objective, Green Infrastructure is multifunctional which means it can promote win-win solutions or 'small loss-big gain' combinations that deliver benefits to a wide range of stakeholders as well as to the public at large. However, for this to happen, the ecosystem must be in a healthy condition. Green Infrastructure

encourages a more sustainable and resource efficient development process in line with National Development Plan 2030 Strategy.

This SDF emphasizes on Green Infrastructure and requires developers to consider green building techniques for all developments including in the following:

- Management;
- Indoor Environmental Quality; Energy;
- Transport; Water; Materials;
- Land Use and Ecology; Emissions, and
- Innovation.

### Solar Energy

Solar energy generation can also be found in areas surrounding Newcastle, these solar plants are however directly connected to the Eskom grid and does not supply any settlement directly.

Furthermore, it is proposed to have an expansion of a Solar corridor in the district (Newcastle to Dannhauser along the N11) in order unlock potential for solar energy for the Agri-Hubs and FPSU's.

## 2. Broadband Connectivity

High-speed Internet access is not a luxury, but an essential service that we all depend on to communicate, make a living, and access essential goods and services. Without broadband, families and businesses are unable to fully participate in many aspects of contemporary life. Lack of broadband

negatively affects the civic, economic, and social engagement of community residents; makes it difficult for start-ups and small businesses to succeed and scale; and impedes ward development, job creation, and the economic health of the city. Many of Amajuba District Municipality households do not have Internet service at home, with major disparities in households above and below the poverty line.

Speed and connectivity are also features of the urbanisation that is gripping South Africa and the rest of the developing world. Technology brings a demand for speed, not just in connectivity but in addressing service delivery issues and diffuses power away from the government to the people, who increasingly demand speedy response times to problems.

For the South African public sector to be able to benefit from these changes in technology it will be necessary to embrace technology and forge strong partnerships with the private sector. Public-private partnerships have proven to be beneficial, as the public sector will have to learn from private sector initiatives, as most of the expertise rests with them. The demand for services by the public forces in the South African Government to look to technology for solutions and it is understandable why measures are being put in place to improve the technological environment. The technological environment is also receiving priority attention because of its wealth-creating capabilities. South Africa's average, annual growth rate of 4% energised business, but globalised competition resulted in lean business organisations, despite flexible laws. The South African Government's manufacturing strategy meant shifting public resources to invest in research

and development in a few, selected, high-tech sectors and rapidly advancing technology was chosen as a key driver of economic activity.

### 3. Water/ Infrastructure

uThukela water is the primary bulk water service provider to Amajuba District. Responsibility for distribution then rests with the two water services authorities in the district – The Amajuba District Municipality WSA services Emadlangeni and Dannhauser LMs and Newcastle LM WSA is responsible for servicing its own municipal area. According to the 2016 Community Survey, majority of the population has piped water inside the house or inside the yard.

### 4. Telecommunications

According to Census 2011, the areas of concern for investment in ICT infrastructure are Dannhauser and Emadlangeni, where 80% of the households in Dannhauser have no access and 77% of households in Emadlangeni have no access to the internet with Newcastle reflecting 67%.

### 5. Solid Waste Management

A professional waste management strategy should adhere to the following principles as stipulated in the National waste management Strategy:

- Waste management planning should be addressed on an integrated manner;

- Waste should be minimized by the recycling process;
- Waste collection and transportation facilities to be managed; and
- The proper management of waste treatment and disposal.

The landfill sites within the DM are listed below with their current state.

- Newcastle West - The Newcastle landfill is operating relatively well but would nonetheless require improvements and upgrading. The identifying of a new landfill is in progress by the municipality since the existing landfill has a limited remaining life span.
- Newcastle East and Rural - The collection equipment is currently adequate.
- Utrecht - The equipment would have to be upgraded to improve operation.
- Waterval Prison - Waterval Prison landfill site requires a permit whether for closure or continued operation in terms of the relevant legislation.
- Dannhauser - Dannhauser Landfill also requires a permit for closure.

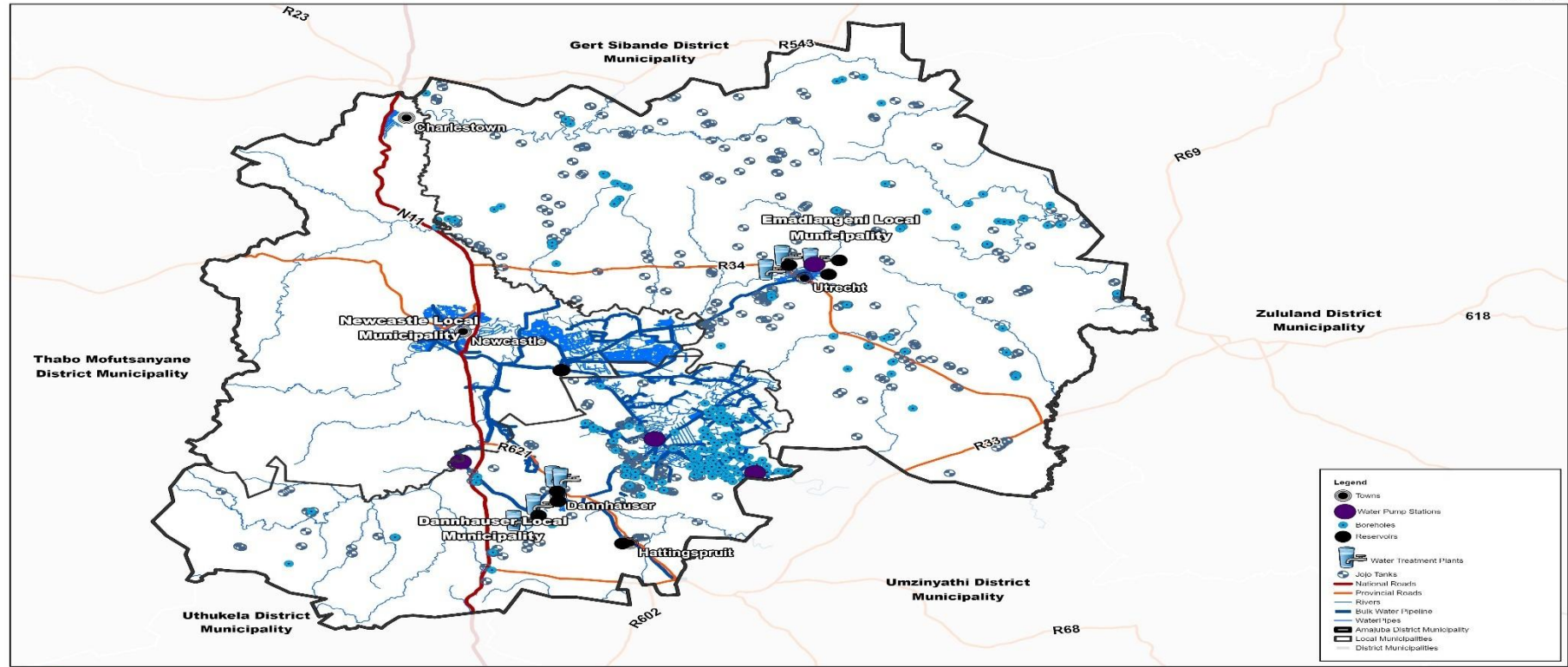
These are some of the remedial interventions that can be employed;

- Implementation of a litter control programme for all municipalities
- Possible Recycle strategies to be implemented
- Development of partnerships with community-based Organisations & Non-Government
- Organisations involved in environmental programmes
- Identify additional, suitable waste sites for all the local municipalities

**AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026**

**INFRASTRUCTURE PLAN - WATER**

1:470 000



**Legend**

- Towns
- Water Pump Stations
- Boreholes
- Reservoirs
- Water Treatment Plants
- Joko Tanks
- National Roads
- Provincial Roads
- Rivers
- Bulk Water Pipeline
- Water Pipes
- Amajuba District Municipality
- Local Municipalities
- District Municipalities



**MAY 2025**

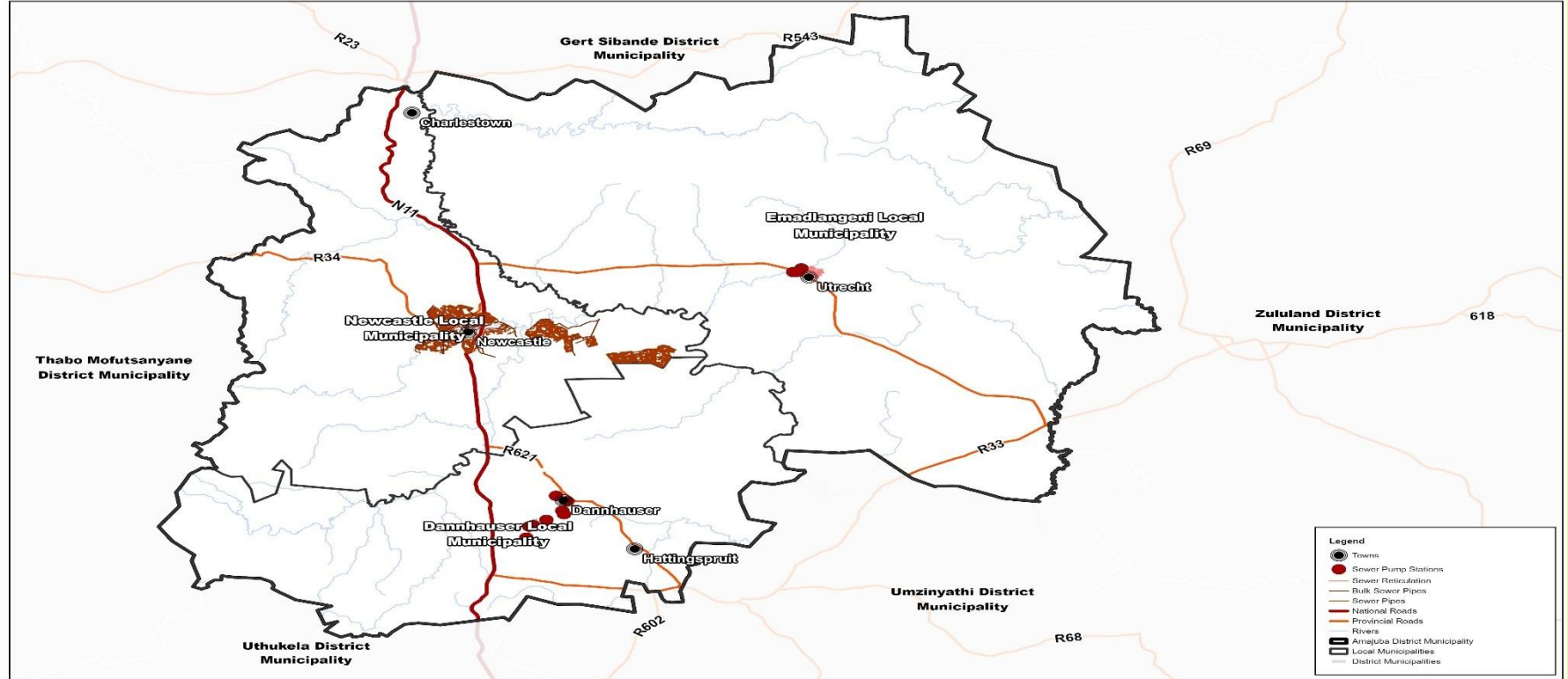
Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 50: Water Infrastructure

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

INFRASTRUCTURE PLAN - SANITATION

1:470 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA  
 Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 51: Sewer Infrastructure

## 4.O. Smart Growth

The settlement edge is not an isolated management tool, but rather part of a package of urban growth management tools that all need to be employed equally vigorously by the local authority in order to achieve desired, sustainable and efficient urban growth management.

Internationally, a sustainable approach to growth management aptly called “**smart growth**” is seen as the most efficient way of developing urban areas. Smart Growth is a collection of urban development strategies aimed at reducing sprawl and promoting growth that is balanced and fiscally, environmentally, and socially responsible. Smart Growth tries to promote growth and development in areas with optimal opportunity and offers an antidote to the sprawl that has resulted from unlimited low-density development further and further away from the urban centres. Rather than simply restricting development, smart growth is focused on how and where new development should be accommodated.

### **The principles of smart growth are:**

- New growth and development must be leveraged to improve existing areas of opportunity.
- Redevelopment of existing areas must be promoted rather than abandoning existing infrastructure and facilities only to rebuild it farther out.
- Development must be “town-centre”, transit and pedestrian oriented.
- Integrated, mixed-land uses must be promoted in strategic locations.

It is further noted that the Concept of Smart City is of a long-term planning goal. There are developmental steps that are to be undertaken in the interim before we get to the Smart City goal for the district.

## 4.P. How can the Smart City Concept be applied in the Amajuba District Municipality Context?

When discussing Smart City Concepts, it is essential to ensure that we are able to link it to the particular nature of the study area; such as the unique characteristics of ADM.

The values and principles of the Smart City concept with relation to the ADM concept includes as follows:

- To establish an ecological civilisation oriented smart district toward the future;
- To pursue inclusive and balanced growth for the Amajuba District Municipality’s geographical built environment;
- To promote and facilitate scientific and technological innovation as a path to smart district development;
- To build and enhance a smart and accessible information society;
- To foster an open and sharing multicultural society;
- To build friendly and liveable communities with social cities/towns, and

- To pursue balanced urban-rural built environment development.

It is known that government investment for service provision sustainability needs to be focus-driven and benefit communities in areas intended to be recipients. The integrated efforts and approach by the ADM through the smart city initiatives will ensure return on investment made by local government with the outcome addressing the socio-economic conditions of communities is realised be it infrastructure, community development and economic growth which in turn will lead to community wealth.

The primary objective of Smart city initiatives is to develop smart solutions to problems that are sustainable in the long run as well as to find ways in which to solve unique problems by considering environmental concerned as using them as an advantage in stend of a hinderance and to transform planning that works in synergy with the environment which still allowing the maximum benefits for the locals.

In order to ensure the growth of the district in this nature, a Smart District Strategy needs to be developed for the ADM wherein, a guide would detail how this vision can be realised, including the steps that need to be undertaken in order to reach this vision



# SOCIO ECONOMIC FRAMEWORK

**The Socio-Economic Framework aims to address the social and economic issues pertaining to the ADM. This includes skills development in the district as well as social amenities that may be required. This framework also addresses the tourism aspects as it has been noted in the SWOT Analysis that the district has huge potential for tourism.**

The objective of the Socio-economic Framework includes aiming to provide skills to locals to be able to sustain themselves as well as identifying areas of potential for social amenities.

Areas which the ADM need to focus on include the following:

- Employment generation
- Increased growth and output;
- More even income distribution;
- More equal spatial distribution of economic activity;
- Transforming ownership and control of production;
- Enhanced technological capacity.

## 4.Q. Tourism Framework

Tourism is often used as an economic development tool to address issues such as unemployment, expanding the skills base as well as reducing poverty.

The Battlefield sites have been prominent tourism destination areas within the district for decades. The growth and development of tourism-based industries are complementary to the existing fabric and are thus critical towards the prosperity of tourism areas.

Rural communities surrounding these prominent tourism nodes could greatly benefit from tourism activities that are not limited to selling crafts and artwork to tourists. The **limited accommodation** within these areas could be an indication of a **gap** in the industry which the local communities could explore. Ideas of **“home stays”** could be explored to expand the accommodation spectra, especially during peak months such as the December / January period.

### History and Heritage

The Battlefields region is considered the biggest tourism asset in Amajuba. It is the only tourism region as determined by TKZN that falls within Amajuba and therefore it receives the most exposure by TKZN. However, it must be noted that the three most visited and renowned battlefields sites (Rorkes Drift, Isandlwana, and Blood River) fall outside of Amajuba. Amajuba's sites revolve around the first Anglo-Boer war otherwise known as the Transvaal War of Independence. The sites include the following

Newcastle Local Municipality:

- Fort Amiel
- The Battlefield at Schuinshoogte on the road between the R34 and the N11
- The British Military Cemetery and British camp site at Mount Prospect near Inkwelo on the N11
- O'Neill's Cottage on the N11 at the foot of Majuba Mountain
- The Battlefield at Laing's (Lang's) Nek just off the N11
- The Battlefield at Majuba
- The Armoury
- The Military Cemetery (In the centre of the Old Town Cemetery)

In Emadlangeni Local Municipality, there are:

- The Old Parsonage & Museum
- The Dutch Reform Church
- Captain Leo Pokrowsky Monument
- Petrus Lafras Uys Monument
- The Old Residency
- The Uys House
- The Rothman & Shaw Houses
- The Town Hall
- The "Landrost, Post - en Telegraafkantoor"
- The Irrigation System
- The British Military Cemetery (In the centre of the old town cemetery)

### Places of Interest

Tourism within the district has grown over the past years, which is justified by the growing number of accommodation facilities and activities offered within the region. These facilities include eco-tourism (hiking, birding, etc); natural, cultural and historical attractions (battlefields, nature reserves, etc); arts and crafts; events and festivals; adventure sports; as well as hunting and fishing. Amajuba hosts a number of tourist destinations, including the;

- Utrecht Balele Game Park,
- the Isandlwana battlefields,
- the Talana Museum,
- Adventure trails
- Chelmsford Public Resort Nature Reserve
- Bivane Adisally Waterfall
- Ncandu falls

### Township Tourism.

Township Tourism is growing at a rapid rate nationally, and areas within the ADM have the perfect opportunities for its identified Townships. The district even has a Township Tourism Route between Newcastle and Utrecht using the P233 route. The focus of Township Tourism will be specifically on:

- Route Marketing including heritage sites
- Products promotion;
- Sport Nodes Enhancement: Swimming Pool, Stadium; etc.
- Facilitate the reuse of abandoned buildings

- Facilitate urban agriculture - food security and produce for sale to market
- SMME Support
- Develop training centres and provide training and skills development to support entrepreneurs
- Provide Business/Financial Support
- Develop industrial hives/incubators
- Upgrade informal trading areas;

### Tourism Initiatives

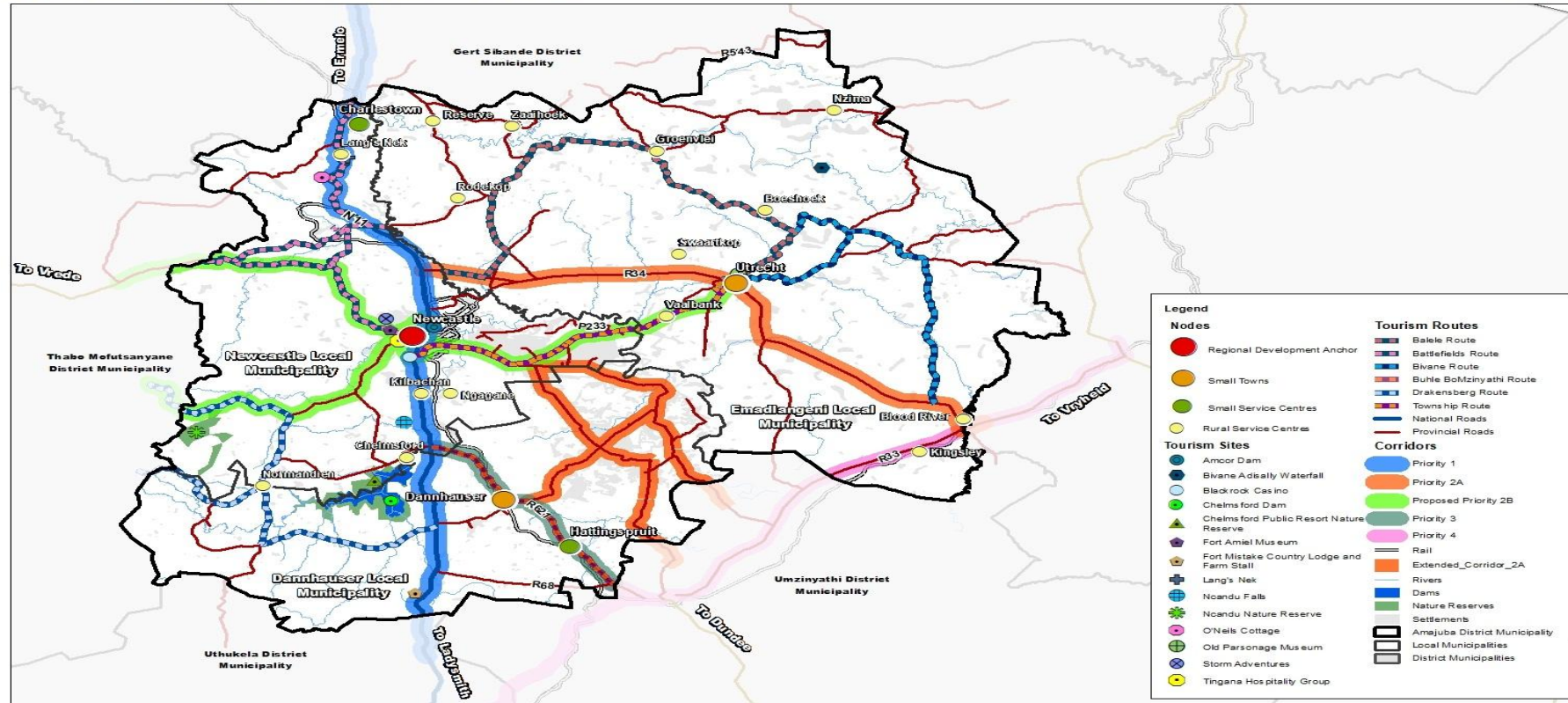
As a way to Improve the tourism competitiveness in the district, these are some of the methods that can be adopted;

1. Developing and diversifying the tourism sector in Amajuba through
  - Harnessing the district's competitive advantage through marketing of all tourism offerings;
  - Promoting avi-tourism/birding tourism, nature and game reserves; adventure and sports tourism; and natural, cultural and historical attractions such as the Battlefields;
  - Promoting arts and craft among township ad rural youth.
2. Inclusion of SMMEs, women and youth in tourism through
  - Lowering the barriers to entry in this industry is critical to allow for the involvement of women and the youth;
3. Adopting the N11 from Newcastle to Ladysmith as tourism route.

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

ECONOMIC FRAMEWORK PLAN - TOURISM

1:500 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 53: Tourism Plan

## 4.R. Economic Framework

It has been noted that unemployment is high in the district. It is with this understanding that the key objective for the Economic Framework is to focus on the following major economic proposals

### 4.R. 1 Major economic sectors.

This section focuses on how the district can grow the following proposed economic sectors.

#### *Agriculture*

Agriculture is one of the main economic sectors in the Amajuba District and there are a number of areas of strengths and challenges in this sector (see bio-physical framework section). There is also significant room for growth and expansion of the sector. There are opportunities for new high value products that can be produced in the area together with the movement of processing the agricultural produce to higher value products. There is a need for this sector of the economy to be given an injection of attention and investment to allow it to function at its full potential.

In aid to promoting the agricultural sector in the Amajuba District, it is important to look at new, high value crops. Of specific interest is the growing of hemp and cannabis and the production of cannabis oil.

It is of utmost importance to avoid the duplication of agricultural services as this increases the competition amongst small-scale farmers in the district, it is therefore important to understand who grows what product and in what

geographical area and to try and promote different crops in specific areas to widen the products available.

#### *Trade*

The Amajuba District has a limited number of retail and wholesale facilities, which is a reason for the economic leakage. Clothing and textile is already a strong economic driver more especially in the Newcastle area.

There is a need to revitalise the textile industry and to enhance the manufacturing sector, in general. Other proposed solutions are to promote the acquisition of locally produced goods, government to stop illegal imports and for the District to embark on the Clothing and Textile Competitive Improvement Programme.

There is a need for training institutions that will be providing relevant courses and qualifications, which must be in line with what is needed by the businesses in the area. The need here is to bridge the gap between the need and what is available. This will create employment and limit economic leakage.

#### *Transport*

Transport plays a major role in the movement of goods and services. Transport is directly linked to agriculture, as a way to fully harness agricultural development in the Amajuba District includes the upgrade of aging physical infrastructure (specifically roads and rail), and upgrading of internal gravel roads particularly in former homelands in around Emadadeni/Osizweni;

**Other key economic sectors which can be looked at for the ADM are described below:**

#### 4.R. 2 Renewable Energy

ADM's cities and towns should also promote the use of renewable energy sources and build low-carbon eco-cities/towns and should strive to advocate the conservation of resources and to promote environment-friendly materials and manufacturing. The districts cities/towns and their citizens should, in doing so, join together to create sustainable smart districts environment lifestyles and promote an ecological civilisation in which people and built environment co-exist in harmony.

The ADM should work with the local municipalities and other government agencies to develop solutions to bottlenecks through transmission modernisation, new facilities, and smart transmission technology. Smart grid technologies can also enable greater integration of distributed generation technologies and allows consumers to better manage consumption, helping to reduce both peak and total energy loads. The district should support the development of a comprehensive strategy to deploy smart grid technologies.

Power regulators and others are looking at what a carbon-minimal future requires and what we need to do to get there, recognising the difficulties of the status quo, including costs. Offshore wind, microgrids, and distributed energy generation can work here as they do in other districts, but the roadblocks need to be removed. Renewable energy sources must account for a significant proportion of the district energy mix.

#### 4.R. 3 Agro processing

Agro processing refers to a subset of the manufacturing sector that processes raw materials and intermediate products derived from the agricultural sector. The aim is to develop and advance new processing technologies from lab to pilot and commercial scale implementation, using tools to demonstrate product and process capability at various scales.

Competitive performance of the agriculture and agro-processing industries is likely to contribute to inclusive economic growth and sustained development through back-forward linkages. Initially, by providing various opportunities for earning income in the primary food production, then in processing and value-add and distribution, and finally, in the retailing phases of the agro/food value chain. The growth of the agro-processing industry has the potential to stimulate and spur demand for raw material from the agricultural industry and thereby create novel output markets that increase the income of farmers, which in turn enables investment in capital equipment to improve productivity. The growth and development of the agro-processing industry is intertwined with the agricultural industry. Therefore, the latent potential of agro-processing activities is noted as capable to contribute towards the reduction of unemployment, inequality and poverty levels through backward and forward linkages. (DRDLR, 2018)

#### 4.R. 4 Knowledge Economy

The district should focus developments on science and technology are pointing the way to new directions in sustainable urban and rural developments. Investing in science and technology will allow the district to

become truly integrated into the knowledge economy, and innovative towns can develop significant advantages in globalisation.

At the same time, investing in science and technology will enable high-tech activities that are expected to experience strong growth of the district.

It is essential to ensure growth in knowledge economy for the betterment of the local community as well as to industries that invest heavily in research and development (R&D) and intellectual capital, thereby benefiting from opportunities to cluster and share information. To prepare for future economic growth, the district should support the existing sectors which have the potential to thrive (such as agriculture) as well as future innovation clusters, which will be dynamic, mixed-use small business districts that benefit from sharing knowledge and resources.

#### 4.R. 5 Rural Economic Strategy

In the context of the project to develop a Land Use Management and Regulatory Guideline for Rural Areas, the Department of Rural Development and Land Reforms has applied the definition that was used by the RDF (1997) as it fits well with the other definitions and provides a functional context from which to develop the guidelines. The definition is as follows:

***“...A rural area in this context refers to areas that were previously known as homelands. It also extends to villages and areas under the control of traditional authorities, community property associations and also areas that were dispersed from the central areas of municipalities and did not form a part of a formal municipal town***

***planning scheme and was included in a peri-urban areas town planning scheme 1975...”***

Source: Draft Rural LUM & Regulatory Guidelines 2017: DRDLR

***Rural areas can be defined as areas outside urban settlements where densities are less than 150 people per km<sup>2</sup> and where dwelling densities are less than 1du/ha.***

Source: Guidelines for the development of Municipal Development Frameworks: DRDLR

**The following rural issues need to be addressed:**

- Land reform
- Small scale and commercial farming
- Economic linkages with urban areas and access to export opportunities
- Rural tourism

The Guidelines for the development of District Spatial Development Frameworks specifies that issues relating to urban–rural linkages should be carefully considered. In particular the urban and rural transition around the Urban Edge requires careful management for the following reasons:

The protection of agricultural and scenic land abutting the Urban Edge is particularly important. This area is often the most valuable land from an agricultural or tourism point of view because of its close proximity two an

urban area. The area should not be blighted by piece-meal or leap-frogging development with urban type densities.

**The guidelines for rural land use planning and management in South Africa strive to achieve the following performance qualities, namely:**

- Expanding and increasing rural livelihood quality of life: Rural areas providing a unique lifestyle and sustainable livelihoods for all residents.
- Strengthening functional integrated settlements: Human settlements and surrounding rural areas functioning as interconnected systems.
- Promoting and supporting a mixed range and scale of human settlements: Rural development reinforcing a logical network of human settlements of varying sizes and functions.
- Celebrating rural landscape cultural, religious and heritage diversity: Maintaining the authenticity of the unique rural areas, which involves preserving the dominance of working agricultural landscapes, ensuring that new development in the rural landscape is as unobtrusive as possible and responds to the 'sense of place', securing and consolidating the conservation estate, and integrating rural development with existing regional and sub-regional movement routes.
- Optimising historical investment in rural infrastructure and adopting sustainable technologies in new investments.

Source: Draft Rural LUM & Regulatory Guidelines 2017: DRDLR

The Land Reform and Settlement Plan (2000) identified 2 types of Settlement Models that are appropriate in rural areas: Model 2 and Model 3 Settlements.

It is understood that urban settlements are the future centres of economic activity and will likely increase in importance in this aspect, an appropriate focus on both socio-economic and transformative spatial development and land use management is crucial in rural areas. This is so for a few reasons. Firstly, rural areas largely remain the terrain where key ecosystem services (water, carbon capturing vegetation, fertile soils etc.) originate and need to be conserved and managed appropriately. Secondly, rural areas fulfil important roles for the citizens of the area in respect of food production and livelihoods as well as being places of residence and important socio-cultural heritage.

The revitalisation of Rural Economies is always high on the National Agenda. However, at a district and local level, rural economies appear to struggle. Larger scale job creation through agricultural enterprises is required. It is advised that the Key Agricultural Enterprises be identified and implemented to assist rural communities and households. Food security is a growing concern and rural areas could offer a solution through the sustaining agricultural enterprises.

Other sectors that can influence the economy in rural areas is in Tourism and Conservation. These sectors have never been sufficiently exploited and mainly due to the fact that the Return on Investment is lower than other sectors and the capital investment is relatively high.

### **Household Food Security:**

One of the environmentally sustainable options for ensuring household food security is adopting the Permaculture concept.

Permaculture is a system of agricultural and social design principles centred on simulating or directly utilizing the patterns and features observed in natural ecosystems. The term permaculture (as a systematic method) was first coined by Australians Bill Mollison and David Holmgren in 1978. The word permaculture originally referred to "permanent agriculture" but was expanded to stand also for "permanent culture," as it was seen that social aspects were integral to a truly sustainable system as inspired by Masanobu Fukuoka's natural farming philosophy.

It has many branches that include but are not limited to ecological design, ecological engineering, environmental design, construction and integrated water resources management that develops sustainable architecture, regenerative and self-maintained habitat and agricultural systems modelled from natural ecosystems.

Permaculture is a philosophy of working with nature, rather than against nature; of protracted and thoughtful observation rather than protracted and thoughtless labour; and of looking at plants and animals in all their functions, rather than treating any area as a single product system.

### **Township/Rural Economies**

'Township economy' refers to enterprises and markets based in the townships. These are enterprises operated by township entrepreneurs to

meet primarily the needs of township communities and therefore can be understood as 'township enterprises' as distinguished from those operated by entrepreneurs outside the townships. The term "township" refers to old, new, formal and informal human settlements that are pre-dominantly African, Coloured and Indian characterised by high levels of poverty, unemployment and low incomes as well as distance from the main centres of economic activities.

Township enterprises have different legal forms - for-profit and not-for profit enterprises registered under the Companies Act and for cooperative enterprises registered under the Cooperatives Act. However, majority of township enterprises have high rates of informality.

The Department of Small Business Development has developed a programme to support the township economy. This programme is called the "**Township and Rural Entrepreneurship Programme (TREP)**".

The **Township and Rural Entrepreneurship programme (TREP)** is a dedicated programme to transform and integrate opportunities in townships and rural areas into productive business ventures. The focus is to create platforms which provide the business support infrastructure and regulatory environment that enables entrepreneurs to thrive.

The goal of this programme is to overcome the legacy of economic exclusion by creating a conducive environment for entrepreneurial activity and provide dedicated business support to enterprises in rural and township areas including access to funding.

The following schemes are available for qualifying entrepreneurs:

- Small-scale bakeries and confectioneries support programme
- Autobody repairers and mechanics support programme
- Butcheries support programme
- Clothing, leather and textile support programme
- Personal care support programme
- Spaza-shop support programme
- Shisanyama and cooked food support programme

The following has been identified in the township economy

Table 29: Township/Rural Economies

SECTORS	CLUSTERS
Retail	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Butcheries</li> <li>• Spaza Shops</li> <li>• Fish and Chips</li> <li>• Fruit &amp; Vegetables</li> </ul>
Service Industry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hair Salons</li> <li>• Shebeens</li> <li>• Shisanyama</li> <li>• Car wash</li> <li>• Burial society</li> </ul>
Construction and real estate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Brick laying</li> <li>• Renting</li> <li>• Construction business</li> </ul>
Transport	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Taxis</li> </ul>

Agriculture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Vegetable production</li> </ul>
Finance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stokvel</li> <li>• Mashonisa/ lending schemes</li> </ul>
Government and Community Services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Feeding Schemes</li> </ul>
ICTS	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Internet solutions in townships</li> <li>• Electronic repairs</li> </ul>
Green Economy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Recycling</li> <li>• Coal and wood making</li> </ul>

#### 4.R. 6 Small Town Revitalisation

The small-town regeneration approach is one which focuses on a towns unique trait and the key sectors which can be capitalised on in order to build a strong local economic and spatial base. The Spatial Development Framework aims to offer strategic guidelines on the prioritisation of infrastructure in Small Towns.

The revitalisation programmes aim to promote, encourage and support the economy in and around small towns. Economically vibrant small towns play an important role in economic development, as they provide employment and commercial opportunities for people residing in such towns, as well as in the surrounding rural areas. Many small towns, where communities can fast become economically active and that are situated along the identified transport corridors, have been earmarked for revitalization programmes.

A concept which has been introduced to the study is that of “livelihoods planning”. This aims to ensure that planning is centered around people and people are centered around planning. Such an approach is also focused on developing land use systems so that it fulfils a relevant purpose particularly in our poorer regions of both urban and rural space. Employing such an approach is intended to ensure that cultural and communal zones form an integral component of a land use scheme.

The aim of the Small-Town Regeneration Strategy is as follows;

- To address poverty in small towns
- To address economic marginalization
- To address imbalances caused by spatial deficiencies
- To build a more inclusive society and economy
- To increase the number of people who are in sustainable economic activity
- To develop infrastructure
- To reduce unemployment through local economic development initiatives

The KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Spatial Development Framework identifies Small Town Regeneration as a major tool for development and renewal of certain areas within the province. Therefore, the areas of Dannhauseer and Utrecht have been identified as areas for proposed Small Town Revitalisation Strategies to be development.

The Integrated Small Town Revitalisation Strategy also stipulate the current challenges facing the initiatives which make mention of;

- Limited funding or budget
- Individual isolation uncoordinated Projects
- No clearly defined and articulated programme of action
- Duplication of Government effort
- Staffing constraints
- Limited Community

#### 4.R. 7 Public Private Partnerships

World trends indicate that a developed private sector, linked to a robust public-private partnership, and an achievement based and inclusive public-private sector dialogue, encourage better orientation of the economy in meeting human needs. The Private Sector is a strategic vehicle through which the Amajuba District Municipality will achieve its objectives including deeper integration and poverty alleviation. The business environment of the district will be determined by agreed policies for private sector development and the willingness of the District Municipality to address existing and potential impediments which hamper development of business.

Institutionalise Public-Private sector dialogue through the development of a District Municipality Policy. The Private Sector will be adequately represented at all decision-making levels of the ADM structures where Private Sector related issues are being discussed, and National Private Sector Institutions will be incorporated into the residents of ADM.

#### 4.R. 8 Mining Activity

Mining activities in Amajuba has experienced a decline in the last decade. The effects of this decline has been felt by communities across the entire

district municipality. However, mining has been identified as a main source of river pollution in the district.

Newcastle has the opportunity to exploit mining commodities such as coal mining, brick clay, Iron Oxide, dimension stone, aggregate and sand. There is Iron oxide potential concentrated east of Newcastle within the Madadeni / Osizweni areas.

### Proposals to Improve productivity the mining sector

1. There is a need to foster mining activities I the district through:
  - Exploiting mining commodities such as coal mining, brick clay, Iron Oxide, dimension stone, aggregate and sand in Newcastle.
  - Strategies to rehabilitate mines that have been depleted such as, notably Macalman Walmsley, Tendeka North Opencast (Osizweni area), Ballengeich/ Natal Cambrian Colliery, Kilbarchan Colliery, Horn River Colliery – Gardinia and Witklip Colliery near Charlestown;
  - Exploiting the Iron oxide potential concentrated east of Newcastle within the Madadeni / Osizweni areas;
2. There is a need to revitalise the old Mining Towns
  - The decline of the mining sector in the district has resulted in unemployment and other forms of social suffering. It is critical for the district and its development partners to fast-track the mining revitalisation projects in all three local municipalities with emphasis on old mining towns surrounding Dannhauser.

- Explore the possibility of engaging local SMME's into the value chain of these mining companies. This will stimulate local economic development through the social labour plans and corporate social investment projects and budgets of the mining houses.

### Rehabilitation of Mine Dumps

The mining sector is on the decline, the rehabilitation plans of mines are an important factor as this would unlock the value of land. Old mining sites should effectively be reconditioned and rehabilitated for use later post the lifespan of mining. A special programme to clear mine dumps and unlock the value of land would stimulate the economy. Non-compliance in terms of the rehabilitation process must be taken up through intergovernmental relations. In terms of the environment.

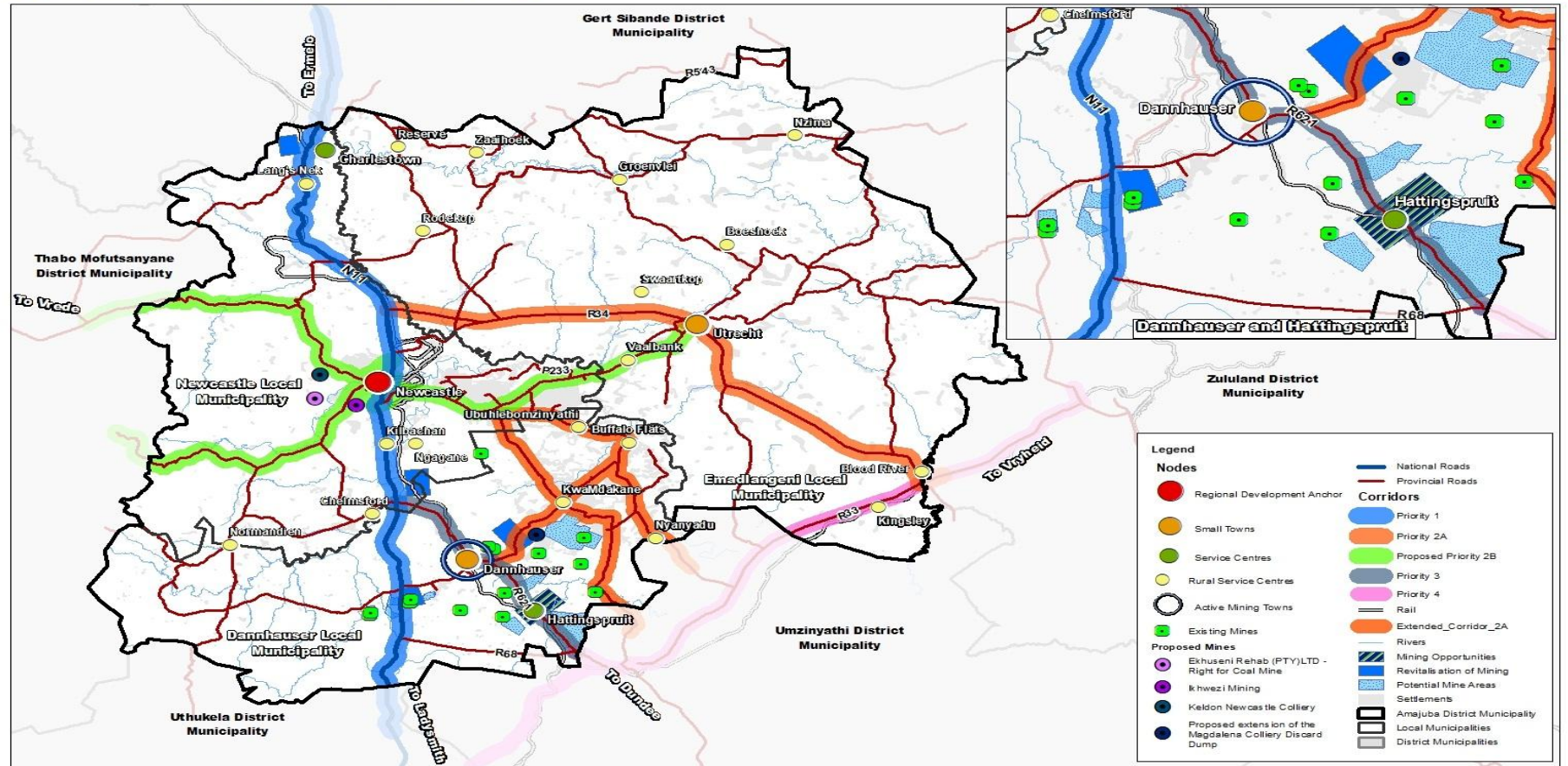
There is a world-wide phenomenon in which informal settlements emerge close to perceived and/or factual areas of socio-economic opportunities. This is largely a result of rural-urban migration wherein the poor migrate from rural areas to urban areas in search of better prospects. They usually arrive in the city without any prior arrangements for accommodlt, they resort to settling informally and in backyard shacks. In most instances informal settlements are vulnerable to floods

and on sand dunes; inferior building materials; and inadequate road access for emergency vehicles.

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

ECONOMIC FRAMEWORK PLAN: MINING

1:500 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 54: Mining Plan

## 4.S. Social Amenities

Social facilities are a vital aspect of human settlements as they serve as sources for social and public services; including health, education, recreation, cultural and socializing spaces among other services.

Access to and availability of social facilities is an important factor which attracts and keeps people in an area. Therefore, the section below indicates the number of social facilities within the municipality jurisdiction.

The following strategies for social infrastructure are based on the criteria as stipulated in terms of the CSIR Human Settlement Guidelines: -

Planning Thresholds	Walking Distance	Minimum Requirements
Crèche	2 km Radius	2 400 – 3 000 people
Primary School	5 km Radius	1 000 – 7 000 people
Secondary/ High School	5 km Radius	2 500 – 12 500 people
Library	8-10 km Radius	20 000 – 70 000 people
Clinic	5 km Radius	24 000 – 70 000 people

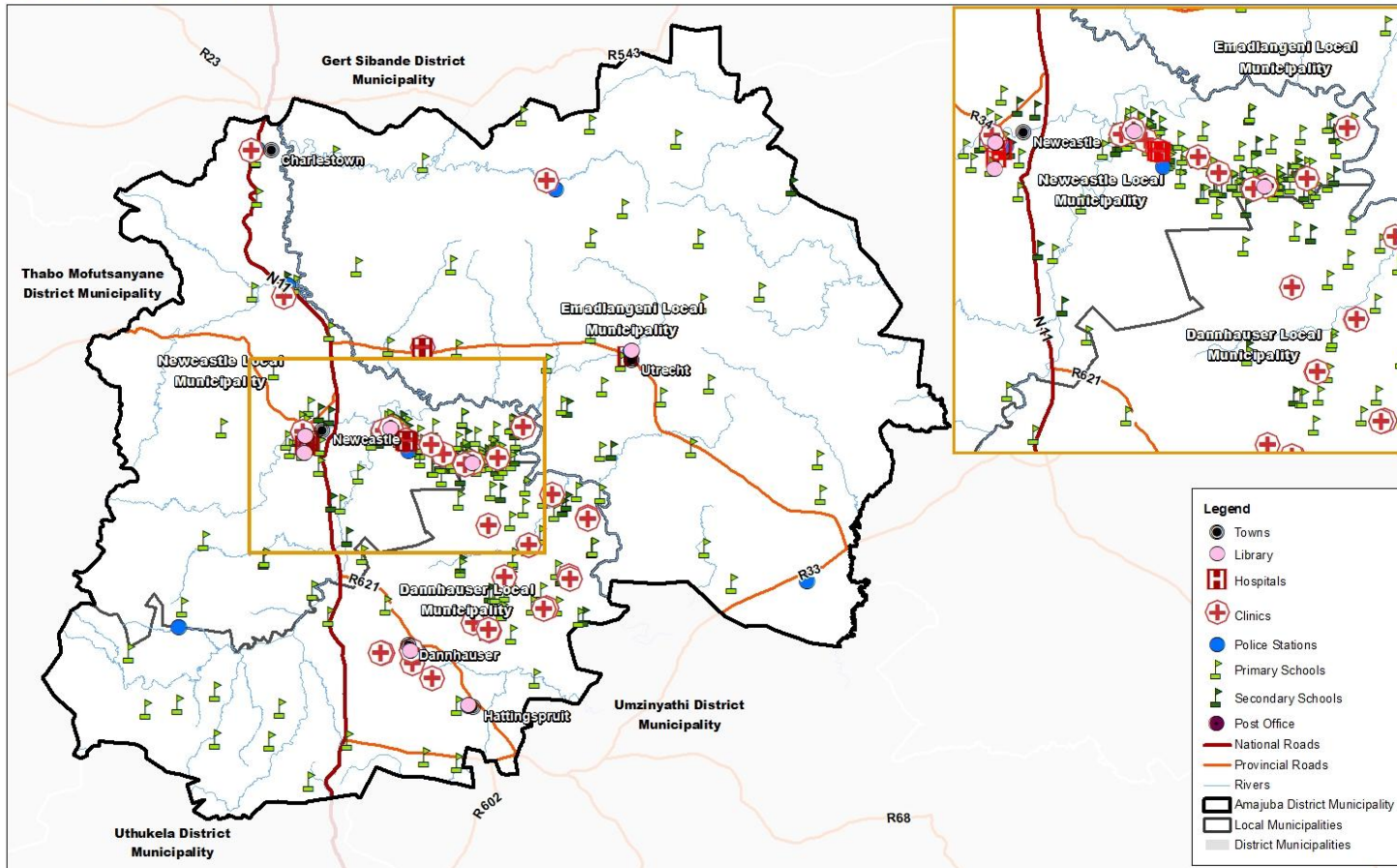
Hospital	30 km Radius	300 000 – 900 000 people
Police Station	8 km Radius	60 000 – 100 000 people
Post Office	5-10 km Radius	10 000 – 20 000 people
Pension Pay Points	5 km Radius	Variable
Community Halls	10 km Radius	10 000 – 60 000 people
Shops	10 km Radius	1 x 5000 people
Cemetery	15 km Radius	8.8Ha / 50 000 people

The plan below identifies the current dispersion of social amenities within the district

AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY DRAFT SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

SOCIAL FACILITIES

1:470 000



March 2025

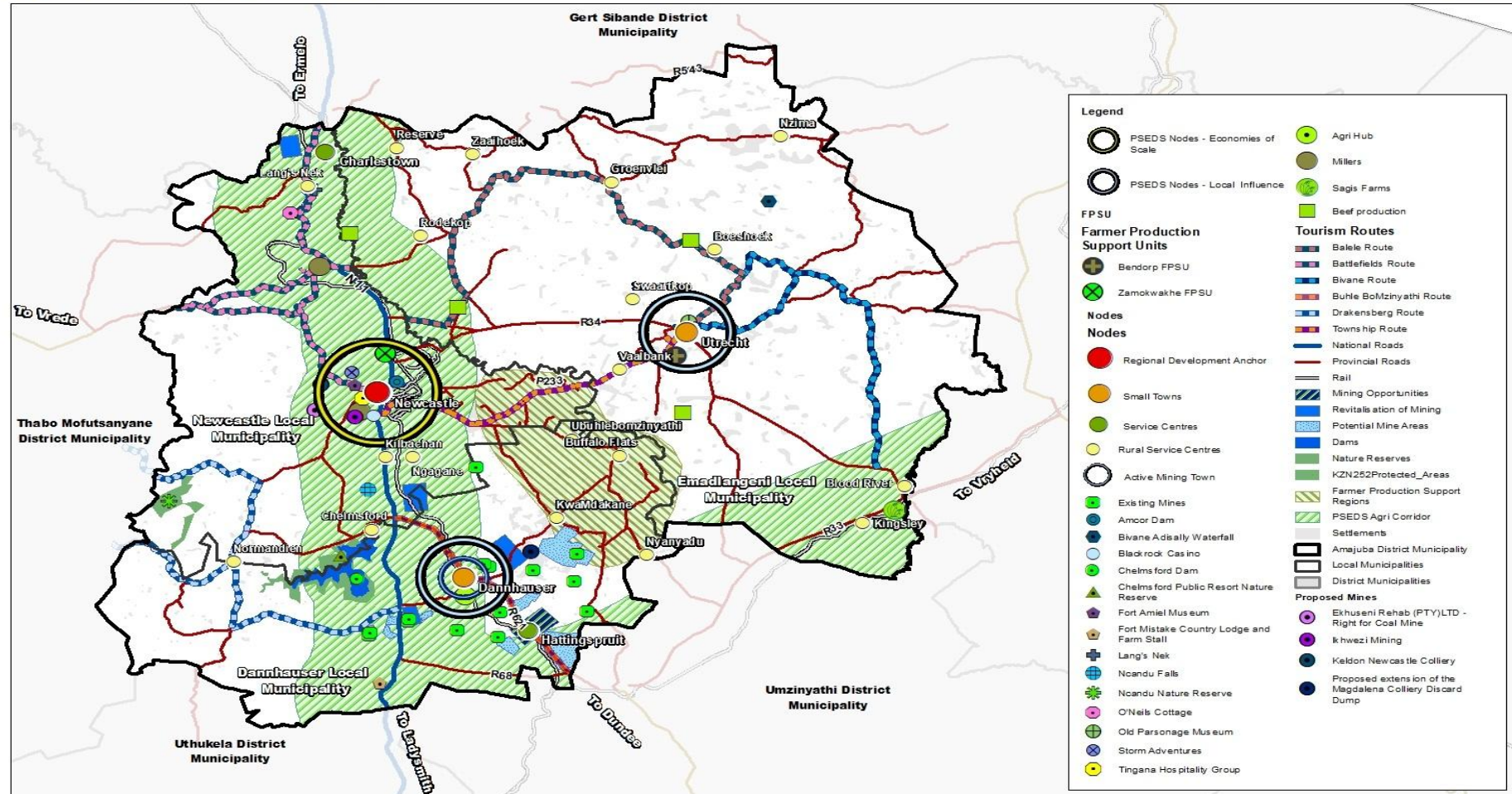
Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 55: Overall Social Facilities Plan

# AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

## ECONOMIC FRAMEWORK PLAN

1:500 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

# OVERALL SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

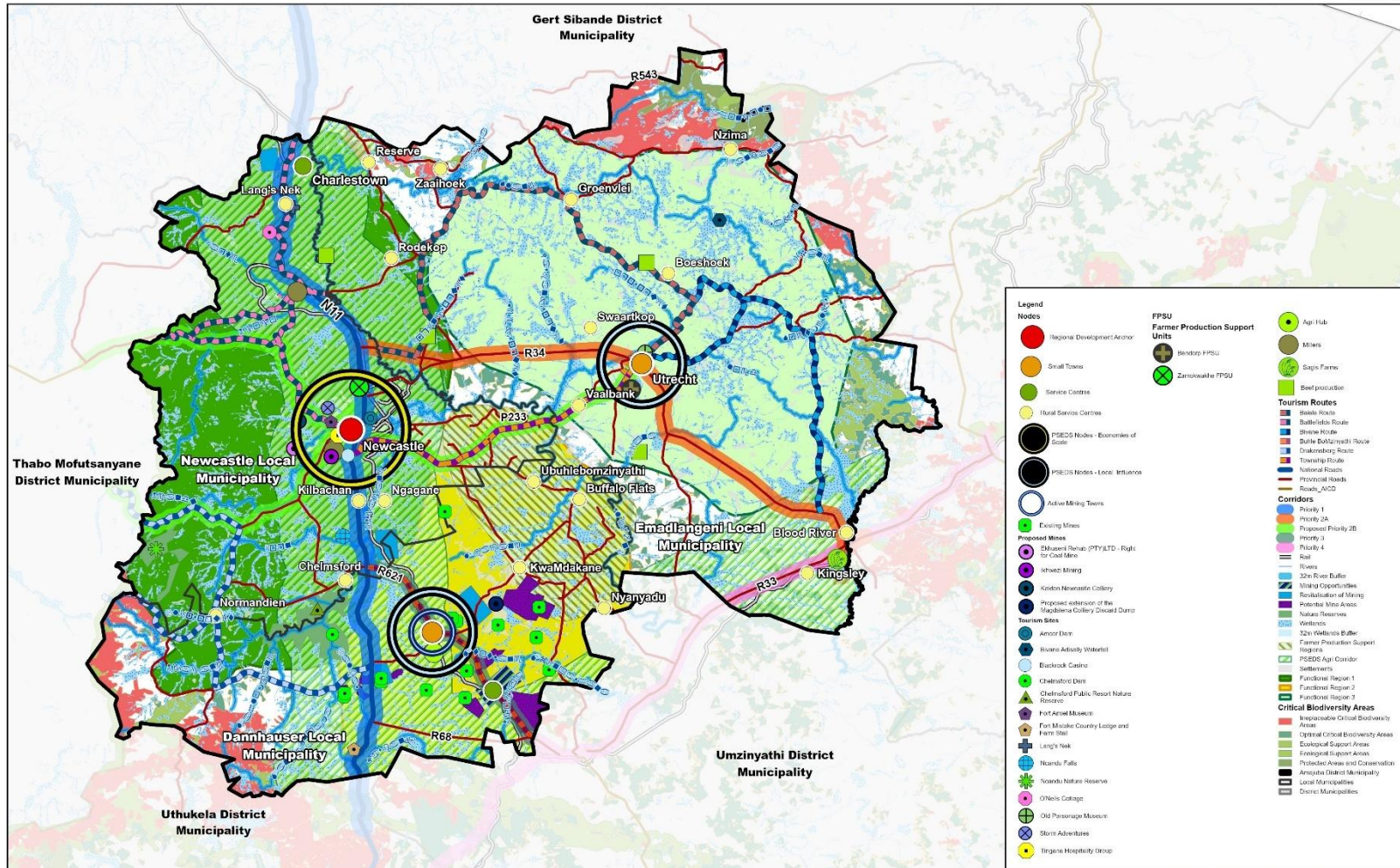
**The overall Municipal Spatial Development Framework is an accumulation of all the identified frameworks; built environmental, socio-economic and biophysical frameworks. These frameworks thus serve as basis for the future development trajectory of the municipality.**

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA), 16 of 2013 is the primary legislature that guides spatial planning and land use management in the country. The principles presented in this legislation of also been identified as key pillars towards the development of the three identified frameworks that lead to the overall SDF.

# AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

## SPATIAL DEVELOPEMNT FRAMEWORK PLAN

1:500 000



MAY 2025

Source:  
Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA  
Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 57: Amajuba DM Spatial Development Framework

# **LAND USE MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK**

# LAND USE MANAGEMENT GUIDELINES

**“To implement a [Spatial Development Framework] it is clearly necessary... to have mechanisms in place to encourage the desired types of land development. This makes the Municipal Systems Act terminology, land use management, that much more appropriate, as it suggests a function that is broader than merely controlling development” - White Paper on Spatial Planning and Land Use Management (Dept Land Affairs, 2001)**

The term land use management includes the following activities:

- The regulation of land-use changes such as, for example, the rezoning of a property from residential to commercial use;
- The regulation of ‘green fields’ land development, i.e. the development of previously undeveloped land;
- The regulation of the subdivision and consolidation of land parcels;
- The regulation of the regularization and upgrading process of informal settlements, neglected city centres and other areas requiring such processes; and
- The facilitation of land development through the more active participation of the municipality in the land development process, especially through public-private partnerships.

Land-use management has two main underlying rationales. The first is the widely felt resistance to the idea of uncontrolled land development and the second is the commonly expressed wish by particular sectors in society to promote various types of desirable land development.

The resistance to uncontrolled development is motivated by a number of concerns, the precise mix of which is determined by the particular social, economic and political contexts of different times and places.

Essentially however these concerns include the following:

- Environmental concerns: uncontrolled development of land can have adverse effects on natural habitats, cultural landscapes and air and water quality.
- Health and safety concerns: uncontrolled development can lead to overcrowding and unsafe building construction. Certain land uses can also be detrimental to the health and safety of neighbours.
- Social control: the control of land uses and building types has long been a means of exerting social control, particularly through the exclusion of certain types of people, household or economic activity from certain areas through the application of particular development controls limiting, for instance, plot sizes, plot coverage and home industries.

- Efficiency of infrastructure provision and traffic management: increasingly it has become clear that where the granting of development permissions is not coupled with the provision of adequate infrastructure and traffic management the consequences can be severe. Similarly, where infrastructure is provided, generally at high financial cost, without taking into account likely and relevant land-use and settlement patterns the opportunity costs to society are very high.
- Determination of property values for purposes of rating: the market value of land is the basis on which property valuation is determined and the extent and nature of the development permitted on the land is a key factor in that determination.
- Aesthetic concerns: the control of land development enables government to prescribe certain design parameters for buildings.
- The wish to promote desirable development is also driven by a number of different concerns:
- The land development needs of the market seldom match precisely the social and political needs of government: government may well want to promote a type of land development in an area that the market neglects. It then has to take certain steps to facilitate that development or provide incentives. The history of land ownership in South Africa also inevitably skews the land market in favour of white people, thus creating a situation where the needs of the market reflect only those of an already privileged minority.
- Investment promotion: changing the applicable land-use management instruments is often seen as a prerequisite for

attracting certain types of investment to certain areas. This can take the form of both relaxing controls in those areas and increasing controls in other areas which might be more favoured by the market. These strategies are likely to be linked to local economic development initiatives”.

### Land Use Management & the District Municipality

With due regard to the above, the setting of Land Use Management Guidelines in a District Spatial Development Framework poses some complex challenges, given the fact that the District Municipality is not, in the first instance, the primary Land Use Regulator charged with reviewing land development applications.

Rather, it is understood that the function of Land Use Regulator falls within the broadly applicable term “Municipal Planning” and is the responsibility of a designated Land Use Regulator at the local level, that is the relevant Local Municipality (unless this function has expressly been assigned to the District Municipality). It is further understood that all of the Local Municipalities in the Amajuba District have been assigned the Municipal Planning function and perform this themselves (or, in certain instances, are assisted by external agencies or make use of service providers).

Therefore, and in line with its mandate, it is accepted that the Amajuba District Municipality ultimately seeks to support and facilitate activities that would assist the Local Municipalities in the district to formulate appropriate Land Use Management Systems when enabling legislation such as the Spatial Planning & Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 is implemented.

In the interim, for the purposes of this SDF, the approach adopted is that the Land Use Management Guidelines from the District Municipality's side are intended to assist, guide and direct the activities of Local Municipalities in day-to-day consideration of their land use management function as well as serve as a platform for the formulation of a LUMS System in future. **The three municipalities in the district have their Land Use Schemes that guide all the developments that take place.**

Whilst, in terms of the timelines applicable to the implementation of SPLUMA, every LM will have 5 years from the date of implementation of the Act to develop a single, integrated Land Use Scheme and associated regulations (an integrated Land Use Management system), it is proposed that it is possible to set in place procedures and protocols based on adopted principles relating to best practice. This is the ultimate objective of these guidelines.

Accordingly, this section sets out some key elements to a more holistic approach to land use management. These are noted as follows: -

- Firstly, in reflecting on the current land use management system(s) in place, a brief overview of the currently applicable legislation and relevant spatial planning and land use management tools is provided;
- Secondly, in considering the character of the settlement pattern and typical forms of land use arrangements found in the Amajuba District, the importance of Land Use Management as an activity that underpins the sound use of resources and contributes directly to economic and environmental sustainability is affirmed;

- Thirdly, broad input is given on the need to manage relationships and formulate binding agreements and protocols on how to deal with land use management issues in the district

### **SPLUMA Impact**

As noted above, SPLUMA is a national "framework" law set in place to guide and direct the activities of National, Provincial and Local government agencies that engage in spatial planning and land use management.

The complexity of providing for the implementation of SPLUMA is making itself felt but the implementing department, the national Department of Rural Development & Land Reform (DRDLR), has indicated that the Act will be brought into implementation during the course of 2015.

It should be noted, however, that as SPLUMA is a national Act and does not provide for the repeal of Provincial-based laws relating to spatial planning and land use management, it may well be the case that the initial effect of SPLUMA will be focused on the transformation and re-configuration of institutional arrangements for the management of land use. Thus, the fact that a complex pattern of fragmented legislation applies across the Amajuba district may not, in effect, be simply dealt with unless and until the KwaZulu-Natal Provincial government enacts Provincial legislation. In this regard, then, it should be noted that the Province is presently engaged in such a law-making process.

Therefore, in the interim, it is suggested that the specific role that Amajuba DM may be called up on to play in the implementation of SPLUMA will be focused on the following activities: -

- Supporting Local Municipalities to respond to the requirements placed upon them by SPLUMA, most likely in the first instance in taking required decisions regarding the establishment of decision-making bodies (Municipal Tribunals) to consider land use management applications;
- Where it appears that Local Municipalities wish to participate in shared institutions (Tribunals) the DM may be called upon to facilitate this or even to assist in the establishment of a District-level Tribunal and associated logistical support.

### Spatial Planning Categories

SPCs are generally consistent with UNESCO's MAB Programme and include all land zonings that are provided for under the existing Zoning Scheme Regulations. The designation of SPCs does not change existing zoning or land-use regulations or legislation. SPCs merely help to clarify and facilitate coherent decision-making that can lead to better zoning, laws and regulations. The SPCs, furthermore, provide a framework in terms of which land-use decisions can be standardised throughout the province. It is advisable that all zoning scheme regulations be aligned with the SPCs. The SPCs are to be applied in land-use classification at all levels of planning.

A comprehensive set of SPCs and Sub-Categories have been created to serve as a guide for more detailed land-use planning at the district and local municipal sphere. The sub-categories may be refined as required to address site-specific needs at the district and local municipal sphere.

Some of the key applications of SPCs in decision-making and planning include the following:

1. The SPCs provide a system in terms of which all land units or entities within the district will eventually be recorded in the Spatial Planning Information system (SPISys), facilitating effective administration of land-use issues.
2. The SPCs can be used to indicate both the status quo of official land-use and the desired land-use of all land within a planning area. In addition, they identify specific types of land uses that are not included in the existing Zoning Scheme Regulations, providing for a non-statutory and more detailed land-use classification.
3. The SPCs indicate desired land usage which might in certain instances be aligned with the current zoning of properties and in other instances differ from that.
4. Existing Zoning Scheme Regulations are to be amended/upgraded in order to include these new concepts. It is envisaged that the Provincial Model Scheme Regulations will contain certain new overlay zonings in this regard.
5. The SPCs facilitate decision-making regarding applications for a change in land-use. In this regard, it is important to note that an SPC designation which differs from the current zoning, implies that any new development will be considered a diversion from the status quo, requiring that applications will have to be considered by the relevant authorities in accordance with specific guidelines.

6. Application of SPCs in natural landscapes – SPC A and SPC B and, to an extent, SPC C areas primarily relate to the natural landscape, which contain the inhabited (human-made) landscape (SPC C.b, D, E, and F).

### **The Importance of Land Use Management in the Amajuba District Municipality**

From the preceding sections of this document, it is clear that the nature of land use and settlement dynamics in the ADM is distinct in that, socio-economically, the patterns observed are dominantly rural and peri-urban in nature, with only a few of the towns exhibiting characteristics of intensifying urban environments.

Within this context, it is acknowledged that the most important economic resources available within the district relate to its natural endowments: agricultural potential in the first instance; and scenic attractions as these relate to the possibilities of developing a sustainable tourism industry in the second instance.

If this is accepted, it is necessary, too, to acknowledge that, to a large extent, the dynamics informing people's choices regarding settlement in the areas outside of formal urban environments is less formal in nature (at least, less formal in the legal sense). Settlement patterns appear to be spontaneous in many cases or, at the very least, poorly regulated, with people drawn to settle closer to main transportation routes or to areas where potential economic activity is evident.

In the urban context, this “informality” also is a feature. The existing towns remain important nodes of economic activity (Service Centres) but their effective functioning is deeply compromised by a history of inadequate spatial planning, maintenance of infrastructure and the enforcement of basic land use management and building controls.

Therefore, in order to ensure that the most important resources available to support and facilitate economic development now and in the future, it must be acknowledged that the practise of land use management to engender wise land use is a critical need in the ADM.

In order to achieve this objective (of wise land use), it is necessary to accept that, in the Amajuba district, the possibility of practising sound land use management faces some difficult challenges:

- The challenge, in many cases, of poor local capacity to appreciate the importance of land use management and to support its practise in a technically sound manner;
- The challenge of an institutional “environment” within which overlapping jurisdictions (in both a legal and a perceived sense) complicate decision-making processes in relation to settlement and land development permissions;
- The challenge of a legal system that remains flawed in so far as legislation exists but often is insufficient to unravel the complexities of overlapping land rights in less formal settlements (leading to an almost resigned response of letting things develop as they will).

Land Use Management comprises a Spatial Development Framework; Plans and Reports; Land Use and Development Policies and Strategies; Land Use Management Guidelines and the regulation of land use involving Zoning Schemes and Building Regulations. The purpose of creating a Land Use Management System is to promote coordinated and environmentally sustainable development. This is important in order to achieve the following:

<b>Amenity</b>	A pleasant living environment is established by residential areas that look good, where people feel safe, and which are close to facilities.
<b>Conservation</b>	Certain buildings, places or areas need to be conserved for future generations.
<b>Convenience</b>	People need to be located in neighbourhoods in order to be able to access employment opportunities and community facilities.
<b>Efficiency and Economy</b>	Maximum use of scarce resources.

<b>General Welfare</b>	By creating a healthy and safe environment, and by ensuring that adequate provision has been made for all necessary services and facilities, the whole community is benefited.
<b>Healthy Living Environment</b>	Land uses such as open spaces and community facilities are required to create healthy communities, whereas the land uses causing nuisance or pollution need to be carefully monitored.
<b>Order</b>	Land uses that are not compatible need to be separated. People need to be certain when they buy or rent property, that their amenity and property values will be protected.
<b>Access of Land</b>	Provision of land and services to enable mixed use precincts to ensure access for marginalised communities and support for livelihood initiatives to fight poverty.
<b>Safety</b>	Land uses harmful to health need to be placed in areas where it can be controlled. Adequate space between neighbouring properties provide for stormwater and fire control.

### ADM & SPLUMA Implementation

The section below highlights how the District Municipality is aligning to SPLUMA from a Land Use Management Perspective: -

The President of RSA signed the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act no.16 of 2013 on the 02 August 2013, this is a National Planning Legislation which is intended to create a single and uniform approach towards Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Systems.

The main purposes of the SPLUMA are as follows “ To provide a framework for spatial planning and land use management in the Republic; to specify the relationship between the spatial planning and the land use management system and other kinds of planning; to provide for the inclusive, developmental, equitable and efficient spatial planning at the different spheres of government; to provide a framework for the monitoring, coordination and review of the spatial planning and land use management system; to provide a framework for policies, principles, norms and standards for spatial development planning and land use management; to address past spatial and regulatory imbalances; to promote greater consistency and uniformity in the application procedures and decision-making by authorities responsible for land use decisions and development applications; to provide for the establishment, functions and operations of Municipal Planning Tribunals; to provide for the facilitation and enforcement of land use and development measures; and to provide for matters connected therewith.

SPLUMA provides a framework for spatial planning and land use management in South Africa. SPLUMA:

- Specifies the relationship between the spatial planning and the land use management system and other kinds of planning;
- Ensures that the system of spatial planning and land use management promoted social and economic inclusion;
- Provides for development principles and norms and standards;
- Provides for the sustainable and efficient use of land;
- Provides for cooperative government and intergovernmental relations amongst the national, provincial and local spheres of government; and
- Redresses the imbalance of the past and to ensure that there is equity in the application of spatial development planning and land use management systems.

SPLUMA applies to the whole of South Africa (urban and rural areas) and governs informal and traditional land use development processes.

### **General Guidelines Applicable to All Development**

Any prospective applicant or developer is required to comply with the requirements of the Community Land Rights Act (CLARA) in terms of procedures and protocols described in Section 20.5. In all aspects they must fully inform the affected communities by means of advertisements in the press and public meetings where any development type as described below is contemplated. The following general guidelines apply: -

- □The abstraction of water for any use from any river within the study area must have prior approval from DWAF and should require a full EIA to ensure that environmental impacts are negligible;
- □The erection of tunnels for farming as well as the clearing of land where indigenous vegetation is affected is to be subject to an EIA.
- A suitable setback for development from any identified Sub Tropical Thicket Biome and/or indigenous vegetation corridors (conservation area) shall be determined in the EIA process; and
- Should rezoning and subdivision applications be submitted separately for the same property, environmental scoping/EIA's will be required.
- The Motivation Report of any application for development must motivate how the application complies with the principles of the Development Facilitation Act, the development principles, the conceptual framework and the guidelines contained in this framework plan.
- The motivation Report must be supported by a report confirming availability of a sustainable water supply must be submitted as part of any land use application, a storm water management plan, an agricultural assessment report which considers current and future agricultural potential, with written comment obtained from the Department of Agriculture (if applicable);
- Environmental Impact Assessment/Scoping Reports will be required.
- A Site Development Plan for all development (including subdivisions) must contain details of proposed development

density, coverage, layout, landscaping, building design, position of all structures, stands, and the 100-year flood line above any water course, proposed parking and internal roads.

### Defined Nodes Outside of the Urban Edge

These encompass the proposed rural service centres. Shops; service industries, offices and limited size tourist related businesses could be allowed at such nodes. In addition, social, health, education and safety and security facilities are to be encouraged to locate in these nodes. Standard provisions of approved policies, Town Planning controls, building by-laws, aesthetic and signage controls are in place for these areas as defined in municipal policy documents and this SDF.

#### 1. Nature Tourism Areas

These are areas where limited development may occur subject to an environmental assessment and management plan, the STEP guidelines, and associated protocols.

- Limited and regulated tourism facilities; Small accommodation facilities that are low-key, low-impact and in harmony with the natural environment;
- Agricultural activities;
- Existing rural settlement.

Any development contemplated in the Nature Tourism Areas would need to adhere to the following guidelines:

- The development of a site must not be dependent on the creation of a new road. Existing roads may be upgraded to improve access but where there is no existing road, this should inform the type of tourism facility that is developed.
- The maximum carrying capacity for all development sites, until a SEA or EIA has taken place, is 36 beds or 20 small units. All development sites should be well located in the Nature Tourism buffer area to safeguard the sense of place and eco-tourism opportunities available to that site.
- Development of these sites requires a full EIA and a live Environmental Management Plan that addresses, inter alia, the disposal of solid waste.
- Full IEM procedures are to precede any development whereby the precautionary principle shall apply with approval conditions requiring rehabilitation of the environment and specifications regarding the use of the remainder (for example; conservation, private nature reserve etc);

## 2. No Development Areas

These areas are where no development is to be contemplated:

- No development is to be permitted on any nature reserves and the outer boundary of the vegetation of coastal forests and reserves.
- All river valleys and ground with slopes equal to or exceeding 1 in 3 should be demarcated as no-development zones.
- The locality of launching sites is to be determined by DEDEA.

- Areas below the 1 in 100-year flood line are excluded from development (including boundary walls and fences). The practice of raising the floor level of buildings above the 1:100-year flood line is not favoured from a flood risk point of view.
- Areas required for the rehabilitation of indigenous vegetation identified in the environmental management plan are excluded from development;
- Areas that are developable but cannot be accessed without going through undevelopable land are also regarded as undevelopable.
- Any other areas as determined by DEDEA (such as coastal grasslands).
- Access to rivers are only to be created after specialist evaluation and prior approval from the relevant authorities.

## 3. Subdivision of Agricultural Land

The subdivision of farms into multiple individual farms to avoid the rezoning process and/or to achieve de facto residential development is not considered desirable, as it negates the intention and spirit of the zoning categories provided in the Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act 70 of 1970.

The Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act 70 of 1970 (SALA), Scheme 8 Regulations, indicate that the minimum subdivision of agricultural land is 0.8 Hectares. Where no subdivision is involved, a density of 1 dwelling unit for every 10 Hectares, up to a maximum of 5 dwelling units, is permitted, subject to consent and proof that the farming programme is sustainable and economically viable.

Accordingly, and with due cognisance of the trends and pressures for land development on land currently zoned for agricultural purposes, it is proposed that the guidelines of Subdivision of Agriculture Land Act 70 of 1970 be applied within the Amajuba District, but with a recommended minimum subdivision size of 10 Hectares for agricultural land.

Should an applicant wish to pursue intensive farming activities on land holdings smaller than 10 Hectares, the application for Subdivision of Agricultural Land must be accompanied by a full motivation, including an Agricultural Feasibility Report indicating sustainability of the proposed enterprise

The development of this land for non- agricultural purposes should only be allowed if:

- The land has already been subdivided to such an extent that it is no longer agriculturally viable;
- The land has already been developed for non-agricultural purposes;
- The proposed development does not compromise the primary agricultural activity of the property;
- The proposed development comprises a secondary activity to supplement a landowner's income;
- It will facilitate the implementation of the Land Reform Programme and Labour Tenant Projects.

The Department of Agriculture Forestry and Fisheries does not consider anything less than 20 Ha as a viable unit; therefore it is proposed that subdivisions of less than 20 Ha should not be allowed. This information is

also recommended for inclusion into the draft Land Use Management Guidelines.

### Cooperative Governance Approach to Spatial Planning

The Constitution makes it clear that all the three spheres of governments are interdependent and interrelated. The Constitution therefore assigns planning responsibilities to the provinces to undertake the following:

- Implementation of provincial and regional planning policies and regulations as enshrined in Schedules 4 and 5 of the Constitution;
- Implementation and regulations to monitor and support municipalities in exercising their municipal functions.

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (SPLUMA) is a framework act for all spatial planning and land use management in South Africa, which seeks to promote consistency and uniformity in procedures and decision-making as well as addressing historical spatial imbalances and the integration of the principles of sustainable development into land use and planning regulatory tools and legislative instruments. SPLUMA, mandates the KwaZulu-Natal Government to be responsible for the co-ordination, integration and alignment of the following:

- Provincial plans and development strategies with policies of National Government;
- The plans, policies and development strategies of Provincial Departments; and

- The plans, policies and development strategies of district and local municipalities.

The KwaZulu-Natal PSDF role is to facilitate the required coordination, integration and alignment that SPLUMA prescribes. Section 17 (2) prescribes that all provincial development plans, projects and programmes must be consistent with the PSDF

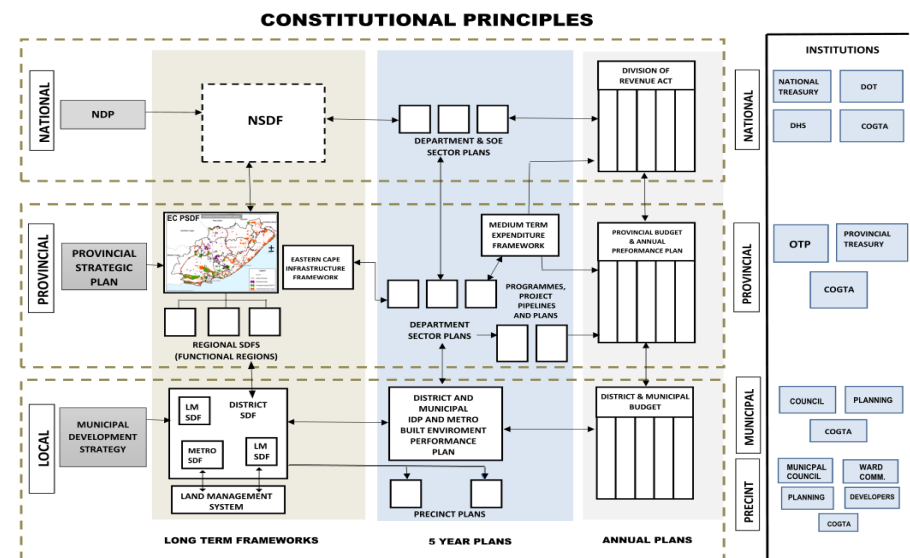
There should be inter-governmental relation (IGR) structures that should be used to facilitate implementation of the PSDF, that is, there should be co-operative approach to spatial planning and land use management to achieve sustainable governance system in the PSDF.

In the KwaZulu-Natal, proposals for PSDF governance, amongst others, should include the following:

- A need to establish interdepartmental spatial coordination committee in the Office of the Premier with the necessary oversight to formulate the PSDF, resolve the responsibilities for spatial planning within the provincial government level, remove duplications and recommend that COGTA be responsible for overseeing spatial planning in the province.
- PSDF and MSDFs should ensure limiting peri-urban sprawl through strong local land use controls.
- Establish an integrated LUMS in the province involving all stakeholders

- Preparation of credible “wall-to wall” SDFs by LMs with both technical and tradition leaders / indigenous approach to land use management.
- Regular capacitating of municipal planners with guidelines from SACPLAN
- There should be CoGTA’s capacity assistance to LMs in terms of co-operative governance

The above proposals should be implemented within the Amajuba District as a way of alignment with the province and to guide efficient spatial planning within the Municipality.



In asserting the importance of wise land use and effective land use management in the Amajuba district, it is necessary to accept that a

fundamental challenge is the formulation of a Land Use Management System that draws together as active participants and administrators the parties most involved in land use decisions:

- Local municipalities, who are charged to carry out Municipal Planning and, as such, are acknowledged as Land Use Regulators;
- The traditional authorities (most likely in the form of duly constituted Traditional Councils) who most often regulate land use decisions in rural environments; and
- The communities themselves, who, in many instances, have developed “codes of practice” over generations that guide and inform land use “norms” in their areas.

Aside from the above role players, any functioning system must also draw in the existing role players (e.g. from an environmental perspective, an infrastructure perspective as well as relevant resource perspectives such as agriculture). It is strongly suggested that, in moving toward a situation where a commonly accepted Land Use Management System will be developed once enabling legislation is in place, it is necessary to start to explore the possibilities of formulating locally based Social Compacts in relation to establishing forums for the consideration and recommendation of land use and land development applications. In contemplating such arrangements, role players should be informed and guided by the Inter-Governmental Relations Framework Act (No. 13 of 2005).

# **IMPLEMENTATION FRAMEWORK**

# IMPLEMENTATION FRAMEWORK PLAN

An implementation plan is a management tool designed to illustrate the critical steps in developing the various sectors within a Municipality. It is a guide that helps the municipality be proactive in developing an identifying any challenges along the way. It also allows any person to fully understand the goals of the municipality. The aim of the Implementation Plan is to assist the municipality achieve their development goals by identifying staged development processes, supporting institutional arrangements as well as defining clear and implementable projects.

The Implementation Framework for this SDF is made up of two parts. The first section comprises of an **implementation action matrix** that sets out the priority actions needed to bring the SDF proposals into reality. The second is an outline and proposed foundation for a “**Capital Investment Framework**” for Amajuba District Municipality. This action agenda is organised in relation to the main SDF strategies and includes three main categories of action, namely:

- Policy Actions
- Institutional Actions
- Project Actions

The implementation matrix provides a description of the action, indicates the agency responsible for the action, an estimated timeframe and (where this

information is available) provides a high-level indication of the budget required to implement the action. In cases where the implementing agent may be different to the responsible agency, this has also been highlighted.

## PART 1: IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

This section serves as the Project Identification and Implementation Plan section of the report. Based on the key development proposals identified in Spatial Proposals and the overall Spatial direction of all sectors of the district municipality. This section also includes an Implementation Plan of the identified projects completed with a list of likely funders of the projects, as well as budget estimates and the period of Implementation over a three (3) year period linked to the Medium-Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF).

This section serves to conclude the Amajuba DM Spatial Development Framework by reinforcing the link between the SDF and the IDP. In this regard, the Plans overleaf illustrate the spatial pattern of investment currently being implemented through the IDP and, as such, provide a “picture” of the IDP’s planned pattern of expenditure.

### Understanding the Implementation Plan Table

The Implementation Plan table includes the following components:

**Project Name:** This is the title of the project. It also includes a brief description of the project

**Responsible Department:** The Responsible department outlines the department which will lead the proposed project. The role of this identified department is responsible for ensuring the Implementation of the project, including presenting the proposal of the project at various tiers to acquire buy-in to the project.

The role of the responsible department further includes the sourcing of Funding for the respective project, preparing the Tender document (should the project be tendered out), ensuring the smooth and timeous implementation of the project. This department may also request to seek assistance from another department should assistance be needed. Their responsibility further includes any applications which need to be made or studies that need to be conducted to acquire funding.

**Municipality / Region:** The location in which the project will be implemented within.

**Source of funding:** Identifies suggestions of where the funding can be sourced from for the implementation of the project.

**Total Project Cost:** This is the total cost of project

**Budget 2023/24:** The amount of the Total project cost that is expected to be spent on the project during the 2024/2025 financial year.

**Budget 2023/24:** The amount of the Total project cost that is expected to be spent on the project during the 2023/2024 financial year.

**Budget 2024/25:** The amount of the Total project cost that is expected to be spent on the project during the 2024/2025 financial year.

**Budget 2025/26:** The amount of the Total project cost that is expected to be spent on the project during the 2025/2026 financial year.

**Budget 2026/27:** The amount of the Total project cost that is expected to be spent on the project during the 2026/2027 financial year.

### Project Prioritization Matrix

When it comes to potential and long-term capital expenditure, these projects are usually considered urgent by different stakeholders. In noting that government's resources are limited, and without enough time or funds to tackle them all at once, it becomes important to prioritize these projects towards implementation.

Prioritizing capital projects for expenditure is not an easy process. With many different parties involved, all of which seem to have differing opinions about how projects should be handled, however, implementing strategies to help with project prioritization and creating a prioritization system can make this task more efficient and effective.

Developing a Matrix is necessary to involve all relevant stakeholders to establish what criteria will be used to judge each of the projects. These

criteria will be specific to each Municipality and should be specifically catered to match the Municipality's needs. However, when crafting these criteria, it is important to ensure that they are factors that can be measured objectively and easily rather than subjectively or with difficulty (open to interpretation).

Once the relevant criteria have been identified, a weighting should be allocated to each of the criteria based on a scale of 1 to 5 - with 1 being the least important and 5 being the most important.

Once each criterion has been identified and weighted, the Matrix can now be used to evaluate specific projects that are identified for capital expenditure in the long-term. Using a similar rating scale (1 – 5), each project will be rated based on the impact that it will have on each criterion identified. For example, a project rating of 1 would indicate that a project will have the least positive impact on a particular criterion (such as ease of implementing); whereas a project rating of 5 would mean that the project will have the most positive impact on the established criterion. For elements that include costing or a direct measurable such as the number of beneficiaries impacted by a project or the potential economic benefit of a project, the investment amount and number of people that benefit from a program can be categorised from 1 – 5 where 5 could be the greatest number of people (e.g., >10,000) or the highest amount of money (e.g., > R500 million). In terms of the example of estimated cost of the development, it would have to be reversed because higher costs are often bad and ill afforded. This would mean that 1 would relate to the highest cost amount (e.g., >R500 million) and 5 would be the least.

Please see below a criteria-based matrix which has been developed for the focus area projects above.

Programme / Projects	Responsible Department	Municipality/ Region	Source of Funding	Total Project Cost	Budget				
					2022/2023	2023/2024	2024/2025	2024/2026	2024/2027

PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT SERVICES									
KEY PERFORMANCE AREA: LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT									
Informal Economy	ADM Dept Planning and Economic Services	District Wide	ADM	R 465 000.00	R 50 000.00	R 80 000.00	R 105 000.00	R 150 000.00	R 230 000.00
SMMEs	ADM Dept Planning and Economic Services	District Wide	ADM	R 2 820 000.00	R 320 000.00	R 400 000.00	R 600 000.00	R 700 000.00	R 800 000.00
Green Economy	ADM Dept Planning and Economic Services	District Wide	ADM	R 10 800 000.00	R 1 000 000.00	R 150 000.00	R 2 000 000.00	R 2 800 000.00	R 3 500 000.00

Agriculture	Dept of Agriculture	District Wide	ADM	R 7 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00	R 1 200 000.00	R 1 400 000.00	R 1 600 000.00	R 1 800 000.00
Research and Development	ADM Dept Planning and Economic Services	District Wide	ADM	R 6 400 000.00	R 600 000.00	R1 200 000.00	R1 400 000.00	R 1 600 000.00	R 1 800 000.00
Maintenance of Tourism Signage	ADM Dept Planning and Economic Services	District Wide	ADM	R 740 000.00	R 150 000.00	R 100 000.00	R 100 000.00	R 70 000.00	R 70 000.00

**ENGINEERING SERVICES**

**KEY PERFORMANCE AREA: BASIC SERVICE DELIVERY**

Emadlangeni Sanitation	Water and Sanitation	Emadlangeni	MIG	R 17 000 000.00	R 10 000 00.00	R 6 000 000,00	R 10 000 000,00	TBA	TBA
Bulk Water Supply Goedehoop Housing Project (Phase 2)	Water and Sanitation	Emadlangeni	MIG	R 34 000 000.00	R 15 000 000,00	R 11 000 000,00	R 8 000 000,00	TBA	TBA

Dannhauser Housing development Bulk Water and Sanitaion	Water and Sanitation	Dannhauser	MIG	R 600 000,00	R 600 000,00	0,00	0,00	TBA	TBA
Hilltop settlement Reservoir water reticulation	Water and Sanitation	Newcastle	MIG	R 3 000 000,00	R 3 000 000,00	0,00	0,00	TBA	TBA
Mafahlwane Bulk Water Supply	Water and Sanitation	Newcastle	MIG	R 21 136 750.00	R 5 987 650,00	R 9 149 100,00	R 6 000 000,00	TBA	TBA
Disaster management centre	ADM LED Planning	District Wide	MIG	R 11 300 00.00	R 2 800 000,00	R 8 000 000,00	R 500 000,00	TBA	TBA
Zaaihook WTW & Bulk Pipeline	Water and Sanitation	Emadlangeni	MIG	R 25 870 000.00	R 3 870 000,00	R 5 000 000,00	R 17 000 000,00	TBA	TBA
Groenvlein Water & Sanitation Infrastructure	Water and Sanitation	Groenvlei	MIG	R 6 662 150.00	R 2 000 000,00	R 3 000 000,00	R 1 662 150,00	TBA	TBA
Pipeline Replacement in Dannhauser & Durnacol	Water and Sanitation	Dannhauser	MIG	R 6 000 000.00	R 500 000,00	R 2 500 000,00	R 3 000 000,00	TBA	TBA

Pipeline Replacement in Utrecht	Water and Sanitation	Utrecht	MIG	R 4 000 000,00	R 500 000,00	R 1 500 000,00	R 2 000 000,00	TBA	TBA
Rural Road Assessment Management System	DoT	District Wide	DoT	R 7 187 000,00	R 2 361 000,00	R 2 370 000,00	R 2 456 000,00	TBA	TBA
Pipeline Extension (Skobharen and Eastborne)	Water and Sanitation	Emadlangeni	WSIG	R 5 500 000,00	R 5 000 000,00	0,00	R 500 000,00	TBA	TBA
Re-furbishment of Utrecht waste water treatment plant	Water and Sanitation	Emadlangeni	WSIG	R 57 000 000,00	R 17 000 000,00	R 12 000 000,00	R 28 000 000,00	TBA	TBA
Construction of Braakfontein Reservoir	Water and Sanitation	Newcastle	WSIG	R 5 000 000,00	c	0,00	0,00	TBA	TBA
Emergency Water Supply to Ramaphosa, Hilltop and Skobhareni project	Water and Sanitation	Newcastle	WSIG	R 37 000 000,00	R 13 000 000,00	R 23 500 000,00	R 500 000,00	TBA	TBA
Reduction of Non-Revenue Water	Water and Sanitation	District Wide	WSIG	R 46 250 000,00	R 16 000 000,00	R 10 000 000,00	R 20 250 000,00	TBA	TBA

via Reduction of real losses									
Ground Water Project	Water and Sanitation	District wide	WSIG	R 30 000 000,00	R 2 000 000.00	R 11 000 000,00	R 17 000 000,00	TBA	TBA
Kerkerk Street Phase 3	DoT	Emadlangeni Ward 2	MIG	R 10 010 000.00	R 10 010 000.00				
Plein Street Phase 1	DoT	Emadlangeni Ward 2	MIG	R 5 000 000.00	R 2 500 000.00	R 2 500 000.00			
Keerom Street	DoT	Emadlangeni Ward 2	MIG	R 4 000 000.00	R 2 000 000.00	R 2 000 000.00			
Scheepers Street	DoT	Emadlangeni Ward 2	MIG	R 4 500 000.00	R 2 500 000.00	R 2 000 000.00			
Loop phase 2	DoT	Emadlangeni Ward 2	MIG	R 4 500 000.00	R 2 500 000.00	R 2 000 000.00			
11kV cable from Bergsig School Transformer in Van Rooyen St to Transformer in Rissik St	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Municipality	R 8 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00				
Planning of Electrification Of Mpongose Village Nagenoeg Farm	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Eskom	R 2 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00				

Planning of Electrification Of Balgray Houses and Shop at Hostel	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Eskom	R 2 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00				
Repair or Replace Cable 11kV from Klopper St Transformer to Hospital Substation needs to be replaced. This Cable runs through a Servitude across Hospital Stand/Site.	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Municipality	R 8 500 000.00		R 5 400 000.00			
Electrification Of Mpongose Village Nagenoeg Farm	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Eskom	R 1 500 000.00		R 5 400 000.00			
Plan for Replacement of Street Lights.	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Municipality	R 4 550 000.00		R 1 500 000.00			

Total 11kV Overhead line network, wooden pole inspection must be done and hollow and broken not fit poles must be replaced. My estimate is about 300 poles.	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Municipality	R 9 800 000.00			R 3 480 000.00		
Planning of Electrification Politic Farms	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Eskom				R 3 480 000.00		
Electrification Of Balgray Houses and Shop at Hostel	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Eskom	R 2 500 000.00			R 3 480 000.00		
11 KV Overhead Line Feeders from Eskom Substation to White City ,Bensdorp and Town to be upgraded to MV overhead lines	Eskom	Emadlangeni Ward 2	INEP Municipality	R 11 500 000.00				R 11 500 000.00	

SANS specifications							
---------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Project No.	Programme / Projects	Responsible Department	Municipality / Region	Source of funding	Total Project Cost	Budget				
						2022/2023	2023/2024	2024/2025	2024/2026	2024/2027
FURTHER SDF PROPOSED PROJECTS										
BIOPHYSICAL										
1	Rehabilitation of wetlands. This will assist in environmental restoration, improved water quality and job creation	Environmental Services	ADM	EDTEA	R 2 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00			
AGRICULTURE (BIOPHYSICAL)										

2	Feasibility Studies to identify cropping (Irrigated and dry land) areas	Dept of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)/ Agriculture Research Council (ARC)	ADM	Dept. Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)	R 2 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00			
3	Settlement based Agricultural activities	Dept of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)/ Agriculture Research Council (ARC)	ADM	Dept. Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)	R 6 500 000.00		R 2 500 000.00	R 2 000 000.00	R 2 000 000.00	
4	Agricultural Strategy for ADM	Dept of Agriculture	ADM	Dept. Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)	R 2 500 000.00	R 2 500 000.00				

5	Expansion of the irrigation scheme.	Dept of Agriculture	ADM	Dept. Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF)	R 6 000 000.00	R 1 500 000.00	R 4 500 000.00			
<b>BUILT-ENVIRONMENT</b>										
6	Upgrade of the District Road D181 (Planning Phase)	DoT	Dannhauser	SANRAL	R 700 000.00	R 700 000.00				
7	Upgrade of local road L1364	DoT	Dannhauser	SANRAL	R 350 000.00	R 350 000.00				
8	Upgrade of Main Road D1331 (Planning Phase)	DoT	Newcastle	SANRAL	R 1 000 000.00	R 1 000 000.00				
9	Upgrade of Main Road D1335	DoT	Newcastle	SANRAL	R 6 000 000.00	R 6 000 000.00				

10	Upgrade of Main Road P233 (Planning Phase)	DoT	Newcastle	SANRAL	R 2 250 000.00	R 1 000 000.00	R 1 250 000.00			
11	Emafusini Sewer Reticulation Upgrade	Water and Sanitation		ADM	R 3 300 000.00	R 3 000 000.00	R 300 000.00			
12	Construction of Groenvlei Bulk Water and Sanitation for 1500HH	Water and Sanitation	Emadlangeni	ADM	R 7 100 000.00	R 3 600 000.00	R 2 500 000.00			
<b>SOCIO-ECONOMIC</b>										
13	Satellite Tourism info centres/boards	Dept Planning and Economic Services	ADM	EDTEA	R 180 000.00	R 70 000.00	R 50 000.00	R 60 000.00		
14	Promotion and marketing (Signage) of	Dept Planning and Economic Services	ADM	EDTEA	R 3 700 000.00		R 1 300 000.00	R 1 200 000.00	R 1 200 000.00	

	Tourism Routes																		
15	Development of Hiking Trails	Dept Planning and Economic Services																	
16	Small Town Revitalisation Strategy	Dept Planning and Economic Services	ADM	ADM	TBC														
17	Revitalise old mining towns for tourism purposes	Dept Planning and Economic Services	ADM	ADM	TBC														

Table 30: Criteria Based Matrix

		FOCUS AREA PROJECTS																
CRITERIA	Project No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
1. Community Satisfaction	Project Rating	2	2	2	2	3	4	3	3	3	4	4	3	4	3	3	3	
	Criteria Weighting	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	
	Score	10	10	10	10	15	20	15	15	15	20	20	15	20	15	15	15	20

2. Competitive Advantage	Project Rating	3	2	2	2	3	2	2	3	2	2	4	3	3	2	3	3	
	Criteria Weighting	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	
	Score	<b>3</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>5</b>
3. Estimated Project Cost	Project Rating	3	4	3	3	2	5	1	2	3	3	3	4	3	3	3	5	3
	Criteria Weighting	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	
	Score	<b>12</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>8</b>
4. Potential Economic Benefit	Project Rating	4	3	3	3	4	3	3	3	3	4	5	3	4	4	3	3	
	Criteria Weighting	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	
	Score	<b>16</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>20</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>16</b>
5. Ease of Implementing	Project Rating	3	3	3	3	2	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	2	3	3	3	
	Criteria Weighting	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	
	Score	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>9</b>
TOTAL SCORE		<b>50</b>	<b>49</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>48</b>	<b>63</b>	<b>42</b>	<b>47</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>65</b>	<b>55</b>	<b>57</b>	<b>54</b>	<b>51</b>	<b>59</b>	<b>51</b>

## PART 2: CAPITAL INVESTMENT FRAMEWORK

A Capital Investment Framework (CIF) is a very important component of the Spatial Development Framework (SDF). CIF is a sound step towards a more systematic approach to infrastructure planning and coordination.

### Legislative Requirements

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 requires that municipal spatial development frameworks determine a Capital Expenditure Framework (CEF) for the municipality's development programmes, depicted spatially. SPLUMA does not elaborate on the content or purpose of a Capital Expenditure Framework or distinguish between the focus of such a CEF in district versus local municipal SDFs. In line with current thinking within National Treasury, this SDF contains a "Capital Investment Framework" (CIF), which is the foundation for more effective integration of the municipality's spatial development strategies with the IDP and budget. These instruments are central to implementation and unless the implementation framework of an SDF connects explicitly with these, there is little chance of the proposals being realised. By providing more specific guidance on what investments should be made where and in what order of priority, will ensure alignment between the municipality's strategies, plans and policies. In addition, the risk that budget allocations undermine or contradict the SDF are mitigated.

The Amajuba District Municipality SDF's key spatial strategies are central to financial sustainability and should inform the district's approach to its Capital

Expenditure Framework. Among these strategies, regional accessibility is key to inclusive and equitable growth and co-ordinated growth management is of particular importance. The District's Capital Expenditure Framework is also an essential tool for realising the SDF's fourth, foundation strategy - the need to plan, budget and manage as one government. Developing the CEF into an effective tool for co-ordinated development based on a shared set of development strategies and speaks directly to the municipalities mandate to co-ordinate infrastructure planning.

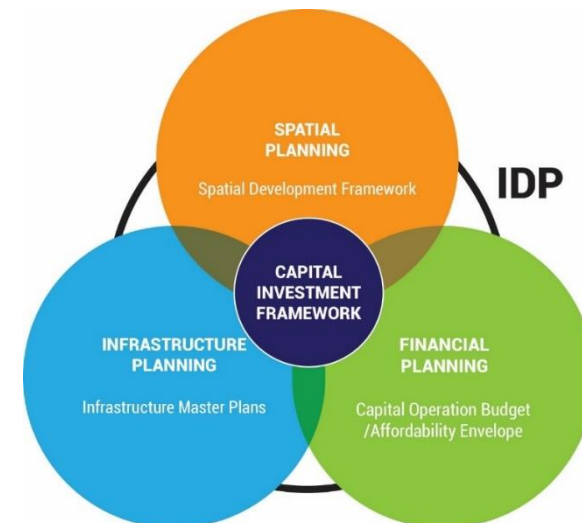


Figure 2: Capital Investment Framework

## Preparing a Capital Expenditure Framework

This section refers to the preparation of a Capital Expenditure Framework supported by a Medium-Term Integrated Infrastructure Investment Framework (MTIIF).

Several tools exist to project the capital investment needs in space, against which the available resources can be matched, sequenced, and prioritised. This is informed by the leadership priorities of the respective councils.

### *Why Undertake Spatial Integrated Infrastructure Investment Planning*

- Resources are limited.
- Municipalities in the district need to understand the drivers of growth and respond with infrastructure to support growth and development – no more, no less.
- Planning is fragmented and regional scale issues are missed in local scale planning.
- The most appropriate funding mechanisms need to be selected to match the source of the demand, i.e. balance grant funding, municipal own sources (including borrowing), development charges and Public-Private Partnerships (PPPs).
- Costs vary in space and spatial planning decisions may have long-term consequences.
- There is a need to balance investment in what you have (asset renewal) versus creating new infrastructure to address backlogs

This can be described as catering for growth and the ability to operate and maintain infrastructure in the long-term.

### *What Should a Capital Expenditure Framework Look Like?*

The underlying questions that the CEF needs to provide guidance on is:

- How much do we need to spend where and on what?
- Is the spatial growth trajectory affordable now and sustainable on an ongoing basis?
- How do we ensure that investment planning is supporting the local and district municipalities' SDF Vision Directives? Does it enable the implementation of the SDF's spatial proposals?

To answer these questions, the ideal function of a Medium-Term Integrated Infrastructure Investment Framework (MTIIF) is to:

- Project the impact that the anticipated population and future economic growth and service delivery targets (to address backlogs), is likely to have on the demand for infrastructure services, and identify where this demand will occur in space;
- Estimate the cost of the infrastructure required to service this demand, given its location;
- Project the timing of investment required to “unlock” developable land;
- Account for the capital that is required to renew existing assets;

- Identify the most appropriate funding mechanisms for the overall capital investment requirements, as well as any potential funding gaps; and
- Identify the trade-offs that need to be made if there is a funding shortfall. This may include adjusting growth forecasts; revising the levels of service or technical solution to the service demand; adjusting the location of development; or increasing the available funding to match the investment need (e.g., increased borrowing or increased rates and tariffs).

The above scope has clear overlaps with engineering master planning and the capital budgeting processes. Rather than seeing this as an over-ambitious task, the idea is that these three planning processes (spatial, technical, and financial) should be undertaken simultaneously and iteratively. A MTIIF, as described above, can only be done if some level of engineering master planning has been undertaken. Likewise, a capital budget can only be concluded once the competing needs have been addressed in a balanced and fair manner. Importantly, the Capital Expenditure Framework, based on the findings of the MTIIF, should recommend investment priorities within the context of the Council's leadership's priorities within a longer-term view than the capital budget and should consider the investment pipeline related to the phasing of growth and development.

### *How Would One Do This*

The conceptual methodology that has been used to undertake this type of long-term infrastructure investment planning is as follows:

- Have a common set of growth assumptions. These may need to be varied or adjusted over time, which implies a flexible model that can vary assumptions and produce future implications. Growth assumptions should have a solid evidence base;
- Project forward over a sufficient time frame to allow for proper infrastructure planning and for life cycle costing of decisions. Between 20-30 years is an appropriate time frame;
- Use the growth projections, backlogs, levels of service, and evidence-based unit demands to project the service demands in a spatially disaggregated way as possible. Differentiate users with distinct consumption patterns, or with clear revenue or funding characteristics;
- Once the future service demands are understood, these can be costed by either identifying projects to address the demands (where master planning has been undertaken), or by applying high level unit costs to the future demands. Unit costs should be spatially differentiated if possible. A project-level assessment allows for more spatial differentiation of the costs;
- Use technical asset registers to calculate the cost of asset renewal based on prevailing costs and asset condition;
- Match the funding stream to the type of infrastructure required, i.e., conditional grants should be allocated to their intended beneficiaries or service, and development charges should be allocated to nonindigent residential development and non-residential development based on the municipal development charges policy.

The balance of the funding will need to come from municipal resources (reserves and borrowing); and

- Once a capital programme has been determined and aligned to spatial planning objectives, the operating account implications can be calculated to assess the on-going affordability of the growth plan. This will also inform assessments of borrowing capacity. In sophisticated analyses, these operating costs can be varied in space according to the authority providing the service and their underlying cost drivers.

### ***What Would this Exercise Produce***

The potential outputs of a long-term infrastructure planning process are multiple and varied and depend on the level of effort and funding that is allocated to the exercise. The following potential outputs, projected over a period of 20-30 years, are listed in order of level of effort, from lowest to highest, together with the benefits that such a consolidated set of planning instruments would produce.

### ***Preparing a Pipeline of Projects***

A Capital Expenditure Framework should endeavour to articulate a portfolio of investment priorities aligned to strategic development and spatial

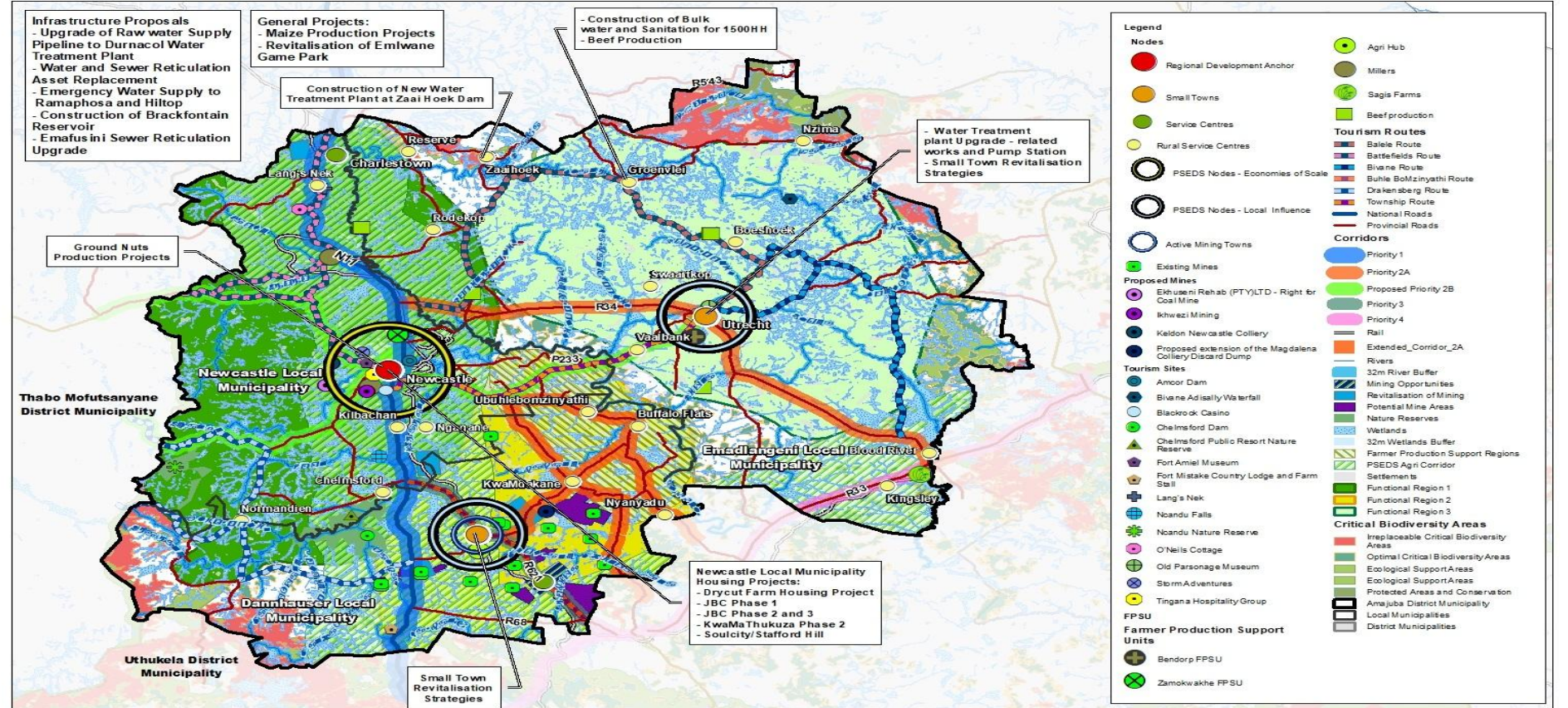
planning objectives in the municipalities' IDP and SDFs. The CEF should be informed by the above-mentioned MTIIF, and position these within a pipeline based on a robust project preparation methodology. This will allow for the progressive realisation of development projects and avoid wasteful expenditure based on poor project planning. In addition, this will empower the DM to ensure that major investment projects are adequately prepared and prioritised in a manner that they do not compete with one another for the same investment resources, and the most critical investment projects are prioritised based on an understanding of the DM's long-term sustainability. This is critical in the context of substantial fiscal constraints. There are three important questions to consider when presenting this pipeline:

- Are the proposed projects supporting or detracting from the IDP Priorities and SDF Strategies?
- Is there a line of sight from the DM's holistic understanding of its growth projections (demand), backlogs (capital and operating), network functionality, affordability envelope and financial sustainability;
- Are the resources (people and funding) present and available to run the project through a rigorous project preparation?

# AMAJUBA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK 2025/2026

## CAPITAL INVESTMENT FRAMEWORK PLAN

1:500 000



MAY 2025

Source: Amajuba District Municipality | Department of Transport | Municipal Demarcation Board | Statistics SA | Department of Education | Department of Co-operative Governance and Traditional Affairs | Eskom

PLAN 58: Capital Investment Framework

# CONCLUSION

In concluding the Amajuba District Spatial Development Framework, this report serves as the Draft report which outlines the Spatial Development Framework for the Amajuba District Municipality based on the spatial development strategy and direction of growth identified for the district.

It is envisaged that over the next 20 – 30-years, Amajuba District Municipality will be a prominent DM which is built upon the vision set forth in this SDF, supported by the IDP and Vision 2030 as well as the KZN PSDF. The proposals will be realised through key rural development interventions, by developing strong infrastructure linkages with the neighbouring municipalities within and around the district.